

**wysiwyg** 

The Wysiwyg logo, featuring the word "wysiwyg" in a bold, lowercase, sans-serif font. To the right of the text is a graphic of several orange squares of varying sizes arranged in a grid-like pattern.

***Lighting Design Software***  
*Manage, Design and Simulate*





## Reference Guide

Product Release 16.0

March 2006

---



© Cast Group of Companies Inc., 2002-2006. All rights reserved.

WYSIWYG, Cast Software, WYSIWYG Report, WYSIWYG Perform, WYSIWYG Design and Autofocus are trademarks of the Cast Group of Companies Incorporated. All other trademarks and logos are the property of their respective owners.





# Summary of changes

The following table summarizes the changes included in the Release 16 *WYSIWYG Reference Guide*, March 2006.

Change location	Description of change
Chapter 4, page 58.	Added the new Camera toolbar.
Chapter 4, page 59.	Updated Design toolbar to include Moving Scenery design tool.
Chapter 5, page 117.	Added section on new feature, Importing floorplans.
Chapter 5, pages 136—139.	Added sections on new moving scenery feature, including drawing movement axes, attaching axes to patch universes, and attaching objects to axes.
Chapter 5, page 140.	Added section on using the new Camera toolbar.
Chapter 6, page 225.	Added section on patching movement axes in Data mode.
Chapter 6, page 228.	Added section on reading the patch for moving scenery.
Chapter 6, page 229.	Added new graphic and descriptions for updated Display tab, added procedure on adjusting width of patch cells.
Chapter 8, page 238.	Added new Moving Scenery designer tool content.
Chapter 8, page 242.	Added new section on Moving Scenery designer tool.
Chapter 8, pages 248—249.	Added new section on viewing moving scenery.
Chapter 10, page 315.	Added note about connecting to a DMX or motion control console.
Chapter 10, pages 317—319.	Added procedures on controlling patched axes with DMX consoles and motion control systems.





# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>9</b>
	About this manual . . . . .	11
	Troubleshooting . . . . .	12
	Welcome to WYSIWYG. . . . .	14
<b>2</b>	<b>The WYSIWYG suite of software products</b>	<b>15</b>
	WYSIWYG Report . . . . .	17
	WYSIWYG Design . . . . .	18
	WYSIWYG Perform . . . . .	20
	WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition . . . . .	22
	WYSIWYG Learn . . . . .	24
	WYSIWYG Network . . . . .	26
	WYSILink . . . . .	27
<b>3</b>	<b>Installation, configuration, activation, and registration</b>	<b>29</b>
	Installation . . . . .	31
	Configuration, activation, and registration . . . . .	38
	Upgrades . . . . .	42
	Subscriptions . . . . .	43
	Passwords . . . . .	45
<b>4</b>	<b>WYSIWYG user interface</b>	<b>47</b>
	Navigation and screen set-up . . . . .	49
	Shortcut bars . . . . .	53
	Toolbars . . . . .	57
	Status bar . . . . .	64
	Wireframe views . . . . .	66
	Shaded views . . . . .	71
<b>5</b>	<b>Managing your WYSIWYG document</b>	<b>75</b>
	File menu . . . . .	77
	Options menu . . . . .	83
	WYSIWYG Viewer . . . . .	98
<b>6</b>	<b>CAD mode</b>	<b>99</b>
	Layout tabs . . . . .	101
	The CAD environment . . . . .	102
	The Library Browser . . . . .	119
	Drawing objects . . . . .	123
	Editing objects . . . . .	142
	CAD tools . . . . .	162
	Hang structures . . . . .	171
	Hanging and focusing fixtures . . . . .	179
	Color, gobos, and accessories . . . . .	202
	The Flight Case . . . . .	208
	Rendering . . . . .	211
<b>7</b>	<b>Data mode</b>	<b>213</b>
	Layout tabs . . . . .	215
	Spreadsheets . . . . .	216

	Patch . . . . .	223
	Errors . . . . .	231
<b>8</b>	<b>Design mode</b>	<b>235</b>
	Layout tabs . . . . .	237
	Design tools . . . . .	238
	Concepts . . . . .	244
	Palettes . . . . .	246
	Creating looks . . . . .	247
	Rendering . . . . .	250
<b>9</b>	<b>Presentation mode</b>	<b>259</b>
	Layout tabs . . . . .	261
	Reports . . . . .	262
	New Plots . . . . .	268
	Layouts . . . . .	284
	Images . . . . .	307
	Worksheets . . . . .	308
	Pipe tapes . . . . .	309
<b>10</b>	<b>Live mode</b>	<b>311</b>
	Layout tabs . . . . .	313
	Connecting to consoles . . . . .	314
	AutoPatch . . . . .	321
	Visualization . . . . .	323
	Autofocus . . . . .	326
	Rendering . . . . .	328
<b>11</b>	<b>WYSILink - Link mode</b>	<b>329</b>
	Layout tabs . . . . .	331
	Setting up WYSILink . . . . .	332
	WYSILink mode . . . . .	333
	ETCLink functions . . . . .	338
<b>A</b>	<b>Using the SuperPro Monitoring Tool</b>	<b>345</b>
	SuperPro Monitoring Tool . . . . .	347
<b>B</b>	<b>Keyboard shortcuts and hot keys</b>	<b>351</b>
	Keyboard shortcuts and hot keys . . . . .	353
<b>C</b>	<b>Using AutoFocus with the HogPC</b>	<b>359</b>
	Setting up AutoFocus to work with the HogPC . . . . .	361
	<b>Index</b>	<b>365</b>



# Chapter 1

---

## Introduction



This chapter introduces you to the WYSIWYG Reference Guide, provides information for troubleshooting, and lists contact information if you need further assistance.

### In this chapter

About this manual	11
Troubleshooting	12
Welcome to WYSIWYG	14





## About this manual

### Introduction

This manual provides instructions for the installation and operation of the different levels of the WYSIWYG application. WYSIWYG is available at the following levels:

- WYSIWYG Report
- WYSIWYG Design
- WYSIWYG Perform
- WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition
- WYSIWYG Learn
- WYSIWYG Network

All levels are discussed in this manual. For a detailed description of the levels, refer to Chapter 2, "The WYSIWYG suite of software products."

All the levels use the same user interface, described in Chapter 4, "WYSIWYG user interface." However, you can perform different tasks in each mode. For example, you draw in CAD mode and edit in Data mode. These modes may have different features based on the level of WYSIWYG that you are running.

### Text conventions

The following text conventions are used in this manual:

- Menus and menu commands appear in **Arial bold**. For example, "from the **Edit** menu, choose **Layers**."
- User interface elements such as buttons, tools, shortcuts, and dialog boxes appear in *Tahoma Oblique*. For example, "to draw a riser, click the *Riser* tool on the *Draw* toolbar."
- Keyboard keys are indicated in ALL CAPS. For example, "press TAB to enter the missing coordinate."
- References to manuals appear in *italic* font. For example, "for additional information on working with recorded loads, please refer to your *Sensor CEM User Manual*."



# Troubleshooting

## Introduction

If you have problems using your software, please consult the following resources:

- the contents of this manual or the online Help available from within WYSIWYG
- the Cast Software Web site at [www.cast-soft.com](http://www.cast-soft.com)

If these resources are insufficient, please contact Technical Support.

## Help from Technical Support

For assistance with a problem, contact Technical Support directly at one of the offices identified below.

When calling for help, please have the following information ready:

- the level of WYSIWYG that you are using (Report, Design, or Perform)
- software version (from the **Help** menu, choose **About WYSIWYG**)
- the kind of computer that you are using (processor and speed, amount of memory, graphics card, operating system)
- DMX interface type (if applicable)

### North America

Cast Software

Technical Support

35 Ripley Avenue, Unit 1

Toronto, ON M6S 3P2

Canada

Phone: +1 877 989 2278

Fax: +1 416 597 9594

E-mail: [techsupport@cast-soft.com](mailto:techsupport@cast-soft.com)

Web site: [www.cast-soft.com](http://www.cast-soft.com)

### United Kingdom

A.C. Lighting Ltd.

Technical Sales & Support:

Centauri House

Hillbottom Road

High Wycombe

Bucks, HP12 4HQ

UK

Phone: +44 (0)1494 446000  
Fax: +44 (0)1494 461024  
E-mail: [wysiwyg@aclighting.com](mailto:wysiwyg@aclighting.com)  
Web site: [www.aclighting.com](http://www.aclighting.com)

### **Germany**

ARCUS GmbH  
Obermeiers Feld 2-4  
33104 Paderborn  
Germany  
Phone: +49 (0) 5254 93069 0  
Fax: +49 (0) 5254 93069 29  
E-mail: [support@arcus-lighting.com](mailto:support@arcus-lighting.com)  
Web site: [www.arcus-lighting.com](http://www.arcus-lighting.com)

### **Japan**

Theater Engineering  
Phone: +81 (0) 3 3706 5611  
Fax: +81 (0) 3 3706 6766  
E-mail: [info@thea-eng.co.jp](mailto:info@thea-eng.co.jp)  
Web site: [www.thea-eng.co.jp](http://www.thea-eng.co.jp)

## **Support for WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition**

For assistance with a problem related to WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition, contact the manufacturer of the console to which you are connected. The console manufacturer is listed on the Welcome page that appears when you launch the application.



# Welcome to WYSIWYG

## Introduction

The WYSIWYG suite of software products, designed specifically for lighting professionals, offers a range of solutions to meet the needs of designers, assistants, electricians, console operators, teachers, and students.

WYSIWYG is the essential tool if you are looking to

- increase creative freedom
- save time
- win more contracts
- cut costs

Within the WYSIWYG suite of products, any higher level product contains all the features of a lower level product. WYSIWYG Report, Design, and Perform are the core products, with WYSIWYG Report offering basic CAD and paperwork solutions, and WYSIWYG Perform providing an end-to-end solution including CAD, paperwork, rendering, and pre-visualization.

In less than one day of training, you can begin working with WYSIWYG and see your lighting design without actually installing any lights. You can even see what a new lighting fixture can do before you rent, buy, or install it. Once your design is complete, WYSIWYG handles the logistics; it automatically generates plots, schedules, pipe-tapes, and color and gobo lists.

For more information on each of the three main levels of WYSIWYG, see the appropriate section:

- **WYSIWYG Report** For details, see “WYSIWYG Report” on page 17.
- **WYSIWYG Design** For details, see “WYSIWYG Design” on page 18.
- **WYSIWYG Perform** For details, see “WYSIWYG Perform” on page 20.

## Chapter 2

---

# The WYSIWYG suite of software products



This chapter describes the different levels of WYSIWYG.

### In this chapter

WYSIWYG Report	17
WYSIWYG Design	18
WYSIWYG Perform	20
WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition	22
WYSIWYG Learn	24
WYSIWYG Network	26
WYSILink	27







# WYSIWYG Report

## Introduction

WYSIWYG Report is the basic WYSIWYG package. It allows lighting professionals to create 2D plans of their productions along with all the necessary paperwork.

WYSIWYG Report is also available in an educational edition. This product, WYSIWYG Report Educational Edition, is a fully functional version of Report that is available to students and faculty at a special price.

**Note:** The following specifications are subject to change.

## Software features

- 2D plotting of set and lighting designs (plans, sections and elevations)
- Comprehensive 3D library of fixtures, accessories, truss, colors, gobos, props, and so on
- Extensive CAD tools
- Excellent zooming and maneuvering abilities
- Custom layers and scenes for complete control and management of information
- Loading and exporting of DXF, DWG, Excel, BMP, and JPG
- Tabular editing of lighting information including channel, dimmer, color, and so on
- Fully integrated paperwork and 2D CAD systems
- Error checking of production paperwork and hookups
- Reports including instrument counts and schedules, patch sheets, and so on
- Printing of plots and reports up to 36"x 48" / A0
- Custom report and plot content and layout
- Ability to print all view types including 2D CAD, reports, spreadsheets, bitmap files, jpeg files, and logos
- Multi-monitor support
- 12 months of software and library updates included

## Upgrade suggestions

- A faster processor improves responsiveness.
- Memory requirements depend on the size of the show. Insufficient memory can seriously affect performance. Add memory if there is excessive disk activity.

## Modes

The following working modes are available in WYSIWYG Report:

- CAD 2D
- DATA
- PRES 2D

Refer to the respective chapters of this guide for detailed explanations about the features in each mode.



## Introduction

WYSIWYG Design builds on the feature set of Report and adds the ability for lighting professionals to explore their designs in a 3D environment. 3D CAD tools, shaded and isometric views, and photo-realistic rendering tools are added, as well as the ability to create and store images of lighting looks using the integrated design tools.

WYSIWYG Design is also available in an educational edition. This product, WYSIWYG Design Educational Edition, is a fully functional version of Design that is available to students and faculty at a special price.

**Note:** The following specifications are subject to change.

## Software features

- Includes all the features of WYSIWYG Report
- 3D plotting of set and lighting designs
- Multiple working views including isometric
- Comprehensive 3D library of fixtures, accessories, truss, colors, gobos, props, and so on
- Extended library includes textures and materials
- Library objects are multi-layered for realistic texturing
- Objects have variable translucency
- Fully integrated paperwork and CAD systems
- Loading and exporting of DXF, DWG, Excel, BMP, and JPG file types
- Print all view types including 3D views, bitmap files, jpeg files, spreadsheets and logos
- Integrated design mode allows creation of static lighting looks without a console
- Rendering generates a photo-realistic picture of your lighting look
- Rendering wizard provides options for smoke, shadows, ambient light, and so on
- Renderings include bounce and reflection from surfaces
- OpenGL technology for improved beam simulation
- Multi-monitor support
- 12 months of software and library updates included

## Upgrade suggestions

- A faster processor improves responsiveness and rendering times.
- Memory requirements depend on the size of the show. Insufficient memory can seriously affect performance. Add memory if there is excessive disk activity.
- A high-performance OpenGL accelerator card significantly improves the performance of real-time simulation.

## Modes

The following working modes are available in WYSIWYG Design:

- CAD
- DATA
- DESIGN
- PRES

Refer to the respective chapters of this guide for detailed explanations about the features in each mode.



# WYSIWYG Perform

## Introduction

WYSIWYG Perform builds on the feature set of Report and Design and adds the ability for lighting professionals to pre-cue entire shows in real time. Users can create their productions in 3D along with all the necessary paperwork. A console can then be connected to the computer and WYSIWYG Perform will simulate the exact effect of the console's output in real-time.

**Note:** The following specifications are subject to change.

## Software features

- Includes all the features of WYSIWYG Report and Design
- 3D plotting of set and lighting designs
- Multiple working views including front, back, sides, top, bottom, and isometric
- Comprehensive 3D library of fixtures, accessories, truss, colors, gobos, props, and so on
- Fully integrated paperwork and CAD systems
- Live mode for real-time lighting visualization
- Accurate simulation of conventional and automated fixtures
- OpenGL technology for improved beam simulation
- Light emitting surfaces allow simulation of lasers, neon, LEDs, projection screens, and so on
- Easy hook-up to consoles and other DMX sources
- Auto Focus protocol lets WYSIWYG send color and focus data to consoles
- Integrated design mode allows you to create lighting looks without a console
- Rendering generates a photo-realistic picture of your cue or lighting look
- Renderings include bounce and reflection from surfaces
- Animated renderings available through certified service providers
- Multi-monitor support
- 12 months of software and library updates included

## Upgrade suggestions

- A faster processor improves responsiveness and rendering times.
- Memory requirements depend on the size of the show. Insufficient memory can seriously affect performance. Add memory if there is excessive disk activity.
- A high-performance OpenGL accelerator card significantly improves the performance of real-time simulation.

## Modes

The following working modes are available in WYSIWYG Perform:

- CAD
- DATA

- DESIGN
- PRES
- LIVE

Refer to the respective chapters of this guide for detailed explanations about the features in each mode.



# WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition

## Introduction

WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition is a version of WYSIWYG Perform intended for distribution with a specific console or family of consoles. Users purchasing a compatible console will receive this edition of WYSIWYG Perform to create shows and begin pre-cueing activities. The Console Edition of WYSIWYG Perform includes most of the functionality of Perform with certain features restricted or removed.

**Note:** The following specifications are subject to change.

## Software features

- Includes all the features of WYSIWYG Perform, other than printing or exporting in any format
- 3D plotting of set and lighting designs
- Multiple working views including front, back, sides, top, bottom, and isometric
- Comprehensive 3D library of fixtures, accessories, truss, colors, gobos, props, and so on
- Fully integrated paperwork and CAD systems
- Live mode is restricted to visualizing one patch universe at a time
- Accurate simulation of conventional and automated fixtures
- OpenGL technology for improved beam simulation
- Light emitting surfaces allow simulation of lasers, neon, LEDs, projection screens, and so on
- AutoPatch transmits the entire show patch regardless of channel count
- Rendering is available in Design and Live modes but is limited to 76,800 pixels

## Upgrade suggestions

- A faster processor improves responsiveness and rendering times.
- Memory requirements depend on the size of the show. Insufficient memory can seriously affect performance. Add memory if there is excessive disk activity.
- A high-performance OpenGL accelerator card significantly improves the performance of real-time simulation.

**Note:** You cannot upgrade from WYSIWYG Report or Design to WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition. You can, however, upgrade from WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition to WYSIWYG Perform, removing any console restrictions.

## Modes

The following working modes are available in WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition:

- CAD
- DATA
- DESIGN
- PRES
- LIVE

Refer to the respective chapters of this guide for detailed explanations about the features in each mode.



## Introduction

WYSIWYG Learn is a special configuration of WYSIWYG that allows an educational institution to run ten instances of the software on a Local Area Network. The workstations can be configured to run any combination of WYSIWYG Report or WYSIWYG Design. In addition, one workstation can run WYSIWYG Perform.

**Note:** The following specifications are subject to change.

## Software features

- Includes all the features of WYSIWYG Report, Design, or Perform
- 2D and 3D plotting of set and lighting designs
- Multiple working views including front, back, sides, top, bottom, and isometric
- Comprehensive 3D library of fixtures, accessories, truss, colors, gobos, props, and so on
- Fully integrated paperwork and CAD systems
- Accurate simulation of conventional and automated fixtures
- OpenGL technology for improved beam simulation
- Light emitting surfaces allow simulation of lasers, neon, LEDs, projection screens, and so on
- Easy hook-up to consoles and other DMX sources
- Auto Focus protocol lets WYSIWYG send color and focus data to consoles
- Rendering generates a photo-realistic picture of your cue or lighting look
- Renderings include bounce and reflection from surfaces
- Animated renderings are available through certified service providers
- Multi-monitor support
- 12 months of software and library updates included

## Upgrade suggestions

- A faster processor improves responsiveness and rendering times.
- Memory requirements depend on the size of the show. Insufficient memory can seriously affect performance. Add memory if there is excessive disk activity.
- A high-performance OpenGL accelerator card significantly improves the performance of real-time simulation.

## Modes

The following working modes are available in WYSIWYG Learn:

- CAD
- DATA
- DESIGN
- PRES
- LIVE



Refer to the respective chapters of this guide for detailed explanations about the features in each mode.



# WYSIWYG Network

## Introduction

WYSIWYG Network allows you to run as many licenses of WYSIWYG Report, Design, and Perform as you want to over a network. The workstations can be configured to run any combination of these products with the use of a single network dongle.

**Note:** The following specifications are subject to change.

## Software features

- Includes all the features of WYSIWYG Report, Design, and/or Perform
- 2D and 3D plotting of set and lighting designs
- Multiple working views including front, back, sides, top, bottom, and isometric
- Comprehensive 3D library of fixtures, accessories, truss, colors, gobos, props, and so on
- Fully integrated paperwork and CAD systems
- Accurate simulation of conventional and automated fixtures
- OpenGL technology for improved beam simulation
- Light emitting surfaces allow simulation of lasers, neon, LEDs, projection screens, and so on
- Easy hook-up to consoles and other DMX sources
- Auto Focus protocol lets WYSIWYG send color and focus data to console
- Rendering generates a photo-realistic picture of your cue or lighting look
- Renderings include bounce and reflection from surfaces
- Animated renderings available through certified service providers
- Multi-monitor support
- 12 months of software and library updates included

## Upgrade suggestions

- A faster processor improves responsiveness and rendering times.
- Memory requirements depend on the size of the show. Insufficient memory can seriously affect performance. Add memory if there is excessive disk activity.
- A high-performance OpenGL accelerator card significantly improves the performance of real-time simulation.

## Modes

The working modes available in WYSIWYG Network depend on your product configuration. Refer to the WYSIWYG Report, Design, or Perform sections accordingly. Detailed explanations of each of the various modes are included in this guide.



## Introduction

WYSILink is an add-on for WYSIWYG Report, Design, or Perform and inserts a mode button (Link) to the base product when installed. It acts as an interface to ETCLink and monitors the Sensor line of dimmers. When a problem with a fixture is detected, data about the fixture is logged in Link mode and the image of the affected fixture is highlighted on your plot.

**Note:** The following specifications are subject to change.

## Software features

- Add-on to the features of WYSIWYG Report, Perform, or Design
- System diagnostic fixture data is written to a Message Log
- Ability to record and play backup looks
- Loads can be recorded for specific dimmers



## Chapter 3

---

# Installation, configuration, activation, and registration



This chapter provides instructions on how to install, configure, activate, and register the WYSIWYG software. You must activate and register the software before you can start using WYSIWYG.

### In this chapter

Installation	31
3Click FINISH to complete the installation.	37
Upgrades	42
Subscriptions	43
Passwords	45





# Installation

## Introduction

Follow the procedures in this section to install the level of WYSIWYG that you have purchased.

### Minimum hardware requirements for WYSIWYG Report

- Pentium or compatible processor, 1 GHz or better
- Windows ME/XP operating system
- 256 MB of RAM
- NTFS-formatted hard drive

**Note:** You cannot install WYSIWYG on a hard drive that has been formatted in the FAT32 file system.

- 400 MB of free disk space
- 1024 x 768 or better resolution
- free USB port

### Minimum hardware requirements for WYSIWYG Design

- Pentium or compatible processor 1GHz or better
- Windows ME/XP operating system
- 256 MB of RAM
- NTFS-formatted hard drive

**Note:** You cannot install WYSIWYG on a hard drive that has been formatted in the FAT32 file system.

- 400 MB of free disk space (
- 1024 x 768 or better resolution
- OpenGL - accelerated display adapter with 16 MB video memory
- Free USB port

### Minimum hardware requirements for WYSIWYG Perform

- Pentium or compatible processor 1GHz or better
- Windows ME/XP operating system
- 256 MB of RAM (512 MB preferred)
- NTFS-formatted hard drive

**Note:** You cannot install WYSIWYG on a hard drive that has been formatted in the FAT32 file system.

- 400 MB of free disk space
- 1024 x 768 or better resolution
- OpenGL - accelerated display adapter with 16 MB video memory
- WYG-it 2 DMX reception device (except when used with certain consoles - contact the console manufacturer for details)

- MIDI output port to use with AutoFocus
- Free USB port

## Minimum hardware requirements for WYSIWYG Network/WYSIWYG Learn

- Pentium III, or compatible processor, 300 MHz or better
- Windows ME/XP operating system
- 64 MB of RAM
- NTFS-formatted hard drive

**Note:** You cannot install WYSIWYG on a hard drive that has been formatted in the FAT32 file system.

- 2 MB of free disk space
- Windows ME/XP - USB or ECP parallel port
- Network interface card running TCP/IP

### For WYSIWYG Perform workstations:

- Use a WYG-it 2 or compatible DMX reception device (except when used with certain consoles - contact the console manufacturer for details)
- MIDI output port to use with Autofocus-enabled consoles

## Minimum hardware requirements for WYSILink

- Sensor dimmer rack with Control Electronic Module (CEM), software version 3.11 or later
- ETCNet2 DMX Node with RFU/Link option, software version 2.1.1 or later

## Installing WYSIWYG

The installation procedure for WYSIWYG is the same regardless of the level that you have purchased.

A guide to the installation appears when the CD is inserted into your PC's CD drive. This guide displays buttons for all the installation options:

- Install WYSIWYG
- Install WYSIWYG Network Server (see "Installing WYSIWYG Learn or WYSIWYG Network" on page 34)
- Quick Start Guide
- Quick Start Tutorials
- Reference Guide
- Release Notes
- Install Adobe Acrobat Reader





Click *INSTALL WYSIWYG* to install the software. Follow the steps in the Installation Wizard as prompted.

If the installation wizard does not automatically open:

- 1 Access the CD-ROM drive of your computer.
- 2 Double-click the icon for the *Wyginstall* program.
- 3 Follow the steps in the Installation Wizard.

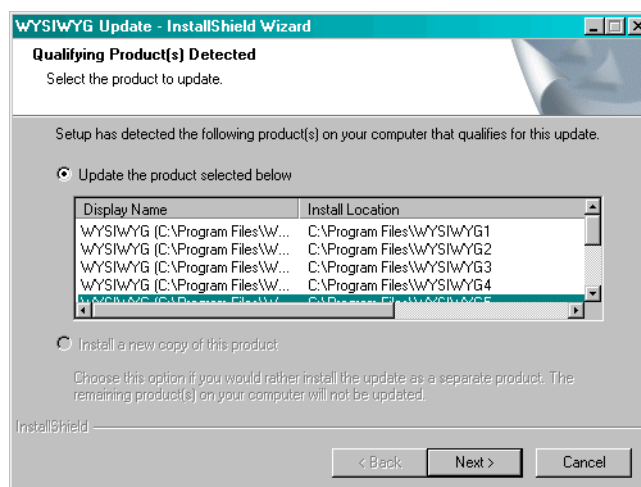
## Installing an In-Place update

If you already have a previous release of WYSIWYG installed on your computer, you can easily update to the current release by installing an in-place update. This update allows you to enhance a version of WYSIWYG that is a maximum of two releases back from the current release. You do not have to uninstall the previous version of WYSIWYG to perform the update.

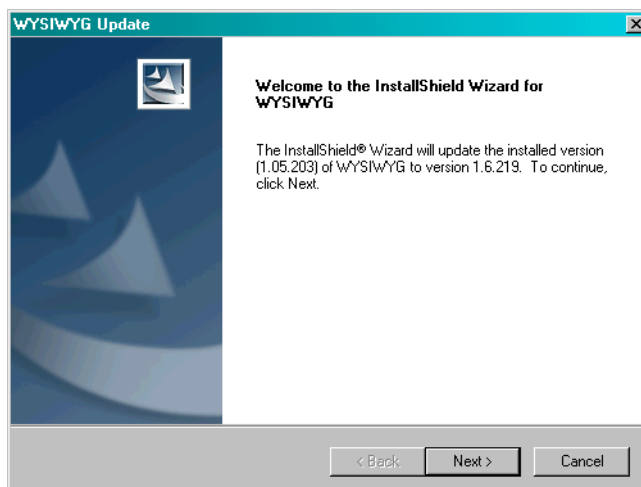
### To install an in-place update

- 1 From the *WYSIWYG Install* window, select *Install WYSIWYG*.

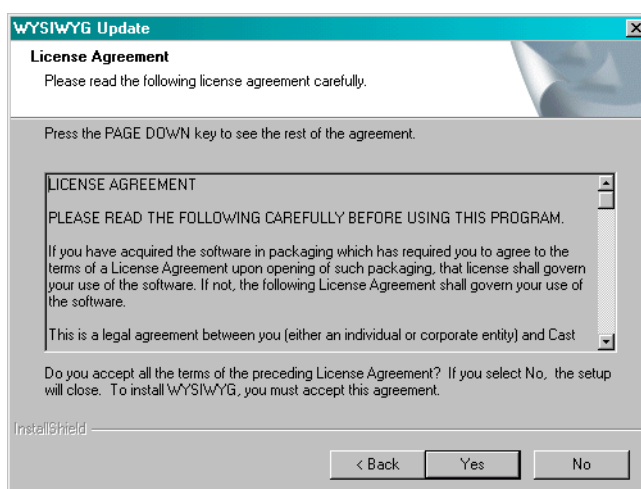
**Result:** If you have more than one release installed on your computer, the following dialog box is displayed. If you have only one release installed, skip to step 4.



- 2 Select *Update the product selected below*.
- 3 From the list of WYSIWYG releases, highlight the release that you want to update, and then click *Next*.
- 4 On the *WYSIWYG Update* window, select *Next*.



- 5 On the *WYSIWYG Update* window, click *Yes* to accept the terms of the license.



**Result:** The updated files are copied to your computer.

- 6 After all the files are copied, click *FINISH* to complete the update.

## Installing WYSIWYG Learn or WYSIWYG Network

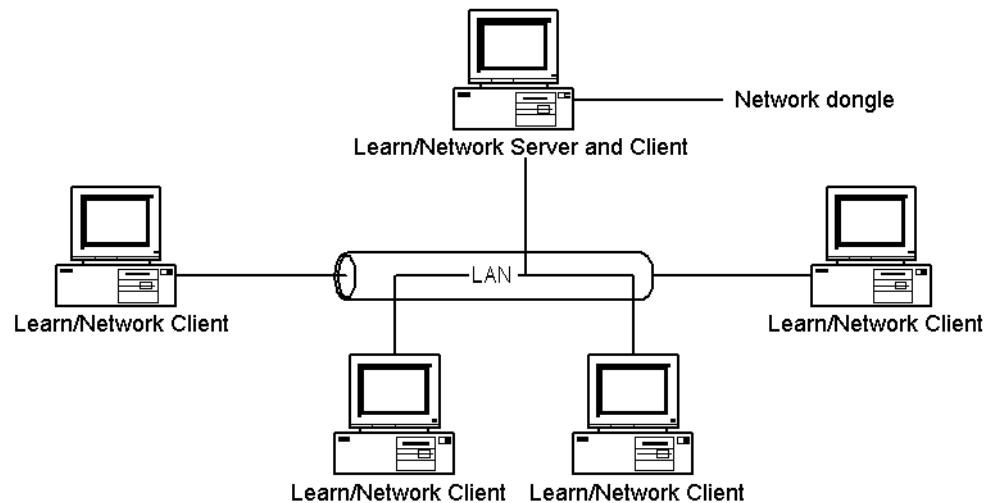
### Software components

The WYSIWYG Network and WYSIWYG Learn systems are composed of a server and one or more clients.

The Server is a small application that installs the SuperProServer service. This service is required to detect the WYSIWYG Learn or Network dongle (a list of current services on a workstation can be viewed under *Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services*). You need to install the WYSIWYG Server on only one computer on the network.

A Learn or Network Client enables the software to function over the network. The Client must be installed on all desired workstations. WYSIWYG Learn can run up to 10 clients. However, the number of clients for WYSIWYG Network is restricted based on the configuration purchased.

A typical WYSIWYG Network/Learn setup is illustrated in the diagram on the following page. All computers running Network/Learn components must be on the same network (and therefore have the same network ID and subnet mask).



## Network services

### Windows XP

Services are supported in Windows XP. Services start running as soon as your computer is turned on, regardless of whether the user is logged in. The service begins automatically each time the workstation is restarted, and runs in the background without any prompting from the user. The service may also be started manually; the choice is available during the installation process.

### Windows ME

Windows ME does not support services. In this case, the Server installs a small .EXE file for which a shortcut is created automatically in the start-up folder of the startup menu. When a user logs on, any shortcuts in the start-up folder are triggered instantly. The SuperProServer service runs in the background until the user logs off. The "service" may also be started manually; this choice is available during the installation process.

### Network protocol

WYSIWYG Learn or WYSIWYG Network will run on any LAN that supports TCP/IP protocol (NetBEUI and IPX/SPX networks are not currently supported).

### Detecting the network dongle

If the service is not running, the Clients will not be able to detect the dongle and the application will terminate. Ensure that the dongle is attached to the workstation that is running the Server.

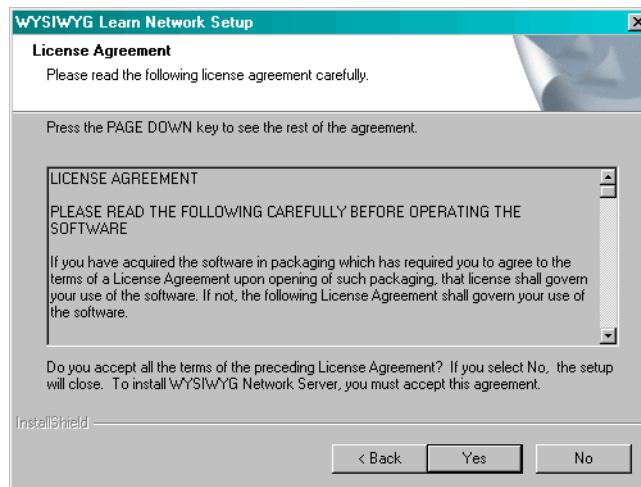
### Before you begin

- Previous versions of WYSILAB or WYSIWYG Learn/Network must be removed before beginning the install process (if this step is not completed, the install menu will offer the option before continuing with the installation). The workstations must be restarted for the changes to take effect.

## To install the Server

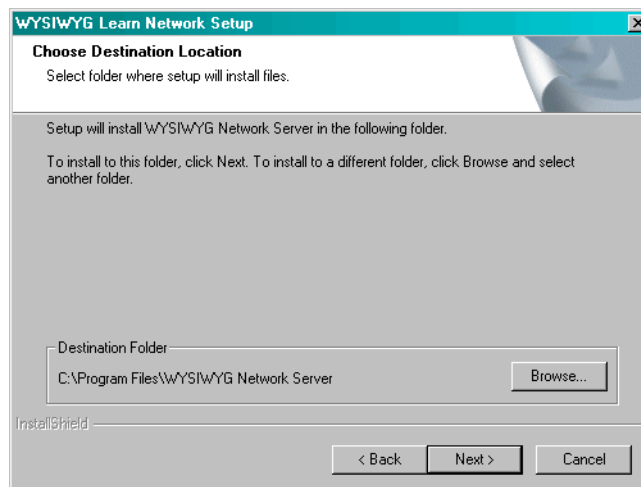
- 1 From the *WYSIWYG Install* window, select *Install WYSIWYG Network Server*.

**Note:** The Server should only be installed on one computer on the network. This is the computer to which you will attach the network dongle.



- 2 On the *Setup* window, click *Yes* to accept the terms of the license.
- 3 Click *Next*.

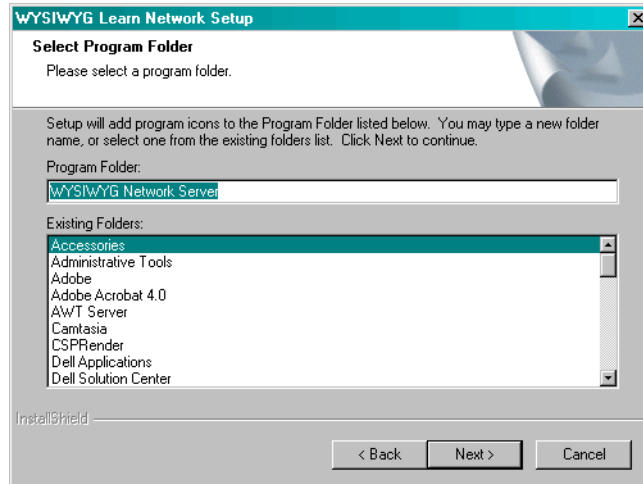
**Result:** The *Choose Destination Location* window appears.



- 4 Select a destination location for the Server files. The default location is C:\Program Files\WYSIWYG Server.

- 5 Click *Next*.

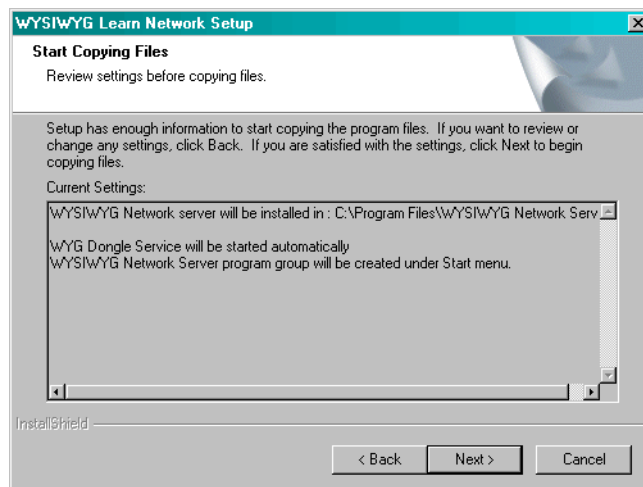
**Result:** The *Select Program Folder* window appears.



- 6 Select a program folder for the shortcut. The default is WYSIWYG Server.

- 7 Click *Next*.

**Result:** The *Start Copying Files* window appears.



- 8 Review the installation settings, and then click *Next* to begin the installation.

- 9 After all the files are copied, click *FINISH* to complete the installation.

### To install the Network/Learn Client

- 1 From the *WYSIWYG Installation* window, select *Install WYSIWYG*.

**Result:** The CAST license screen appears.

- 2 If you accept the terms of the license, click *Yes* to continue. The installation begins.

- 3 Click *FINISH* to complete the installation.



# Configuration, activation, and registration

## Introduction

After installing the product, when you launch WYSIWYG for the first time, the Product Configuration Wizard appears, enabling you to choose the product level that you want to run. You can choose from standard product levels (such as Design and Report), Network products, or you can run the Demo or Viewer versions of WYSIWYG.

**Note:** To run any of the products listed in the Wizard, you must first have the appropriate dongle installed on your computer (to run a network product, you must have a network dongle installed on a computer that is accessible from your PC).

After you proceed through the steps of the Wizard, you are prompted to activate your product (only if you are upgrading from version 3.X to the latest version), and then you are prompted to register the software. You must activate and register the WYSIWYG software before you can start using it. To activate the WYSIWYG software involves entering an 11-digit activation code. To register the software involves entering a validation code.

This section is broken down into the following three steps:

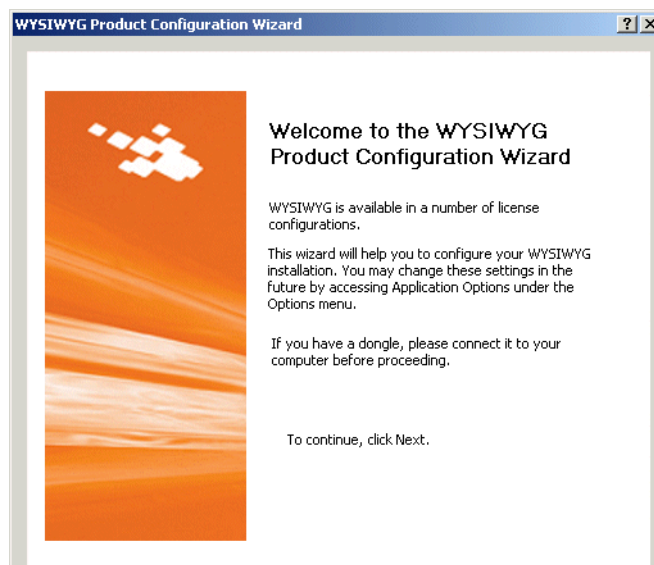
- starting WYSIWYG for the first time and running through the Product Configuration Wizard
- activating the software
- registering the software

## To start WYSIWYG for the first time

**Note:** Before you perform this procedure, ensure that you have the correct dongle installed on your computer, or that the network dongle is installed on a computer that you can access from your PC.

- 1 On your desktop, click the shortcut icon to start WYSIWYG (or click **Start > All Programs > WYSIWYG > WYSIWYG**).

**Result:** The WYSIWYG Product Configuration Wizard appears.

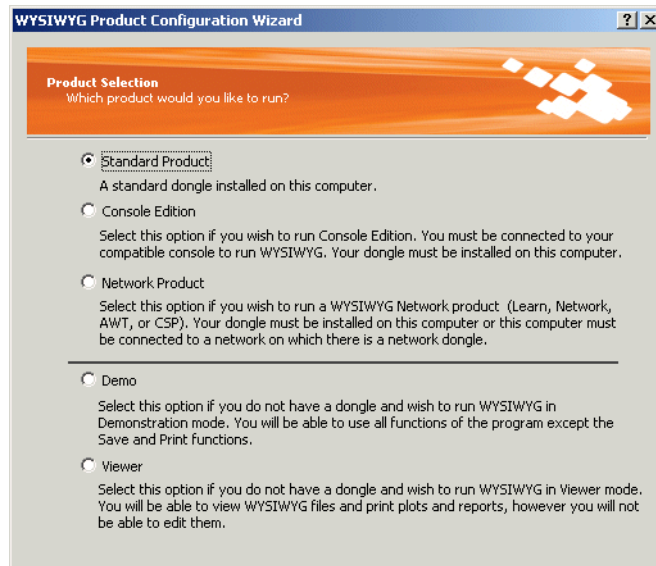


- 2 To ensure that the Wizard appears the next time you launch WYSIWYG, leave the check mark in the box beside *Show me this wizard next time I run WYSIWYG*; to configure the program so the Wizard does not appear the next time you launch WYSIWYG, clear this check box.

**Note:** If you clear this check box, you can always set it again in the Application Options window. For details, see page 84.

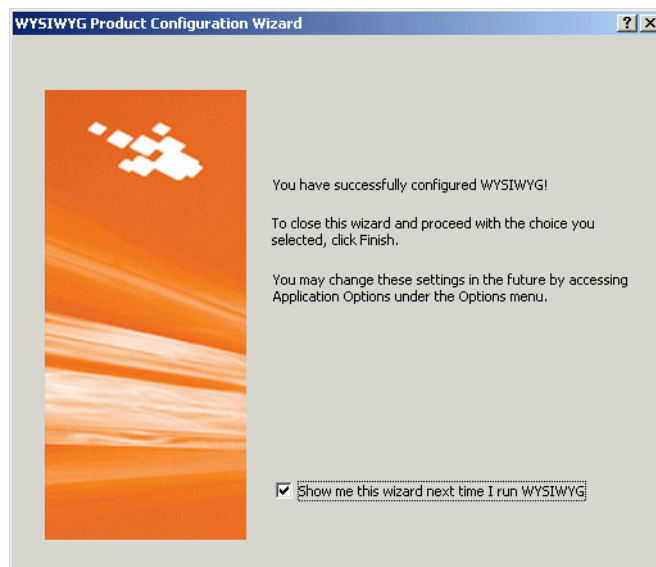
- 3 Click *Next*.

**Result:** The Product Selection window appears, enabling you to choose the product level that you want to launch.



- 4 Select the product that you want to launch (you must have the correct dongle installed to launch the program), and then click *Next*.

**Result:** The program verifies that you have the correct dongle attached, and the Product Configuration Successful window appears:



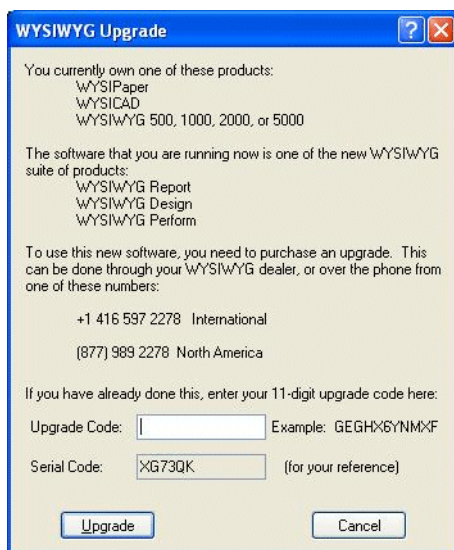
- 5 Click *Finish*.
- 6 The product that you chose launches and the Activate or Register window appears (based on the level of product that you have purchased).
  - If you have purchased a new box product containing a new version dongle skip to the product registration process. For details, see "To register WYSIWYG" on page 40.

- If you are upgrading from WYSIWYG 3.X, continue with the next procedure, “To activate WYSIWYG” on page 40.

## To activate WYSIWYG

**Note:** This procedure is only applicable if you are upgrading from WYSIWYG 3.X. If you are upgrading from a newer release, or if you have just purchased the latest release, then you can skip directly to the registration process. For details, see “To register WYSIWYG” on page 40.

- 1 If you previously owned WYSIWYG 3.X and have just upgraded to the new version of the product, the first window that appears is the *WYSIWYG Upgrade* dialog box.

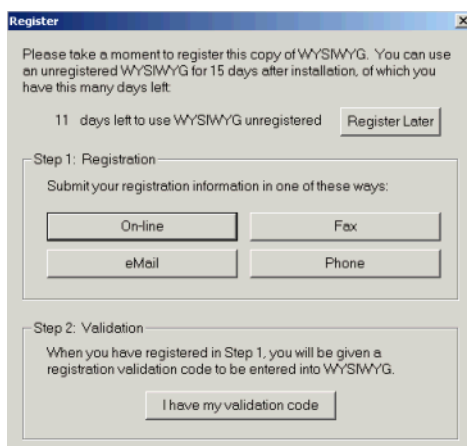


The code that you type in this dialog enables your old dongle to function with the new version of WYSIWYG.

- 2 Type your upgrade code, and then click *Upgrade*.
- 3 Proceed to “To register WYSIWYG” below.

## To register WYSIWYG

- 1 Once you have gone through the Product Configuration Wizard and you have successfully activated your product, the Register window appears, prompting you to register your software.



**Note:** You can postpone registration for a period of up to 15 days after installation.



To register later, click *Register Later*. You must register and obtain a Registration Validation Code to continue using the product after this time. It is recommended that you register as soon as possible to avoid any restrictions on using the product.

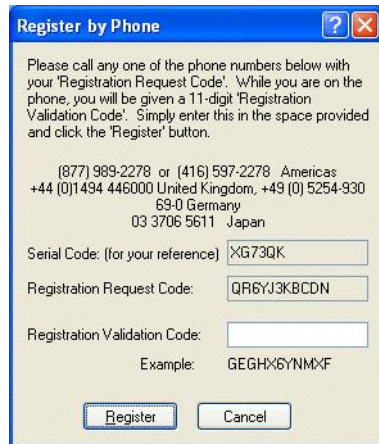
You can register by phone, online, fax, or e-mail.

- 2 To register by phone, click *Phone*, and then proceed to step 3.

To register by any of the other methods, select the appropriate button and follow the instructions as prompted.

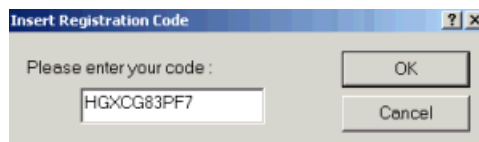
When you have obtained your validation code, click *I have my validation code*, and then proceed to step 4.

- 3 If you have chosen to register by phone, the *Register by Phone* dialog box is displayed.



Follow the instructions in the dialog. Type your validation code, and then click *Register*. A successful registration completes the registration and activation process.

- 4 If you selected *I have my validation code* in step 2, the *Insert Registration Code* dialog box appears.



- 5 Type your validation code, and then click *OK*. A successful registration completes the registration and activation process.

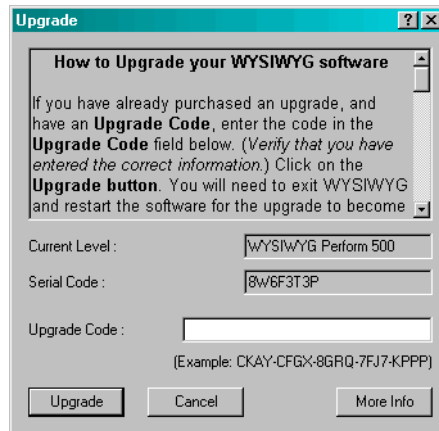


## Introduction

An upgrade code enables you to run the advanced features of a higher level product, either Design or Perform, using the same dongle that you already own. Contact your local WYSIWYG dealer to purchase an upgrade. You will be given an upgrade code at the time of purchase.

### To upgrade the level of your WYSIWYG product

- 1 Start WYSIWYG.
- 2 From the **Help** menu, choose **Upgrade**.



The current level of WYSIWYG installed on your computer is displayed in the *Current Level* box. The serial code of your dongle is shown in the *Serial Code* box.

- 3 In the *Upgrade Code* box, type your upgrade code, and then click *Upgrade*.
- 4 Exit WYSIWYG, and then restart your computer.
- 5 Launch WYSIWYG.

**Result:** The new level of software is displayed in the upper right corner of the WYSIWYG user interface.

**Note:** If you would like to purchase an upgrade but are unsure of who to contact, click *More Info* to obtain a list of WYSIWYG dealers.



## Introduction

Your subscription to WYSIWYG is valid for a specific period of time. You can easily view and renew your subscription from within WYSIWYG.

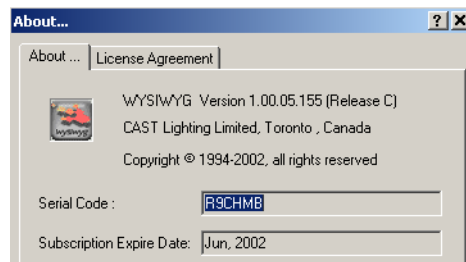
## Obtaining subscription details

Details of your subscription are stored within WYSIWYG.

### To obtain details

From the **Help** menu, choose **About WYSIWYG**.

**Result:** The month and year that your subscription expires is displayed in the *Subscription Expire Date* box.



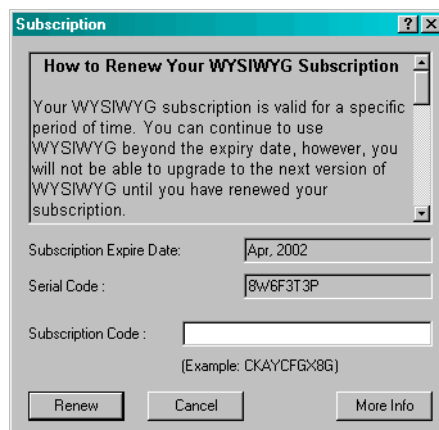
## Renewing your subscription

Your WYSIWYG subscription is valid for a specific period of time. You can continue to use WYSIWYG beyond your subscription expiry date; however, you will not be able to access the quarterly software updates until you renew your subscription.

Contact your local WYSIWYG dealer to purchase a renewal for your subscription. Cast Software provides you with the subscription code that you require.

### To renew your subscription

- 1 From the **Help** menu, choose **Renew Subscription**.



The date when your WYSIWYG subscription expires is displayed in the *Subscription Expire Date* box.

- 2** In the *Subscription Code* box, type the code. The code is 10 alphanumeric long.
- 3** Verify that you have entered the correct information.
- 4** Click *Renew*.
- 5** Exit WYSIWYG, and then restart the software for the renewal to take effect.

**Note:** If you would like to renew your subscription but are unsure of who to contact, click *More Info* to obtain a list of WYSIWYG dealers.



# Passwords

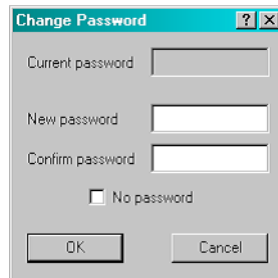
## Introduction

You can set a password in WYSIWYG to password-protect your dongle.

### To set a password

- 1 From the **Help** menu, choose **Password**.

**Result:** The *Change Password* dialog box appears.



- 2 In the *New password* box, type your new password. The password can be any combination of letters, numbers, and characters. As you type the password, WYSIWYG displays an asterisk (\*) for each character that you type. The length of the password can be between 6 and 20 characters.
- 3 In the *Confirm password* box, re-enter the password.
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The next time that you launch WYSIWYG on the same computer, you will be prompted to enter your password. In the *Enter password* box, type your password. If you do not want to be prompted to enter a password every time you launch WYSIWYG, select the *Remember for next time* check box.

### To change a password

- 1 From the **Help** menu, choose **Password**.

**Result:** The *Change Password* dialog box is displayed.

- 2 In the *Current password* box, type the password that you previously set. You must type the current password if you want to change the password. As you type the password, WYSIWYG displays an asterisk (\*) for each character you type.
- 3 In the *New password* box, type a new password.
- 4 In the *Confirm password* box, re-enter the password.
- 5 Click *OK*.

**Note:** If you decide that you do not want to password-protect your dongle, select the *No password* check box.



# Chapter 4

---

## WYSIWYG user interface



All of the WYSIWYG levels use the same set of screens. The user interface was designed to facilitate smooth transitions from mode to mode, and to keep the data organized and easy to find.

### In this chapter

Navigation and screen set-up	49
Shortcut bars	53
Toolbars	57
Status bar	64
Wireframe views	66
Shaded views	71







## Navigation and screen set-up

### Welcome window

When you start WYSIWYG, the *Welcome* window appears. The application level is shown in the upper right corner of the window.



From the **File** menu, you can choose to open an existing file or create a new file. A list of template files are shown on the left and a list of recently saved files are shown on the right.

Click a file name to start working with WYSIWYG.

### Modes

The mode buttons located along the top of the user interface are used to access the different working modes available within the WYSIWYG levels.



Click the appropriate mode button to change modes.

#### CAD mode

CAD mode is where you create your show drawings. This includes drawing your venue, set pieces, lighting positions, focus positions, and lighting fixtures. CAD mode operates like many other CAD programs, so many of the concepts will be familiar to those who have used a computer-aided drafting program before. WYSIWYG adds features that are specific to the entertainment industry, such as a comprehensive 3D library containing truss, lighting equipment and accessories, as well as props, musical instruments, and various human figures.

In WYSIWYG Report, you are limited to 2D views of your plot. In Design and Perform, 3D isometric and shaded views are available.

## Data mode

As you draw in CAD mode, all of your show information is compiled into spreadsheets that you can access in Data mode. In this mode, you can view and edit the data for all your fixtures. Data mode operates like many other spreadsheet programs, so many of the concepts will be familiar to those who have used a spreadsheet program. The CAD and Data modes remain completely interactive and any information modified in either mode is updated in the other.

## Design mode

Design mode was created to provide lighting designers with an avenue for experimentation. Design mode can be used as a troubleshooting tool or as a creative tool to help you come up with cue concepts. In Design mode, you can create static lighting looks using the design tools, and then save and render those looks to output photo-realistic pictures. You can turn on and control fixtures without having to patch or connect to a console.

## Presentation mode

Presentation (Pres) mode contains all the tools necessary for creating professional printouts of your show document including reports, plots, and images. As with all other modes, the contents of the Pres mode are continually updated as you draw, input data, and modify your show file. In addition to being able to create your own plots, WYSIWYG provides a series of default plots and reports that are ready for printout. These defaults can be used as is or customized to suit your preferences.

## Live mode

Live mode is used for graphically simulating the output of a lighting control console or compatible offline editor. This is where you can pre-cue and visualize your show. Live mode also has rendering ability so that you can create photo-realistic pictures of the simulated lighting looks. Unlike Design mode, Live mode will display transitions from cue to cue, allowing you to see the programmed movement of light over time.

## Link mode

The WYSILink (Link) mode becomes available when you purchase and install the WYSILink add-on for WYSIWYG. WYSILink acts as an interface to ETCLink and monitors the Sensor line of dimmers. When a problem with a fixture is detected, data about the fixture is logged in Link mode and the image of the affected fixture is highlighted on your plot. You can also use this mode to record and play backup looks, and view information on dimmers and dimmer racks in your system.

## Availability of modes

The following working modes are available in WYSIWYG Report:

- CAD 2D
- DATA
- PRES 2D

The following working modes are available in WYSIWYG Design:

- CAD
- DATA
- DESIGN
- PRES

The following working modes are available in WYSIWYG Perform:

- CAD

- DATA
- DESIGN
- PRES
- LIVE

**Note:** Emphasis adds the mode button Emphasis. WYSILink adds the mode button Link.

## Layouts

Beneath the work area in each mode is a series of layout tabs. A layout is a configuration of work views. Views and layouts are mode specific. The layouts are not editable and there are no options for saving custom layouts. To this end, WYSIWYG supports pop-out frames and has multi-monitor functionality, thus providing alternative tools for customizing your work environment. These features are discussed below.

Click the appropriate layout tab to change layouts.

## Views

Views are the windows in the work space. The windows are pre-configured on the screen based on the layout, as discussed above.

The WYSIWYG views include: wireframe, wireframe-selection-only, flight case, shaded, spreadsheet, patch, error, report, image, plot, and worksheet.

The layouts and views available in each mode are discussed at the beginning of each chapter.

For more information, see “Wireframe views” on page 66 and “Shaded views” on page 71.

## Popup frames

You can place a view in a “popup frame” so that it remains active across modes. For example, if you place the patch view in a popup frame, it will remain visible even if the mode is changed from Data to CAD.

### To place a view in a popup frame

- 1 Make the desired window active.
- 2 From the **Options** menu, choose **Open in Popup Frame**.


**Tip:** Alternatively, click the *Frame Popup* tool on the *View* toolbar. 

**Result:** A new window containing a copy of the selected view opens.

### Popup frames

- retain all the functionality of the original view so you can work in the popup view if you want to
- are fully integrated with the remaining show document and are continually updated (and vice versa)
- can be resized and moved to any location on the screen or across monitors

### To display popup frames in full screen mode

- 1 Make the popup window active.
- 2 Click the *Full Screen* button. 


**Result:** The popup is expanded to fill the entire screen with no title bar visible.

**Tip:** To return the popup frame to normal size, press *ESC*.

### To minimize a popup frame

Double-click the title bar of the popup window.

**Result:** The title bar only is displayed.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Minimize* button. 

## Multiple main frames

A main frame is defined as the user interface for a given file. WYSIWYG allows multiple occurrences of the main frame to be opened for a given file. However, at no time may more than one file be open. Multiple main frames allow you to work on the same file in multiple modes at the same time.

You can close additional main frames using the *Close* tool at the top right corner of the screen. Only the initial main frame triggers a file closure when this button is pressed.

For increased flexibility, WYSIWYG supports multiple monitors. You can carry main frames and popup frames across monitors.

### To open a new main frame

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **New Window**.
- 2 Drag the title bar of the new window to place it where you want it. To make the window bigger or smaller, use the resize tab in the lower right corner of the window or the minimize and maximize tools in the top right.
- 3 Repeat to open more new windows, as required.

While each window or main frame functions independently, all the show drawings and data are fully integrated.



# Shortcut bars

## Introduction

Shortcuts are created for quick access to library items and view types, among other things. The shortcut bars are located on the left side of your screen. Shortcut bars are mode and layout specific. Each layout has designated shortcut bars.





In general, there are three types of shortcuts:

- navigation
- library
- views/tools

## Navigation shortcuts

The first type of shortcut is used for navigation purposes. The navigation shortcuts are:







-  Navigation
-  Views

Navigation shortcuts store the mode and layout destination. For example, you can save a navigation shortcut to Data mode / Patch layout. The next time you want to go back to that location, click the shortcut to save you at least one step.

View shortcuts store the plot type and zoom level. View shortcuts only apply to wireframe views.















## Library shortcuts

The second type of shortcut is used in place of browsing the library. The library shortcuts are:

-  Fixtures
-  Accessories
-  Color
-  Gobo
-  Library
-  Truss

## Views/tools shortcuts

The final type of shortcut is used to open and save views and tools. The views/tools shortcuts are:

-  Columns
-  Patch
-  Errors
-  Worksheets
-  Images
-  Layouts
-  New Plots
-  Legend
-  Key
-  Report
-  Looks
-  Concepts
-  Palettes
-  Render

## Working with shortcuts

Generally the procedure for creating, modifying, and working with shortcuts is the same regardless of the type of shortcut.

### To create a new shortcut

- 1 Right-click in open space on the appropriate shortcut bar, and then choose the appropriate **New option**.

**Note:** For navigation type shortcuts, ensure that the destination is set up, and then proceed with step 1.

- 2 Based on the type of shortcut, you are prompted to select the object or type a name for the new shortcut.
- 3 Click *Insert* or *OK*.

**Result:** The shortcut is created and added to the bottom of the list on the shortcut bar that you selected in step 1.

### To remove a shortcut

- 1 Right-click the shortcut icon that you want to remove.
- 2 Choose **Delete**.  
**Result:** You are prompted to confirm the deletion.
- 3 Click *OK* to confirm.  
**Result:** The selected shortcut is deleted.

### To rename a shortcut

- 1 Right-click the shortcut icon that you want to rename.
- 2 Choose **Rename**.
- 3 Type a new name for the shortcut.
- 4 Click *OK*.  
**Result:** The selected shortcut is renamed.

### To clone a shortcut

- 1 Right-click the shortcut icon that you want to clone.
- 2 Choose **Clone Shortcut**.
- 3 Type a name for the copy.  
**Result:** The selected shortcut is cloned and the copy is added to the bottom of the list.

### To arrange shortcuts

You can arrange shortcuts in the shortcut bar area by using drag-and-drop functionality.

- 1 Click the shortcut that you want to move.
- 2 While holding down the mouse button, press **ALT** to move the shortcut to the desired location.
- 3 Release the mouse button to place the shortcut.

### To set the display size for shortcuts

Right-click in open space on the appropriate shortcut bar, and then choose either **Icons** or **List** (depending on your current setup).

**Result:** When you choose **Icons**, all shortcuts are displayed as icons. **List** will cause the shortcuts to be listed in the shortcut bar area, thereby allowing you to fit more shortcuts in the area.

The settings are retained for all shortcuts.

**Note:** To scroll to the bottom of a long list of shortcuts, use either the scroll button on your mouse or the scroll bar along the side of the shortcut bar.

### To use a shortcut

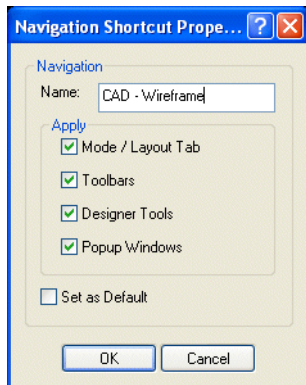
Click the shortcut icon.

As with all objects in WYSIWYG, all shortcuts have properties that affect the object being inserted, the view or tool, or the navigation method.

## To modify a shortcut's properties

- 1 Right-click the shortcut icon that you want to modify.
- 2 Choose **Properties**.

**Result:** The properties dialog box is displayed. The settings modified here affect the object, view, tool, or navigation destination of the selected shortcut. An example of the *Navigation Shortcut Properties* dialog box is shown below; however, the shortcut properties window varies based on the type of shortcut that you select.



- 3 In the *Name* box, type the new name of the shortcut.
- 4 To open the shortcut in a pop-up frame, click the *Pop-Up Window* check box. For more information on popup frames, refer to "Popup frames" on page 51.





## The menu bar

The menu bar is located within the WYSIWYG user interface, below the mode buttons and above the work area. The available menus change when moving from mode to mode. The individual menus are explained within the context of each mode chapter.

The menu bar is dockable. It has a grab bar on the left that is used to move the menu bar around the screen. It may be placed on the edges of the work area; top, bottom, left or right. It may also be dragged off the edge of the work area and into its own window. This window remains on top of the WYSIWYG screen and may be dragged anywhere on your display.

Menu commands can be accessed using a mouse, keyboard, or by using hot keys.

### To access menu commands using the keyboard

- 1 Press ALT + *n*, where *n* is the underlined letter in the menu name.

**Result:** The menu will be displayed.

- 2 Press the key corresponding to the underlined letter in the command that you want to execute.

**Note:** Some commands have shortcuts that do not require menu selection. In those cases, the shortcut keys are listed to the right of the command in the menu.

### Example:

To undo the last command, press CTRL+Z.

## Toolbars

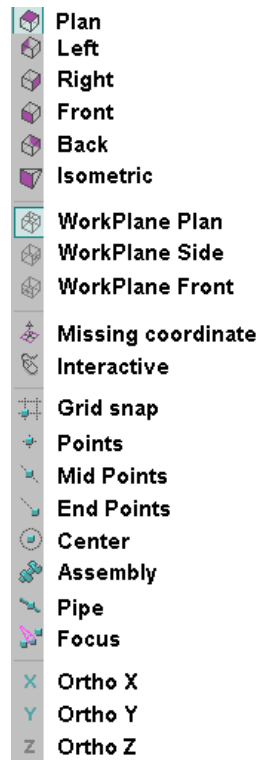
Toolbars provide button access to most commands. This is in lieu of selecting the commands through the menus in the menu bar.

Toolbars, like menus, are mode sensitive. However, unlike menus, you can customize how the toolbars are displayed and which toolbars are open for each mode. Toolbars that are greyed out in the toolbar selection list are not used in the current mode.

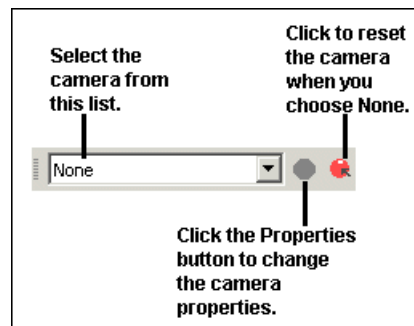
Toolbars are typically found directly under the menu bar and have a grab bar on the left that is used to move the toolbar around the screen. They can be placed on the edges of the work area (top, bottom, left or right), and can also be dragged off the edge of the work area and into their own window. This window remains on top of the WYSIWYG screen and can be dragged anywhere on your display.

The following toolbars are available (listed in alphabetical order).

## CAD Options toolbar



## Camera toolbar



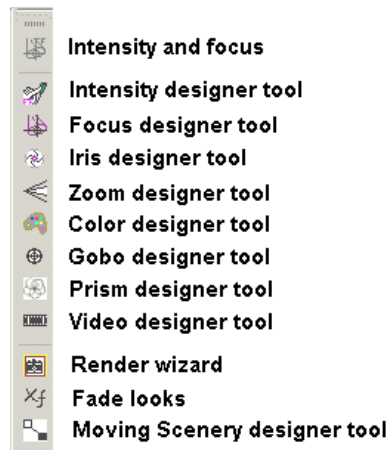
## ComEdit toolbar



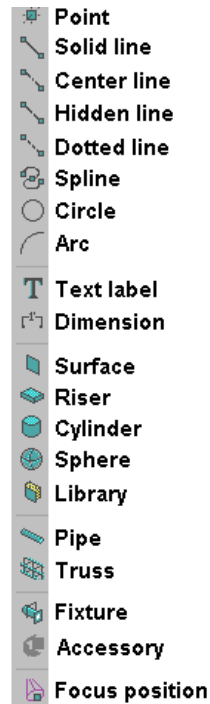
## Data toolbar



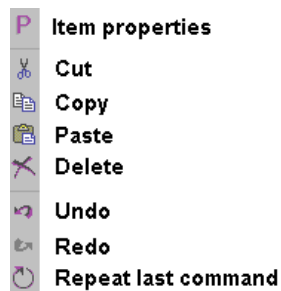
## Design toolbar



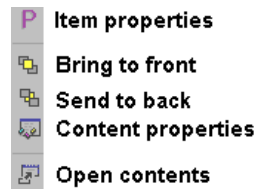
## Draw toolbar



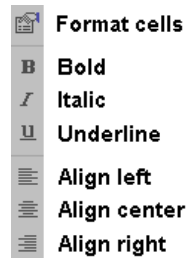
## Edit toolbar



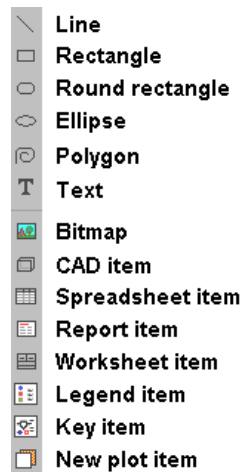
## Edit (Pres) toolbar



## Format toolbar



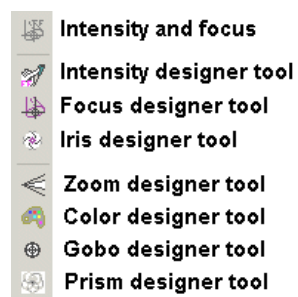
## Insert (Pres) toolbar



## Layers toolbar



## Live toolbar



## Message Log Options toolbar



## New Plots Options



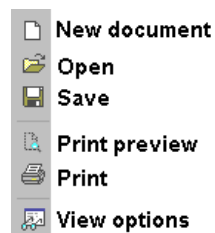
## New Plots View



## Scenes toolbar



## Standard toolbar



## Tools toolbar



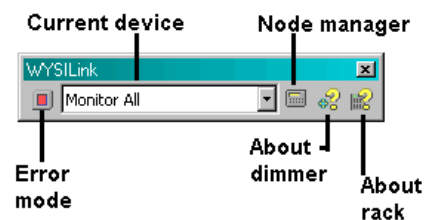
## Universes toolbar



## View toolbar



## WYSILink toolbar



## To hide and display toolbars using the toolbar list

- 1 Right-click in the toolbar area.

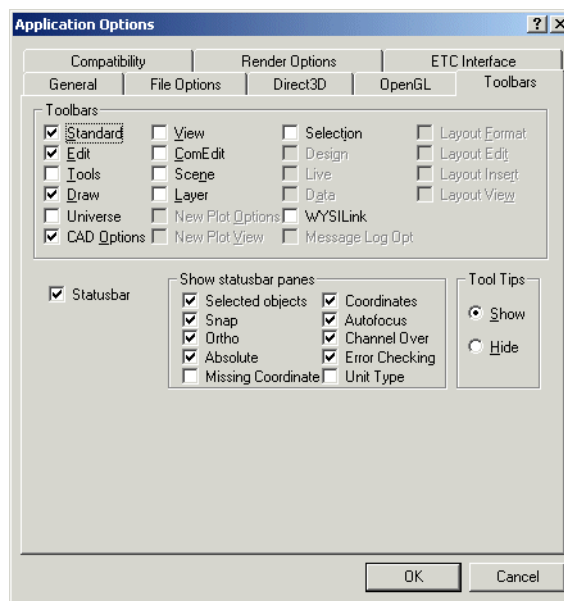
**Result:** The toolbar list is displayed.

- 2 Click on the name of the toolbar that you wish to display. A check mark to the left of the toolbar name indicates it is currently displayed.
- 3 Repeat to display or hide multiple toolbars.

**Tip:** From the toolbar list, select *Toolbars* to open the *Application Options* dialog box. In this box, you can choose multiple toolbars and configure other screen options, such as the status bar and tooltips.

## To hide and display toolbars using the Options menu

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **Application Options**.
- 2 Click the *Toolbars* tab.



- 3 Select the check boxes of the toolbars that you want to display.

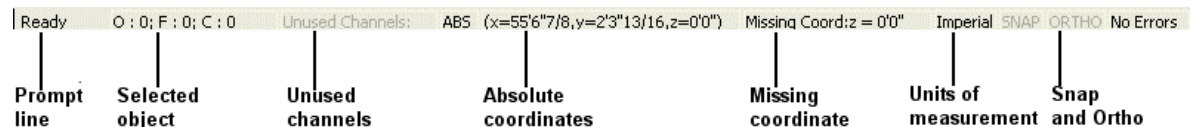
**Note:** Since toolbars are mode-sensitive, certain toolbars are disabled based on the mode that you are currently in.



## Status bar

### Introduction

The status bar is displayed along the bottom of the WYSIWYG screen, below the layout tabs. The status bar displays the prompt line, the number of unused channels (WYSIWYG Perform), selected object information, and tracks the status of the snap, ortho and absolute coordinates commands. It also tracks and displays the coordinates of the cursor.



The status bar can be turned on or off from the toolbar list. You can also customize the contents of the status bar from the Application Options window. For more information on setting the options of your drawing, refer to “Application Options window” on page 83.

### Prompt line

The prompt line displays the current status of a command within your drawing. If you are currently working with a command that requires multiple steps (the placement of a pipe, for example), the prompt line displays a message indicating the next step required to accomplish that task. The prompt line also displays a short description of a command when you point to it using your mouse.

### Selected object

In this display, “O” stands for the number of objects currently selected. The “F” stands for the number of fixtures selected and the “C” stands for the number of circuits currently selected.

O : 0; F : 0; C : 0

### Unused channels

Although there is never a limitation on how many fixtures can be patched in a file, there is a limitation on the number of DMX channels that can be simulated in Live mode. WYSIWYG will not simulate the DMX values being received on channels exceeding the Perform channel count of your system. WYSIWYG Perform is available in 500, 1000, 2000, 5000 and Unlimited channels. (WYSIWYG Unlimited has 50,000 channels.) The unused channels displayed on the status bar track the remaining channels for simulation based on the level of your Perform system. Note that fixtures on layers that are not visible, or which are not included in the current scene, are not counted.

### Absolute coordinates

Absolute coordinates is the default setting, however, you can change this to the Relative mode. This setting determines how coordinate information is displayed mid-command. In ABS, which is the default mode, the coordinates display always shows the coordinates currently under your cursor.



**Coordinates**

Coordinates are displayed in the order of X, Y and Z. The coordinates display the position of the cursor as a distance from the origin of the drawing. For more information on coordinates and setting the origin point, refer to "Coordinate system and origin" on page 102.

**Missing coordinate**

Double-click this label to set the missing coordinate. The missing coordinate (X,Y,or Z) is the coordinate whose value cannot be entered by clicking on the screen. The easiest way to determine the missing coordinate in a wireframe view is to move the mouse around and look at the status bar at the bottom of the working area. You will see only two values changing. The value that is not changing is the missing coordinate for that view or workplane.

The missing coordinate is dependent on the plot type and the workplane selected. Once entered this value will affect all subsequent objects inserted in the current view. For example, if the missing coordinate is set to 5' in a plan view, all objects will be placed 5' off the floor (X,Y,5) until the missing coordinate is changed again. Note that the missing coordinate is not a move tool; objects are not moved to the missing coordinate value. The missing coordinate only affects subsequent inserts.

**Units of measurement**

Click this label to toggle between metric and imperial units of measurement.

**Snap and Ortho**

The snap and ortho entry shows the status of these items. If the indicator is black, a snap or ortho setting is active. If the indicator is grey, snap and ortho are not active.




## Wireframe views

### Introduction

When you first create a new show document and enter CAD mode, WYSIWYG defaults to the Wireframe view. All drawing is done in Wireframe view. Click the Quad tab to display three Wireframe views and a shaded view of your drawing.

### Keyboard and mouse control

#### To modify the point of view

- The arrow keys move you in their respective directions.
- The PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN keys zoom you in and out. You can also roll the middle mouse button up and down to zoom in and out. The zoom action is centered on the mouse pointer rather than the center of the window.
- In a 3D perspective view (isometric or shaded), the CTRL key, in combination with any of the aforementioned keys, rotates you around your drawing.
- Holding down the middle mouse button will allow you to drag the drawing around the window. Alternatively, the *Pan* tool on the *View* toolbar also enables this type of movement .
- At any time you can use the SHIFT key in combination with any of the movement keys to move in smaller increments.
- In shaded views, the mouse can substitute all key strokes. Click and drag to pan around and use the mouse wheel for zooming.

### Zoom tools

Zoom tools allow you to view smaller or larger sections of a plot or drawing. There are seven zoom tools available in WYSIWYG.

**Note:** The zoom tools are not applicable in the Shaded view; to zoom in or out in this view, use the arrow keys or the roller wheel on your mouse instead.



#### To access the Zoom tools

- 1 From the **Zoom** menu, choose one of the Zoom tools.

**Tip:** You may also use the Zoom tools on the *View* toolbar.

**Result:** The viewpoint is adjusted accordingly.

The Zoom tools that are available are listed in the following table.

Zoom tool		Description
Zoom In		Moves your viewpoint closer to the center of the view.
Zoom Out		Moves your viewpoint farther away from the center of the view.

Zoom tool	Description
Zoom Fit	Adjusts the viewpoint so that the extremities of the drawing fit into the current view.
Zoom Fit All (only available on the Zoom menu)	For Quad layout, adjusts the viewpoint so that the extremities of the drawing fit into the three Wireframe views simultaneously. In Wireframe view, adjusts the viewpoint so that the extremities of the drawing fit the window.
Zoom Previous	Resets the view to the previous pan and zoom settings.
Zoom Next	If you used the Zoom Previous tool, Zoom Next sets the view to the next pan and zoom settings.
Zoom Window	Allows you to specify the area of the drawing to be viewed. For more information on using this tool, refer to the procedure below.

### To use the Zoom Window tool

- 1 In Wireframe view, from the **Zoom** menu, choose the **Zoom Window** tool.
- 2 Click the left mouse button and drag a window around the area into which you want to zoom.
- 3 Click the left mouse button again to capture the second point of the window.

**Result:** The view changes to the area that you have selected.

## View shortcuts

View shortcuts record the plot type as well as the zoom and pan settings of a specific point of view. You can use the shortcut to get back to that exact view point the next time you need to.

### To record a view shortcut

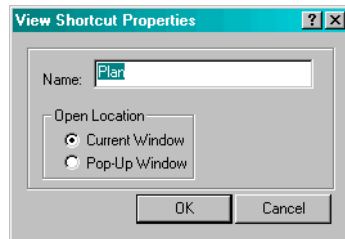
- 1 Set up the active window for the plot type, zoom, and pan settings you wish to record.
- 2 Right-click on the *Views* shortcut bar, and then choose **New View**.
- 3 Type a name for the new shortcut, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The shortcut is recorded and available on the *Views* shortcut bar.

## To modify the properties of a view shortcut

- 1 Right-click on the Views shortcut icon that you want to modify, and then select **Properties**.

**Result:** The *View Shortcut Properties* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 In the *Name* box, type the new name of the shortcut.
- 3 To open the shortcut in the current active window, enable the *Current Window* option button.
- 4 To open the shortcut in a pop-up frame, enable the *Pop-Up Window* option button. For more information on popup frames, refer to “Popup frames” on page 51.

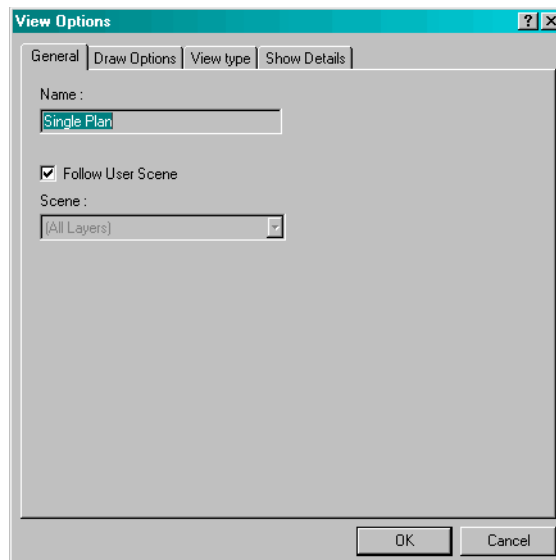
## Modifying wireframe views


The properties of a wireframe view affect how objects are drawn and how much information is visible. These settings are modified in the View Options.

### To modify a wireframe view

- 1 Ensure the wireframe view that you want to modify is active.
- 2 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.

**Result:** The *View Options* window appears.



**Tip:** You can also use the *View Options* tool  on the *Standard* toolbar to open the view options.

- 3 Modify options as desired.
- 4 Click *OK*.

## General tab

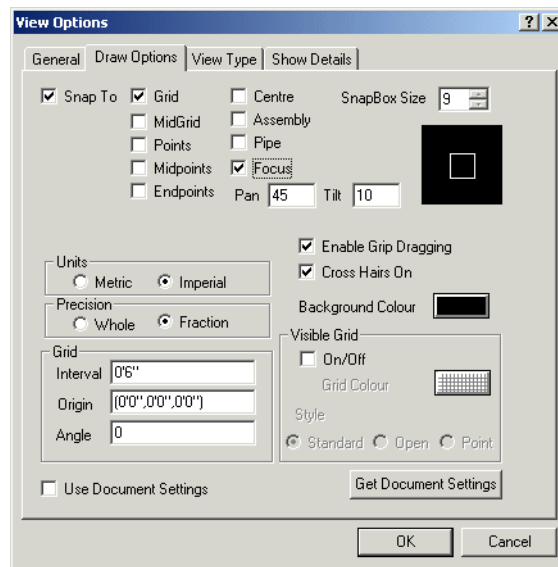
Options on the *General* tab affect the current scene.

- *Name*: Name of the wireframe view.
- *Follow User Scene*: Select this check box to use the currently selected scene. Click to clear this check box, and then select the desired scene from the *Scenes* drop-down list. To learn more about scenes, refer to “Editing objects” on page 142.

**Tip:** You can also change the current scene at any time by using the drop-down list on the *Scene* toolbar.

## Draw Options tab

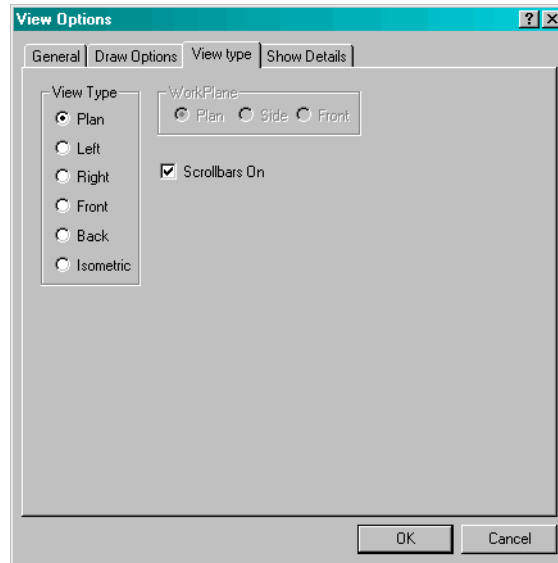
Options on the *Draw Options* tab affect the draw defaults. This tab is similar in function to the *Draw Defaults* tab available in User Options. For more information on the *Draw Defaults* tab, refer to “Draw Defaults tab” on page 94.



- *Use User Defaults*: Select this check box to reference the options selected on the *Draw Defaults* tab of *User Options*. Click to clear the *Use User Defaults* check box to make specific changes for the active view.
- *Get User Defaults*: Retrieves the values set on the *Draw Defaults* tab of *User Options*.

## View Type tab

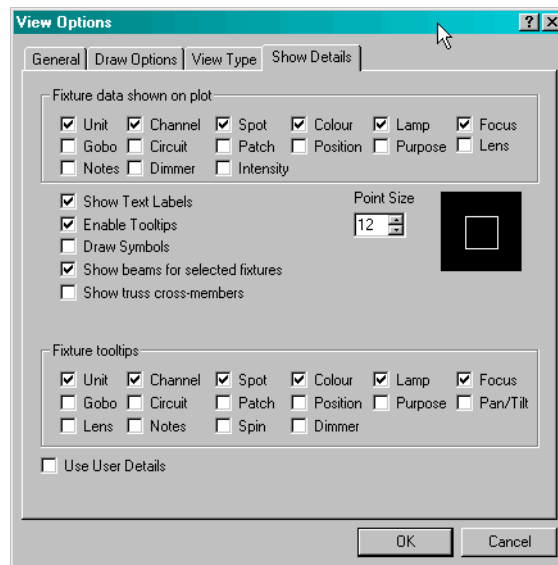
Options on the *View Type* tab affect the plot type of the active view.



- **View Type:** The view types available are as discussed in “Plot types” on page 106.  
**Tip:** The view type can be toggled using the tools on the *CAD Options* toolbar.
- **Scrollbars On:** Select this check box to display the scrollbars on the bottom and left side edges of the wireframe view. Click to clear this check box to turn the scrollbars off.

### Show Details tab

Options on the *Show Details* tab affect what and how fixture, truss, text, and point information is displayed. This tab is similar in function to the *Show Details* tab available in User Options. For more information on the Show Details tab, refer to “Show Details tab” on page 96.



- **Use User Defaults:** Select this check box to reference the options selected on the *Show Details* tab of *User Options*. Click to clear the *Use User Defaults* check box to make specific changes for the active view.



## Shaded views

### Introduction

Shaded or open GL views offer a 3D perspective view of your drawing. Surfaces, truss, and fixtures are “filled-in” or solid, rather than outlined as in wireframe views.

- Shaded views are not available in WYSIWYG Report.
- Shaded views will follow Scenes just like any other view.

### Keyboard and mouse control

#### To modify the point of view

- Use the arrow keys to move the position of the virtual target. PAGE UP/PAGE DOWN will zoom you in and out.
- Holding down CTRL and using the arrow keys or the PAGE UP/PAGE DOWN will move the position of the virtual camera.
- At any time you can use the SHIFT key in combination with any of the movement keys to move in smaller increments.
- The mouse pan tool can be set up to rotate the model or the camera around the target. You can also use the mouse wheel to zoom in and out. The arrow keys will continue to move the target position as you do this.

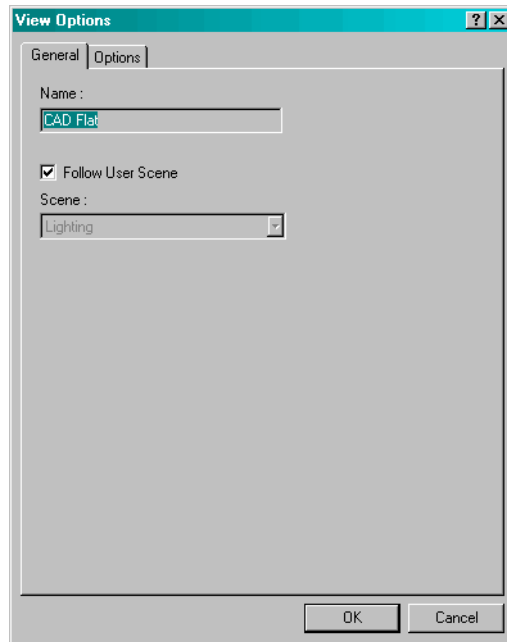
### Modifying shaded views


The properties of a shaded view affect the view point, fixture beam quality, and ambient light. These settings are modified in the *View Options*.

## To modify a shaded view

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.

**Result:** The *View Options* window is displayed.



**Tip:** You can also use the *View Options* tool  on the *Standard* toolbar to open the view options.

- 2 Modify options as desired.
- 3 Click *OK*.

### General tab

Options on the *General* tab affect the scene that is displayed in the shaded view.

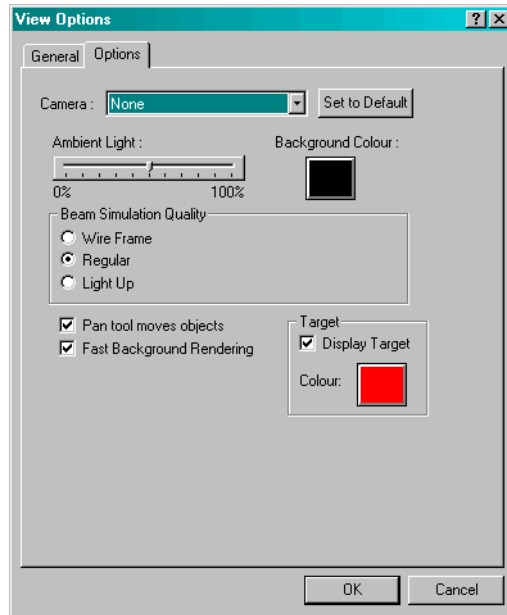
- *Follow User Scene:* Select this check box to use the scene that is displayed in the drop-down list on the *Scene* toolbar. Click to clear the check box, and then select the desired scene from the *Scene* drop-down list. To learn more about scenes, refer to “Scenes” on page 160.

**Tip:** You can also change the current scene at any time by using the *Scene* toolbar.



## Options tab

Options on the *Options* tab affect the view point, beam quality, and ambient light levels.



- **Camera:** Select a camera to change the point of view. Click *Set to Default* to remove any previous association with a camera and to display the original view point.

### Notes:

- This button is enabled only if *None* is selected in the *Camera* drop-down list. You may need to click this button a few times to return the view point to its original setting. To learn more about cameras, refer to “Drawing cameras” on page 139.
- You can also control the camera view point with the camera toolbar. For details, see “Using the Camera toolbar” on page 140.
- **Ambient Light:** Use the slider to increase or decrease the amount of ambient light level shown in the shaded view.
- **Background Color:** Modifies the background color used in the shaded view. This color is visible when you zoom far enough away that you can see beyond the venue.
- **Beam Simulation Quality.** Choose one of the following beam simulation qualities:
  - Wireframe.* An outline of the footprint is shown and the beam is drawn based on the outline.
  - Regular.* The true footprint is shown, but objects are not illuminated.
  - Light Up.* Objects in the path of the beam are illuminated and a full footprint is shown.

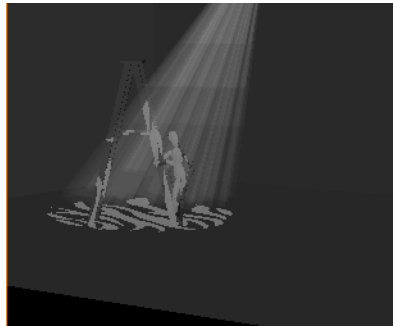
The figures below illustrate the different levels of beam quality.



Wireframe



Regular



Light Up

- *Display Target:* Select the check box to show the focus point of the selected camera in the shaded view. Choose the color of the displayed target by clicking the *Color* box, and then selecting the color from the resulting palette. The target is visible in shaded views only.
- *Pan tool moves objects:* Select this check box if you want to rotate the model on the target. Click to clear the check box if you want the pan tool to rotate the camera around the target.  
You can use the right, left, up, and down arrow keys in addition to the mouse button to pan to the desired location:
- *Fast Background Rendering:* Select this check box if you want to render the beams and not the background. The background is displayed as a pasted image and the beams are rendered on top of the background.

## Chapter 5

---

# Managing your WYSIWYG document



This chapter provides information on how to work with your WYSIWYG document.

### In this chapter

File menu	77
Options menu	83
WYSIWYG Viewer	98





## File menu

### Introduction

The **File** menu contains the basic commands required to manipulate your WYSIWYG document.


The **File** menu is the same in all the modes.

### New command

The **New** command creates a new show document. If another show document is currently open, you will be prompted to save changes to that document before a new untitled file is created. Only one show document may be open at a time.

#### To create a new document

From the **File** menu, choose **New**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *New* tool on the *Standard* toolbar. 

### Open command

The **Open** command opens a previously created show document. If another show document is currently open, you will be prompted to save changes to that document before another show document is opened. Only one show document may be open at a time.

#### To open an existing document

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Open**.
- 2 Select the file, and then click *Open*.

You can open the following file types:

- WYSIWYG files (.wyg)
- WYSIWYG template (.wyt)
- WYSIWYG backup files (.bak)
- Wysiwygv2 files (.wys)
- DWG files (.dwg)
- DXF files (.dxf)
- LW2 files (.lw2)

### DWG/DXF Export

This command exports the current show document to a DWG or DXF formatted file type. DWG and DXF formats are used to transfer documents to AutoCAD or other compatible drafting applications.

#### To export to DWG or DXF format


For details, see "To export to DWG/DXF in 2D" on page 115.

## Save command

The **Save** command saves the open document to the same file name and location (folder, disk, and so on) under which it was previously saved. If you are saving the document for the first time, this command will perform the Save As function.

### To save your document

From the **File** menu, choose **Save**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Save* tool on the *Standard* toolbar. 

## Save As command

The **Save As** command is used to save the current document to a new file name, a new file type, or new destination, such as a floppy disk.

### To save the current document

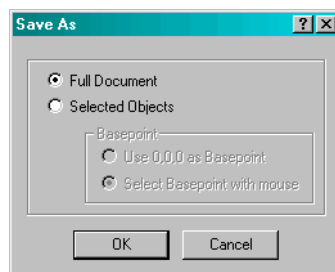
- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Save As**.
- 2 In the dialog box that opens, browse to the location where you want to save the file. Ensure that the destination appears in the *Save in* box.
- 3 In the *File name* box, type a name for the file.
- 4 In the *Save as type* box, choose the saved file type. There are a number of choices available.
- 5 Click *Save*.

**Note:** WYSIWYG allows you to save an object or group of objects contained within your document as a separate file.

### To save an object

- 1 Ensure the object(s) to be saved are selected.
- 2 From the **File** menu, choose **Save As**.

**Result:** The following dialog box is displayed.



- 3 Click *Full Document* to save the current document to a new file name, file type, or new destination. You are prompted to enter the destination and file name of the file.
- 4 Click *Selected Objects* to save the selected object(s) as a separate WYSIWYG (.wyg) document.
- 5 Click *Use 0,0,0 as Basepoint* to align the incoming drawing at 0,0,0 with the existing drawing.
- 6 Click *Select Basepoint with mouse* to use the mouse to select the basepoint for the merge of the CAD drawings.
- 7 Click *OK*.

## Template files

The WYSIWYG **Save As** command lists a file type called .WYT. WYSIWYG template files are similar to the type of template file you may use on your word processor to set up fax cover sheets, memos, or letters. Once you have drawn your venue with all of its lighting positions and everything else that is common to all shows, save it as a .WYT file in the \Templates directory. Each time you start a new drawing, that file will be available as a template to start from.

You can also enter all your lighting equipment inventory into the *Flight Case* and save that as a template. When users start their drawings with your template, they will not have to choose from an endless list of fixtures but rather just what you have in stock.

This is also the ideal option for saving your preferred working settings. Template files save all the shortcuts including custom reports, plots, and so on. However, toolbar settings are not saved in template files since they are saved by the application.

A list of most recently opened template files appears under the heading *Create New Plot* on the WYSIWYG welcome screen. The *more...* link will prompt you to open a template file from the WYSIWYG Templates directory.

## To save a template file

- 1 In an active view, and with no objects selected, from the **File** menu, choose **Save As**.
- 2 In the dialog box that opens, browse to the location where you want to save the file. Ensure that the destination appears in the *Save in* box. To ensure that your template file is available on the WYSIWYG Welcome screen, save your file to the WYSIWYG/Templates directory.
- 3 In the *File name* box, type a name for the file.
- 4 In the *Save as type* box, choose **WYSIWYG Template files (\*.wyt)**.
- 5 Click *Save*.

## Merge command

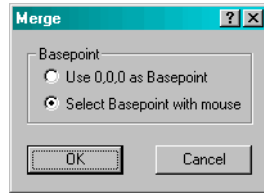
The **Merge** command is used to combine multiple show documents into one. All file types that can be opened directly by WYSIWYG can also be merged. Therefore, an existing WYSIWYG document can be merged with

- other WYSIWYG documents
- DWG/DXF files
- Lightwright2 files

## To merge documents

- 1 Open or create the destination document.
- 2 From the **File** menu, choose **Merge**.
- 3 In the dialog box that opens, choose the source file. You can change the types of visible files using the *File type* box.
- 4 Click *Open*.

If you are merging CAD drawings, the *Merge* dialog box is displayed. Select the point that is used as the starting point for the merging of the two show documents.



- 5 Click *Use 0,0,0 as Basepoint* to align the incoming drawing at 0,0,0 with the existing drawing.
- 6 Click *Select Basepoint with mouse* to use the mouse to select the basepoint for the merge of the CAD drawings.
- 7 Click *OK*.
- 8 If you clicked *Select basepoint with mouse* in step 6, then you must click in the document or enter the coordinates to set the basepoint.

## Close command

The **Close** command closes the current show document and returns you to the *Welcome* window.

### To close a show document

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Close**.
- 2 When prompted to save changes to the current show document, click *Yes* to save changes and close the document.

**Note:** Click *No* to skip saving and close the document. Click *Cancel* to skip saving and keep the document open.

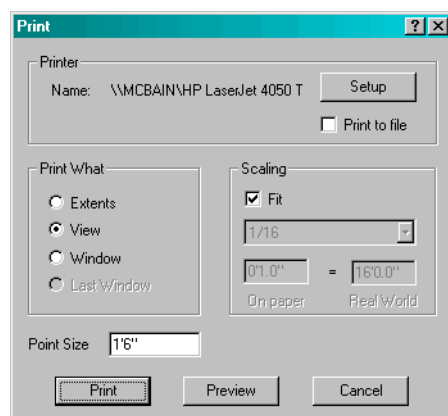
## Print command

The **Print** command varies from mode to mode. In general, this command prints the active view to the selected printer.

### To print a document

From the **File** menu, choose **Print**.

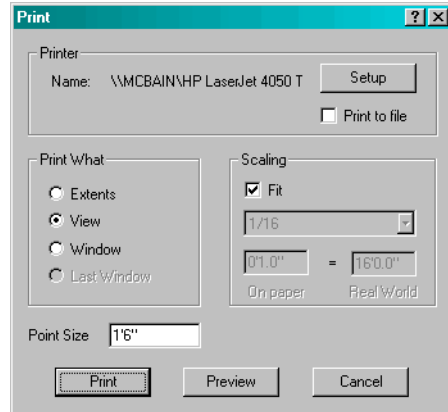
**Result:** Based on the mode you are in, the program may print the document directly or it may open the following dialog box so that you can set printing options:





## Considerations when printing from CAD mode

The **Print** command opens the *Print* dialog box.



This dialog box displays the printer that is used to print your WYSIWYG document. The printer shown is the default printer that you have set up in Windows. Click *Setup* to change the printer or printer settings.

Select the *Print to File* check box to print your WYSIWYG document to a file instead of to a printer. When you print, WYSIWYG prompts you to enter a file name and path.

The **Print** command prints the active window using the options you specify.

### *Print What* options

- *Extents* prints the entire drawing.
- *View* prints the currently displayed view in the active window.
- *Window* allows you to draw a window around the area you wish to print.
- *Last Window* prints the portion contained in the last window you drew for a Window print. If you have not used or previewed a Window print yet, this option is unavailable.

### *Scaling* options

- *Fit* will print the drawing to the scale required to fill the available print area based on the selection in the *Print What* group box. When you select this check box, the drawing will print to fit.
- If the *Fit* check box is deselected, you must choose the scale from the drop-down list. Standard scales are displayed in this menu. If the scale you want to use is not displayed, choose *Custom*.
- When *Custom* is selected, you must enter the ratio. Type the ratio in the *On Paper* and *Real World* boxes. The value in the *On Paper* box is the scale ratio that you want to use on a paper copy of the document. The value in the *Real World* box is the “real” measurement for the scale ratio that you specify in the *On Paper* box. For example, you may want to use a scaling of one inch in a paper copy of your document. This one inch measurement translates to a “realistic” measurement (for example, 3 feet).

The value in the *Point Size* box is the size at which points are printed.

While it is possible to print your drawing directly from the CAD mode, it is preferable to print plots from the Presentation mode. Presentation mode includes the ability to lay out your plot with multiple views, reports, borders, and title blocks. Refer to “Printing layouts” on page 306 for more information about printing plots.

## Print Preview command

Print Preview displays the document as it will look when printed. This allows you to double-check that the printed output is exactly what you want.

## Print Setup command

The *Print Setup* dialog box allows you to choose the print destination, the page orientation and size, and paper tray (if applicable). The print destination may be a physical printer, or it may be a file type or fax program, for example. Paper size and source options will correspond to the printer type selected.

## Send command

The **Send** command allows you to send your document to someone by e-mail. You must be connected to the Internet to use this feature. WYSIWYG will create a new message in your default mail program with the current WYSIWYG file attached.

## Recent file shortcuts

The list of recent files at the bottom of the **File** menu gives you quick access to the last four files opened. This list will continually update as show documents are opened. If the file you are looking for is not on this list, use the **Open** command.

### To open a recent file

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose the file you want to open.
- 2 If another show document is currently open, you are prompted to save changes to that document before another show document is opened. Only one show document may be open at a time.

## Exit command

Use the **Exit** command to exit WYSIWYG. If you have made changes to your document but have not saved yet, you will be prompted to save your changes before exiting.

### To exit WYSIWYG

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Exit**.
- 2 When prompted to save changes to the current show document, click *Yes* to save changes and exit WYSIWYG.

**Note:** Click *No* to skip saving and exit WYSIWYG. Click *Cancel* to skip saving and not exit WYSIWYG.



# Options menu

## Introduction

WYSIWYG offers you many options to customize the functionality of the software. You can view and set options on the **Options** menu.

The **Options** menu is the same in all the modes.

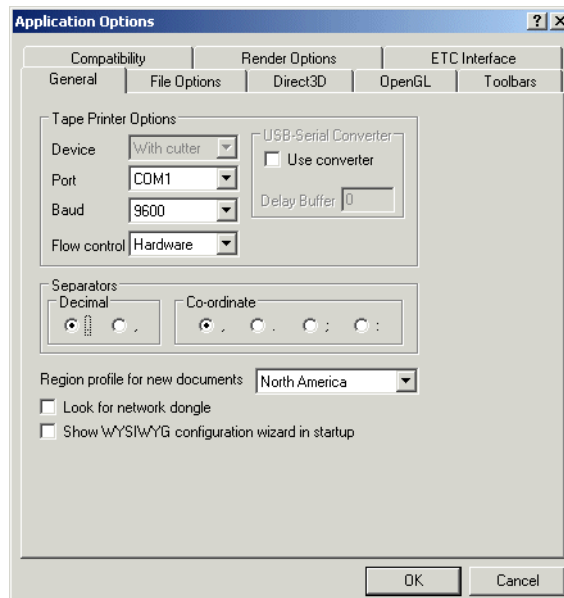
## Application Options window

Application Options are general settings for the WYSIWYG software and apply to the entire application regardless of the show file that you are working on. You might want to update these settings to display specific toolbars or indicate your file-saving preferences, for example.

### To modify the application options

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **Application Options**.

**Result:** The *Application Options* dialog box is displayed.



### General tab

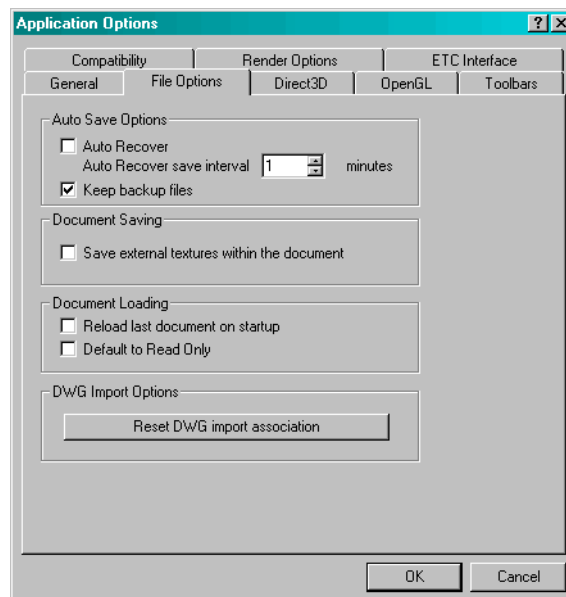
Options on the *General* tab affect the pipe tape printer, the numeric separators used in WYSIWYG, and the properties for the startup wizard.

- *Device:* Specify whether or not the pipe tape printer has a tape cutter.
- *Port:* Specify which port on your computer the pipe tape printer is connected to.
- *Baud:* Specify the baud rate at which the pipe tape printer is running. The baud rate is the rate at which your modem can transmit and receive data.
- *Flow Control:* Select the method of data control between the pipe tape printer and the machine. Available options are Hardware, Software, and None. The default is Hardware.

- *Use converter:* Select this check box to indicate that a USB Serial converter is to be used.
- *Delay Buffer:* Type the buffer size for the USB Serial converter.
- *Decimal:* Select the method for separating whole numbers from decimals. Available options are comma and period. Note that the decimal separator cannot be the same as the co-ordinate separator.
- *Co-ordinate:* Select the method you want to use to separate coordinates in WYSIWYG. Available options are comma, period, semicolon, colon, or slash. Note that the co-ordinate separator cannot be the same as the decimal separator.
- *Region profile for new documents:* The profile to be used for such items as voltage and which default lamp should be used in a fixture.
- *Look for network dongle:* If you have a WYSIWYG Network product installed (for example, WYSIWYG Learn, Network, AWT, or CSP), you must click this check box to ensure that the program looks for a network dongle when you launch WYSIWYG. If you do not have WYSIWYG Network installed, leave this check box deselected. Note that if you choose "Network product" in WYSIWYG Product Configuration Wizard, then this check box is automatically selected.
- *Show WYSIWYG configuration wizard in startup:* Click this check box if you want to see the product configuration wizard each time you launch WYSIWYG. The wizard enables you to choose the level of WYSIWYG that you want to run (for example, it gives you the option of launching a standard version of WYSIWYG, such as Report or Design, or a network version of WYSIWYG). If you leave this check box deselected, the same level of WYSIWYG that you chose when running the program for the first time appears by default.

## File Options tab

Settings on the *File Options* tab affect your file saving settings. It is important to save your work often during your work session. WYSIWYG has an Auto Save function that will help to keep your data safe; however, it is always a good idea to get in the habit of saving your show document to an external disk periodically during your work session.

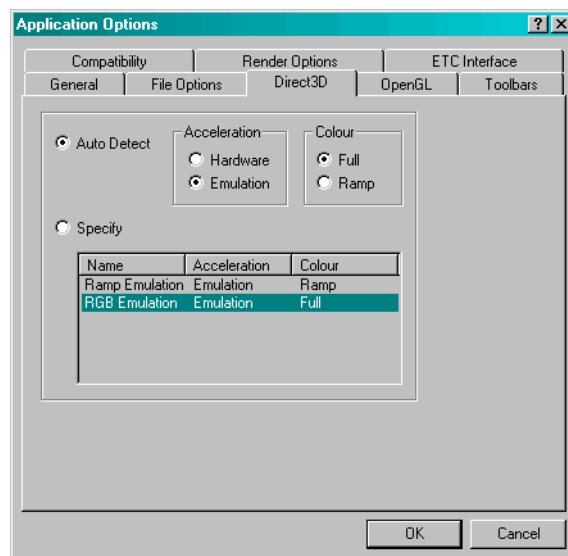


- *Auto Recover:* Select this check box to save your document at the intervals specified in the *Auto Recover save interval* box. If, for some reason, WYSIWYG closes unexpectedly, such as in the case of a power loss, your document can be recovered. This recovery will only be up-to-date as of the last Auto Save, so it is recommended that you do not set this interval to be too long.

- *Keep backup files:* select this check box to save a copy of your document with the ".bak" extension every time you save the file. The backup copy is one save behind the saved copy and is saved in the same folder as the original document. Each new backup copy replaces the previous backup copy. If the main show document becomes corrupted, you can open the backup file to recover your data.  
The default settings for these options are *Auto Recover* enabled with an interval of 10 minutes and *Keep backup files* enabled.
- *Save external textures within the document:* Select this check box if you want the jpeg and/or bitmap used as textures to be saved within your WYSIWYG document. The textures will "travel" with the document and will be visible regardless of the computer on which the document is opened.
- *Reload last document on startup:* Select this check box to ensure that the last document that you have been working on in WYSIWYG is loaded automatically when you launch WYSIWYG.
- *Default to Read Only:* Select this check box to load documents in read-only format. This format is helpful if you are loading someone else's document and you do not want to accidentally make changes to it.
- *Reset DWG import association:* Click this button to reset the association of specific blocks in DWG files with certain pre-selected fixtures. When you import DWG files, one of the options is to associate a block that is found in a DWG file with a specific fixture. If you decide to remember this association for future imports, all blocks with that name will be imported as the chosen fixture.

### Direct3D tab

Options on the *Direct3D* tab affect the setting of the DirectX components to be used for graphics. You can select these components manually or have them automatically detected. By default, WYSIWYG uses Open GL graphics technology in all simulation views. If you want, you can set WYSIWYG to use Direct 3D instead of Open GL, in which case the following options are available:



- *Auto Detect:* WYSIWYG attempts to find a DirectX driver that corresponds to the options you have set for *Acceleration* and *Color*. The driver that it chooses is highlighted in the list of available drivers below.
- *Acceleration:* Enables either hardware or software (emulation) acceleration. Hardware acceleration uses the capabilities of the graphics hardware of the computer to display graphics. Emulation uses the emulation library or software components to display graphics.
- *Color:* Enables either full or ramp color.

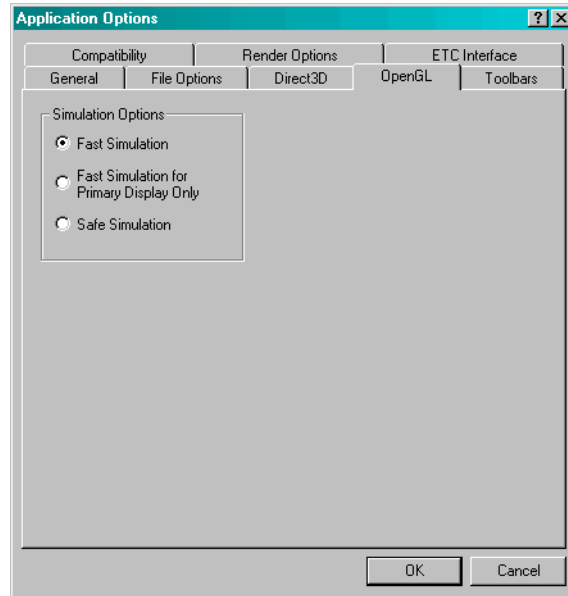
*Full* displays the full color content of the fixture sources and the material of the object being lit. This is the default option.

*Ramp* displays only the grey component of each fixture specified in a scene. The color components of the fixtures are ignored.

You can also manually select a DirectX driver from the list of drivers. The list changes based on the current video card and mode.

## OpenGL tab

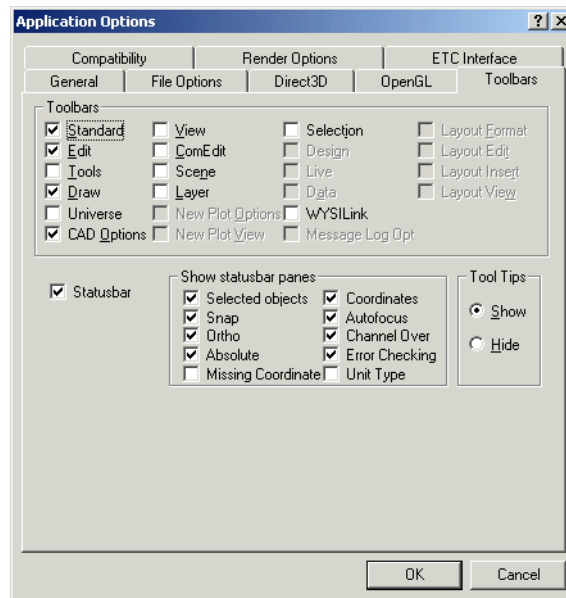
Options on the *OpenGL* tab affect the type of simulation that you want to use.



- *Fast Simulation*: Enables hardware acceleration. Hardware acceleration uses the capabilities of the graphics hardware of the computer to display graphics. This is the default option.
- *Fast Simulation for Primary Display Only*: Enables hardware acceleration for the primary emulation.
- *Safe Simulation*: enables software emulation.

## Toolbars tab

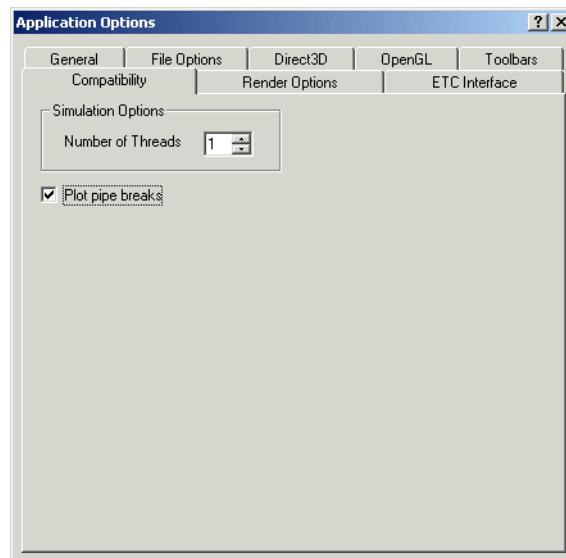
Options on the *Toolbars* tab affect which toolbars and status bar panes you want to display in WYSIWYG.



You can also hide the tooltips that display information about a specific fixture when you hover over the fixture. Tooltips are displayed by default. For more information on toolbars, refer to “Toolbars” on page 57.

### Compatibility tab

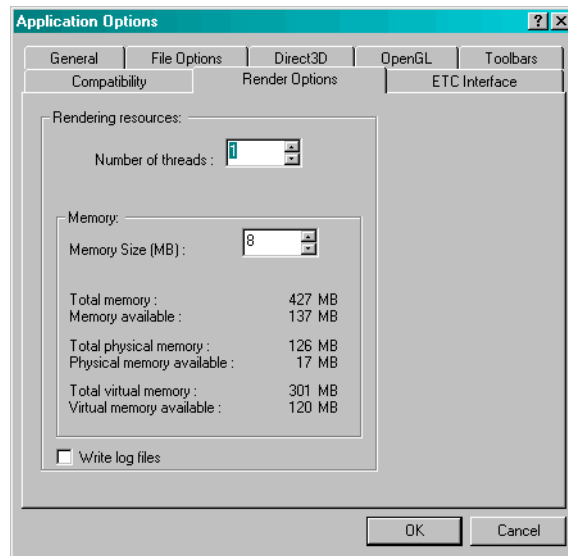
Options on the *Compatibility* tab affect the processing power for beam simulation.



- **Number of Threads:** Select the number of processors that you have available on your computer for beam simulation. Modify this number only if you upgrade the number of processors.

### Render options tab

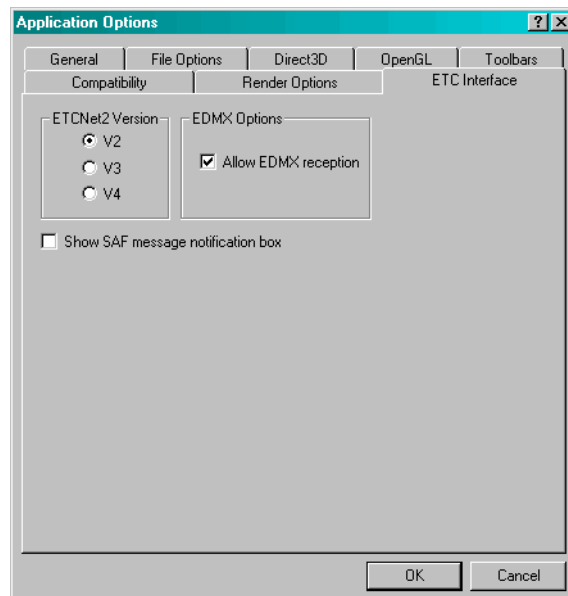
Options on the *Render Options* tab affect the memory and processing power available for rendering.



- **Number of Threads:** Select the number of processors available for rendering. Modify this number only if you upgrade the number of processors on your computer.
- **Memory Size:** Select the amount of memory the renderer can use for temporary files. Eight MB is the default and should be sufficient for most computers. If you are running many applications, you may want to decrease this number, or if your computer has a lot of RAM, you may want to increase this number.
- **Write log files:** Select this check box to generate a log file during rendering.

### ETC Interface tab

Options on the *ETC Interface* tab affect the options that will allow you to monitor EDMX data directly. Direct EDMX reception allows WYSIWYG Perform users to monitor EDMX data without the need to connect to a console with the Device Manager.



- **ETCNet2Version:** Select which ETCNet2 network version you want to monitor. You can monitor only one version at a time.
- **Allow EDMX reception:** Select this check box to enable direct EDMX reception in WYSIWYG.
- **Show SAF message notification box:** Select this check box if you want to receive error messages in Link mode whenever there are problems with an ETC dimmer rack.

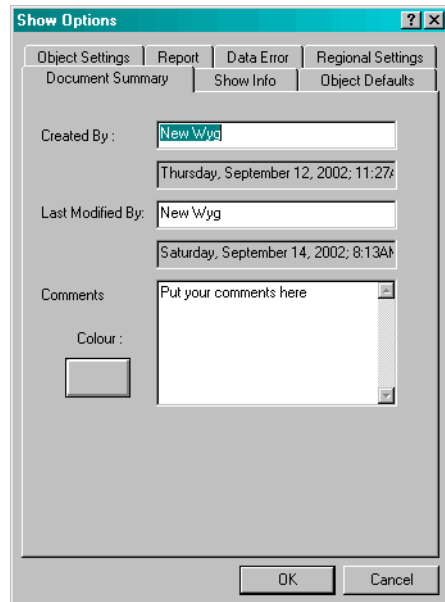


## Show Options window

Show settings that are specific to the current show file, such as show name, designer, and venue, are set in the Show Options dialog box. You might want to modify these settings when you start a new show file. Error conditions and the appearance of certain objects in your show file are also specified in Show Options. To open the Show Options dialog box, from the **Options** menu, click **Show Options**.

### Document Summary tab

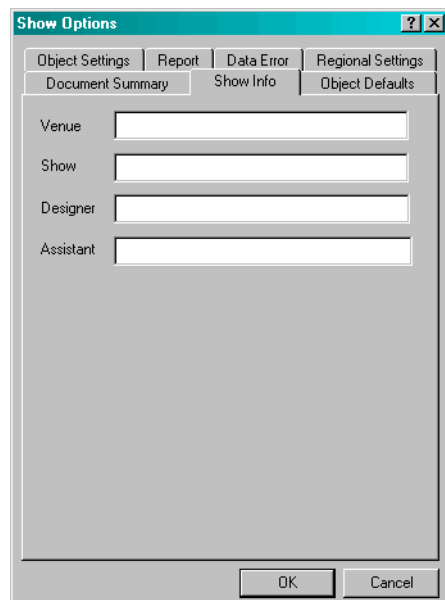
Options on the *Document Summary* tab affect the document information (such as name of the person who created the document and the name of the person who last modified the document). The date stamps are not editable, but will track the creation and modification dates of the file.



The screenshot shows the 'Show Options' dialog box with the 'Document Summary' tab selected. The dialog has a title bar with a question mark and a close button. Below the title bar are four tabs: 'Object Settings', 'Report', 'Data Error', and 'Regional Settings'. The 'Document Summary' tab is active, showing fields for 'Created By' (New Wvg), 'Last Modified By' (New Wvg), and a 'Comments' text area. There are also date stamps for 'Created' (Thursday, September 12, 2002; 11:27) and 'Last Modified' (Saturday, September 14, 2002; 8:13AM). A 'Colour' button is visible next to the comments area. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

### Show Info tab

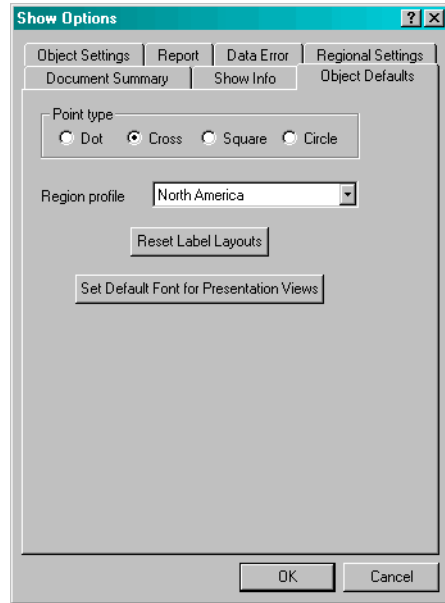
Options on the *Show Info* tab affect the venue, show, Designer, and Assistant's names that are displayed in your show document.



The screenshot shows the 'Show Options' dialog box with the 'Show Info' tab selected. The dialog has the same title bar and tabs as the previous screenshot. The 'Show Info' tab is active, showing four text input fields labeled 'Venue', 'Show', 'Designer', and 'Assistant'. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

## Object Defaults tab

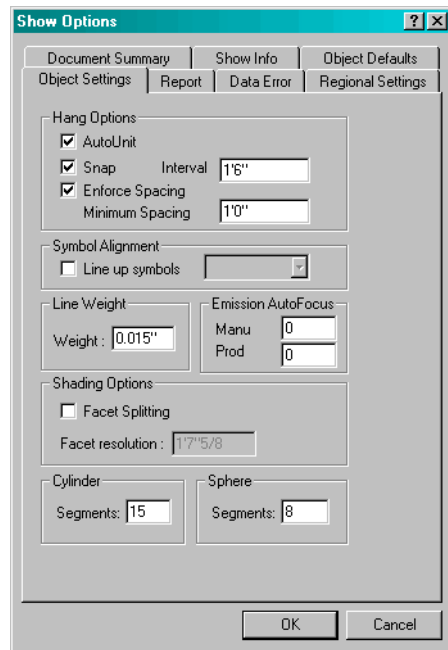
Options on the *Object Defaults* tab affect the default settings for the regional profile. The profile that you choose determines items such as the type of bulb to use in a particular fixture. This also sets how points will be displayed (as crosses, dots, squares, or circles).



- *Point type*: Indicates the default point type in your show document. You can choose to display points as dots, crosses, squares, or circles.
- *Region profile*: The geographical region where the show will be occurring. This setting establishes the profile for voltage and consequently, what will be used for such items as light bulbs in a fixture.
- *Reset Label Layouts*: Click to reset all fixture labelling to the default settings.
- *Set Default Font for Presentation Views*: Click to select a default font for presentation views.

## Object Settings tab

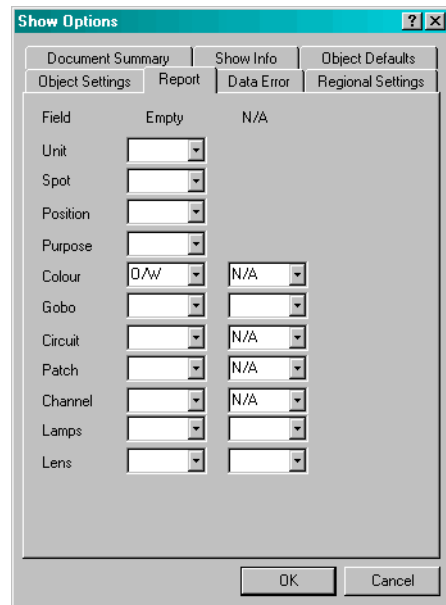
Options on the *Object Settings* tab affect how various objects are placed or drawn in CAD mode.



- *AutoUnit*: Select this check box to automatically assign a unit number to each fixture that is hung. This option is available for pipes only. It does not apply to truss.
- *Snap*: Select this check box to enable pipe snap. Pipe snap places fixtures on a pipe at a specific interval as specified in the *Interval* box. For information on snaps, refer to "Pipe snap" on page 181.
- *Enforce Spacing*: Select this check box to indicate that the spacing you specify in the *Minimum Spacing* box is enforced.
- *Minimum Spacing*: Type the minimum spacing between fixtures. This option prevents you from hanging the fixtures too close to one another. The minimum spacing cannot be greater than the value you specify in the *Interval* box.
- *Interval*: Type the distance between fixtures. This option is used for pipe snaps.
- *Line up symbols*: Select this check box to line up fixture symbols at specific angles, and then select an increment from the drop-down list. Symbols will shift from their focused position to the nearest increment of the chosen angle. For example, symbols will be drawn in one of four directions when the increment is set to 90 degrees. This setting does not affect the focus of the beam; rather it is intended for the "cleanliness" of the printed plot.
- *Weight*: Type the default weight of a line when it is printed or viewed using print preview.
- *Manu*: Type the manufacturer's code for those fixtures that are autofocus-compatible.
- *Prod*: Type the product code for those fixtures that are autofocus-compatible.
- *Facet Splitting*: Select this check box to enable facet splitting in shaded views. Facet splitting splits objects in a plot into small triangles for a smooth beam fallout during simulation in a shaded view.
- *Facet Resolution*: Type the size of the triangles. The more triangles you have the more realistic the cosine distribution will be. However, this also decreases the simulation speed. Note that this is applicable to Direct 3D only.
- *Segments*: Type the number of segments into which you want to break a cylinder or sphere.

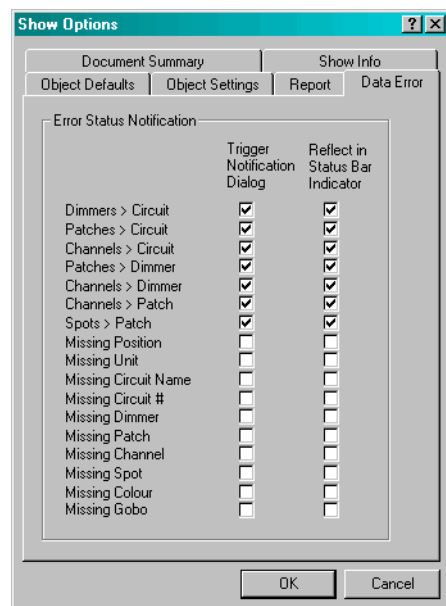
### Report tab

Options on the *Report* tab affect the default values for empty or non-applicable cells in spreadsheets.



### Data Error tab

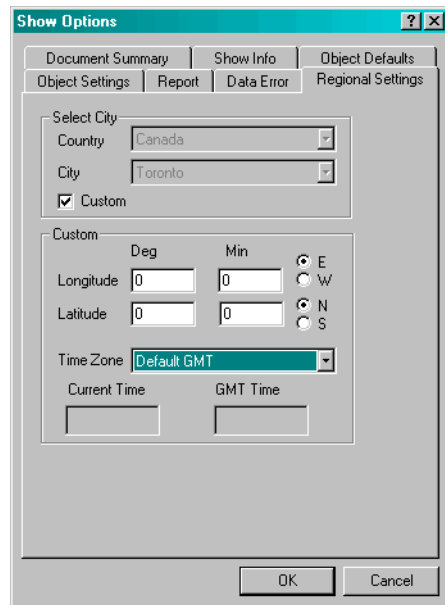
Options on the *Data Error* tab control what types of data errors trigger notification boxes and status bar notifications.



For more information on data errors, refer to “Errors” on page 231.

### Regional settings tab

Options on the *Regional settings* tab set the geographic location of your show. You can either select the country and city or enter the latitude and longitude of the location. These settings are primarily used for renderings that use environmental options.



- **Custom:** Select this check box to enter the latitude and longitude values in the *Latitude* and *Longitude* boxes, respectively. Click to clear this check box to select a country and city from the *Country* and *City* drop-down lists, respectively.
- **Time Zone:** After selecting *Custom*, select the time zone for your show. When you select a time zone, the current time as set on your computer is displayed in the *Current Time* box. The GMT value is also shown.

**Note:** The values that you enter on this tab are reflected in Step 6 of the Render Wizard. For more information on the Render Wizard, refer to “Rendering” on page 328.

## View Options dialog box

View options set how objects are drawn and displayed in Wireframe and shaded views.

For more information on View options for Wireframe views, refer to “Modifying wireframe views” on page 68.

For more information on View options for shaded views, refer to “Modifying shaded views” on page 71.

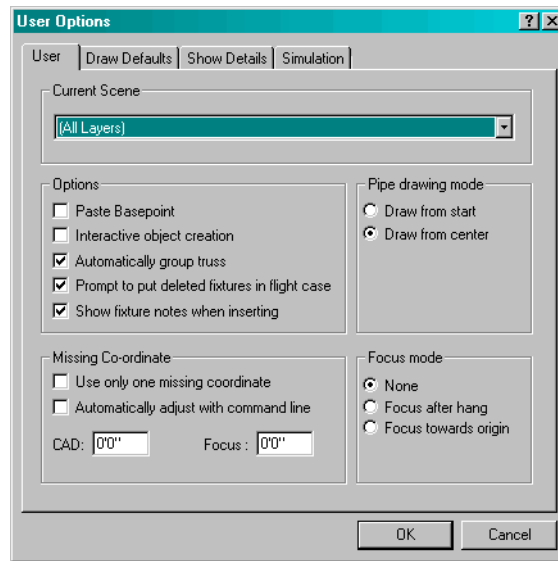
## User Options dialog box

The User Options dialog box enables you to set up your working preferences. You might, for example, want to specify how the snap operation will work or how much information will be displayed on your plot. The settings that you choose are in effect for the entire time that you are working in WYSIWYG regardless of the show file that you are working on.

To open the User Options dialog box, click **Options > User Options**.

### User tab

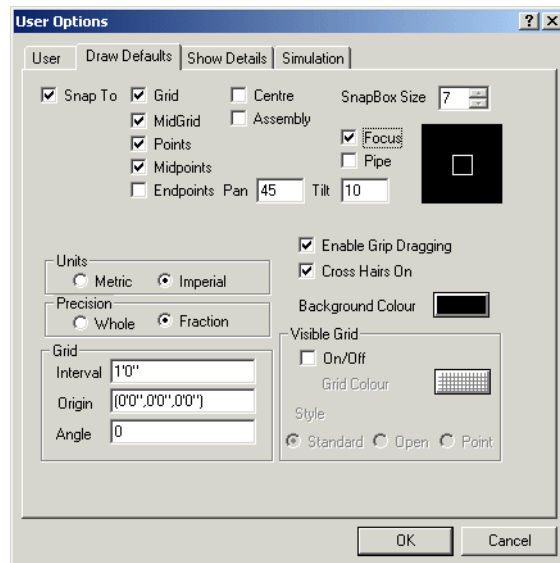
Options on the *User* tab affect the current scene selection, options, pipe drawing mode, missing co-ordinate, and focus mode settings.



- *Paste Base point:* Select this check box to enter a base point before an object is copied or cut. This will be the object's reference point for paste commands. Click to clear this check box to allow the base point to be the insertion point of the object.
- *Interactive object creation:* Select this check box to allow yourself to draw objects using the mouse instead of entering values in dialog boxes.
- *Automatically group truss:* Select this check box to group truss objects together in a similar manner to choosing **Group** from the **Edit** menu. This option is helpful in that it treats the truss as a single unit and allows you to perform actions more effectively on multiple objects. If you want to edit one truss object, you must first use the Ungroup command on the **Edit** menu to remove the grouping from the truss objects.
- *Prompt to put deleted fixtures in flight case.* Select this check box to be prompted when you delete a fixture. You will be prompted to delete it completely or send it to the Flight Case. If you choose to send it to the Flight Case, the fixture is reserved for you in case you want to reinsert it.
- *Show fixture notes when inserting.* Select this check box to display the fixture notes when you are hanging fixtures, if applicable to the selected fixture.
- *Pipe drawing mode:* Sets the preference for drawing pipes (either from the start or from the center). For more information on drawing pipes, refer to "Drawing pipes" on page 134.
- *Missing coordinate:* Sets missing coordinate options. For more information on missing coordinates, refer to "The missing coordinate" on page 104.
- *Focus mode:* Allows you to choose to focus a fixture as you hang it in your drawing. Specify one of the following options to set how a fixture will react after you hang it in a plot:
  - *None.* This setting indicates that you can continue to hang fixtures uninterrupted.
  - *Focus after hang.* If enabled, you will be prompted to focus each fixture as you hang it. Once the fixture is focused, you can continue hanging other fixtures.
  - *Focus towards origin.* If enabled, the fixtures that you hang are automatically focused towards the user origin as you hang them. You can continue to hang other fixtures uninterrupted.

### Draw Defaults tab

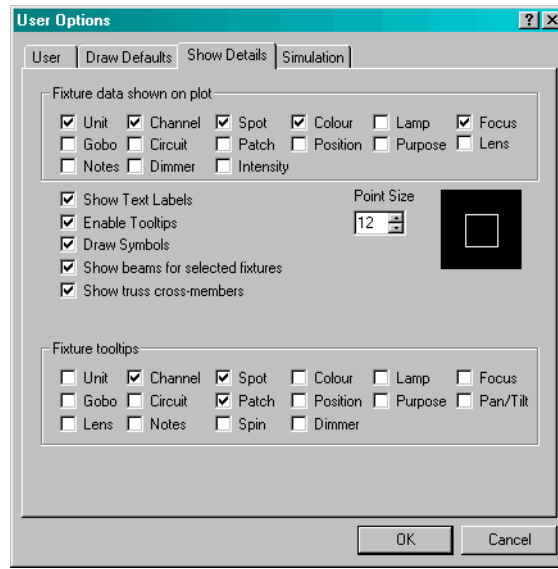
Options on the *Draw Defaults* tab affect general preferences for snap, grid, and units settings.



- *Snap To:* Enables or disables snap. For more information, refer to “Snaps” on page 107. Snap tools can be toggled at any time using the tools on the CAD Options toolbar.
- *SnapBox Size:* Sets the size of the snap box that appears around the cursor when in snap mode. Consequently, this affects how close the cursor must be to the objects before the snap is applied.
- *Enable Grip Dragging:* Select this check box if you want to be able to resize objects by clicking and dragging on their markers.
- *Cross Hairs On:* Select this check box to set the cursor display to use cross hairs in plot views. Cross hairs are useful for lining up objects.
- *Units of measure:* For more information on these units, refer to “Metric vs. Imperial” on page 103. The units can be toggled from metric to imperial at any time by double-clicking on the units display on the status bar.
- *Precision:* affects the units of drawing precision. For more information on these units, refer to “Coordinate notation” on page 102. Based on your choice for measurement units, you can choose to display the drawing precision in centimeters, millimeters, whole numbers, or fractions.
- *Background Color:* The color that will be used in all wireframe views. Click the box to choose a different color.
- *Interval:* Select the spacing between points on the drawing grid. Although the WYSIWYG drawing grid might not be visible, it exists in the background. The settings in this group box are important when using the snap to grid tool. For more information on this tool, refer to “Snaps” on page 107.
- *Origin:* The point of origin. For more information on the origin, refer to “Coordinate system and origin” on page 102.
- *Angle:* Select the angle of rotation for the drawing grid. Although the WYSIWYG drawing grid might not be visible, it exists in the background. The settings in this group box are important when using the snap to grid tool. For more information on this tool, refer to “Snaps” on page 107.
- *Visible Grid:* Select the *On/Off* check box if you want to add a grid to your wireframe view (in every view except isometric). Then click the *Grid Color* box to choose the colour for the grid lines. You can also choose the style of the grid by selecting the appropriate option button. *Standard* creates a grid with evenly spaced, closed squares. *Open* creates a grid with open squares. *Point* creates a grid of dots. The lines in the resulting grid are spaced at the interval specified in the *Interval* box. If the interval is short, you may have to zoom in on your plot to see the gridlines.

## Show Details tab

Options on the *Show Details* tab affect the amount of information that is shown on your drawing. This includes how much data is shown on the plot.

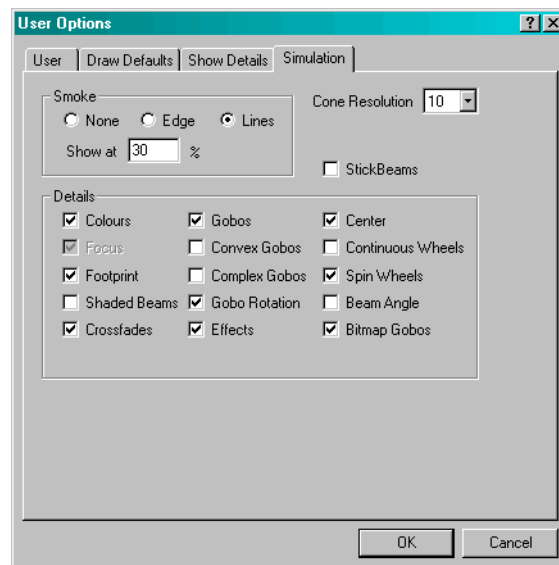


- *Fixture data shown on plot:* Indicates the fixture data that you want to display on your drawing.
- *Show Text Labels:* Select this check box to display text labels.
- *Enable Tooltips:* Displays tooltips on your drawing. Tooltips are the pop-up messages that display specific information about a fixture when you hover over it. Choose the information that you want to display in a tooltip by selecting the appropriate check boxes in the *Fixture tooltips* group box. Tooltips are often helpful when trying to locate a specific fixture in a plot.
- *Draw Symbols:* Select this check box to draw fixtures as symbols rather than as 3D objects. For more information on symbols, refer to “Symbols” on page 197.
- *Show beams for selected fixtures:* Select this check box to automatically turn on beams when selecting a fixture on your drawing. If you do not select this box, the beam is not visible when you select a fixture.
- *Show truss cross-members:* Click to clear this check box to hide truss cross members on your drawing to reduce the clutter or to increase the speed of the display. Select this check box to see the cross members.
- *Point Size:* Select the default size for all points. You can view a sample of the chosen size in the box to the right.

## Simulation tab

Options on the *Simulation* tab are only set for WYSIWYG Design and Perform. These settings determine how detailed simulation views are, and can affect the speed of beam simulation in simulation views.





For more information on simulation options, refer to “Visualization” on page 323.



## WYSIWYG Viewer

The WYSIWYG Viewer is a separate application that allows non-WYSIWYG users to view and print your WYSIWYG (.wyg) files. It is beneficial to those individuals who are interested in viewing or printing a WYSIWYG file but who do not own a licensed copy of WYSIWYG.

Any file with a .wyg file extension can be viewed and printed from the WYSIWYG Viewer.

Since Presentation mode is the only mode available in the WYSIWYG Viewer, ensure that all relevant information is available in this mode before opening your file in the WYSIWYG Viewer. All functionality except navigation and printing has been disabled. Users cannot edit files, nor can they insert items into a file. For more information on preparing your file in Presentation mode, refer to Chapter 9, "Presentation mode."

You can download the WYSIWYG Viewer from the Cast Software Web site at [www.cast-soft.com](http://www.cast-soft.com).

# Chapter 6

---

## CAD mode



CAD mode is where you create your show drawings. This includes drawing your venue, set pieces, lighting positions, focus positions, and lighting fixtures. CAD mode operates like many other CAD programs, so many of the concepts will be familiar to those who have used a computer-aided drafting program before. WYSIWYG adds features that are specific to the entertainment industry, such as a comprehensive 3D library containing truss, lighting equipment, lighting accessories, props, musical instruments, and various human figures.

### In this chapter

Layout tabs	101
The CAD environment	102
The Library Browser	119
Drawing objects	123
Editing objects	142
CAD tools	162
Hang structures	171
Hanging and focusing fixtures	179
Color, gobos, and accessories	202
The Flight Case	208
Rendering	211





## Layout tabs

Beneath the work area in each mode is a series of layout tabs. These layouts provide various configurations of the views you are working with. To change layouts, click the tab that corresponds to the layout you wish to use. The CAD mode contains the following layouts:

- Wireframe - The work area displays a full-screen wireframe view.
- Quad - The work area is divided into quadrants, three of which can be modified to show plan, front, side, or isometric wireframe views. The lower-right quadrant contains a shaded view.
- Flight Case - The Flight Case is displayed in a section of the work area along with a wireframe view.
- Shaded - The work area displays a full-screen shaded view.



# The CAD environment

## Scales

When drawing in WYSIWYG, you are drawing in real scale (1:1). When you create a drawing in CAD, you are generating a virtual representation of your real set-up. If you were to do this on paper by hand, you would need to draw a scaled-down version of your space. However, since there are no paper size limitations in CAD mode, you can draw your venue, sets, pipes, trusses, and lighting fixtures in real scale.

Scaling down for printing purposes is done during print set-up and in the Presentation mode when creating plots. These settings allow you to print your drawings in whatever scales are necessary without having to redraw anything.

## Coordinate system and origin

When working in CAD you are working in a 3D environment (even in WYSIWYG Report). Objects are drawn as 3D objects, with width, depth, and height values using the Cartesian coordinate system of 3 working axes X, Y, and Z. The point where the 3 axes meet is called the origin and the value of X, Y, and Z is 0 respectively (0,0,0).

By default, the origin is set at the center point of the WYSIWYG venue that you insert. Inserting venues is discussed in "Drawing a venue" on page 123. You can reset the origin to another point in your drawing; you can set a user origin so that a different point will assume the values (0,0,0).

### To set the user origin

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Set User Origin**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Origin* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 

- 2 Click a point on your drawing or type in the coordinates (X,Y,Z) that will assume the values 0,0,0. This point will remain 0,0,0 until you change it again.

### To reset the user origin

From the **Tools** menu, choose **Reset User Origin**.

**Result:** This resets the origin back to the WYSIWYG default.

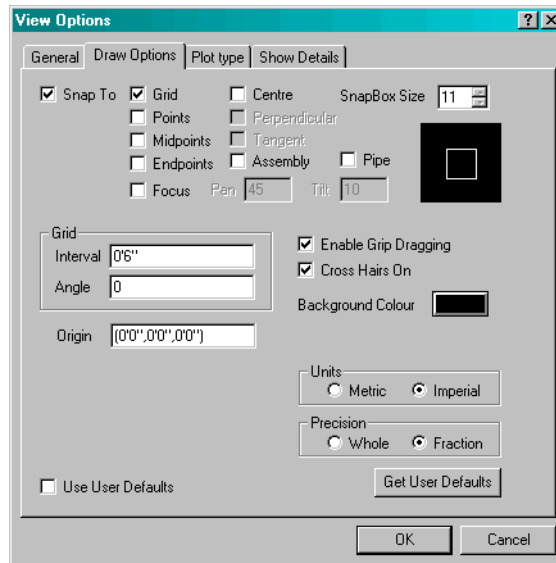
## Coordinate notation

When entering coordinates in WYSIWYG, you can specify a location or distance in either inch fractions (to the sixteenth of an inch) or millimeters. For example, you can specify a measurement of 1'6"3/16", which translates to 1 foot, 6 and 3/16 inches.

### To set default options

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.
- 2 Click the *Draw Options* tab.

- 3 Clear the *Use User Defaults* check box to modify the default setting for *Precision*.



- 4 Based on your choice for measurement units, you can choose to display the drawing resolution in whole numbers, fractions, centimeters, or millimeters.
- *Whole* - (Only visible if you choose Imperial units.) Indicates that the measurements are rounded and displayed to the nearest whole number.
  - *Fraction* - Indicates that the measurements are displayed to the nearest sixteenths of an inch.
  - *cm* - (Only visible if you choose Metric units.) Indicates that the measurements are displayed in centimeters.
  - *mm* - Indicates that the measurements are displayed in millimeters.
- 5 Click *OK*.

## Metric vs. Imperial

WYSIWYG enables you to use metric or imperial units at any time. You may choose to set a default type of unit, and you may choose to switch unit type on the fly.

You can also indicate whether you want these units measured in whole numbers, fractions (to the sixteenth of a inch), centimeters, or millimeters.

### To set the default unit type

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **User Options**.
- 2 Click the *Draw Defaults* tab.
- 3 Click either *Metric* or *Imperial*.
- 4 Click *Whole*, *Fraction*, *mm* or *cm*.

**Note:** These choices vary based on whether you selected Metric or Imperial in step 3.

### To switch unit types on the fly

Double-click the units display on the status bar.

## The missing coordinate

The missing coordinate (X,Y,or Z) is the coordinate whose value cannot be entered by clicking on the screen. The easy way to determine which coordinate is the missing coordinate in a wireframe view is to move the mouse around. Look at the status bar at the bottom of the working area. You will see only two values changing. The value that is not changing is the missing coordinate for that view or workplane. The missing coordinate is dependent on the plot type and the workplane selected. In the following example, Y is the missing coordinate as its value is set at 0'0".

(-18'3",0'0",8'8")

Once entered, this value affects all subsequent objects inserted in the current view. For example, if the missing coordinate is set to 5' in a plan view, all objects are placed 5 feet off the floor (X,Y,5) until the missing coordinate is changed again. Please note that the missing coordinate is not a move tool. Objects will not be moved to the missing coordinate value. The missing coordinate only affects subsequent inserts.

### To enter a value for the missing coordinate

- 1 Press TAB on your keyboard or click the *Missing Coordinate* tool on the *CAD Options* toolbar.



- 2 In the *CAD coordinate* box, type the value for the CAD coordinate.
  - 3 In the *Focus coordinate* box, type a value for the focus coordinate if you want to focus fixtures while inserting objects.
  - 4 If you want to use only the CAD coordinate for focusing and placing/editing objects, select the *Use only one missing coordinate* check box.
  - 5 To automatically adjust the missing coordinate with any 3D coordinate value that you enter on the command line, select the *Automatically adjust with command line* check box.
  - 6 Select the *Show head height* check box to display the coverage of beams at the head height selected in the *Head height* box.
  - 7 In the *Head height* box, type a value to check the light coverage at a certain height (the height of the performer).
- Note:** This box is enabled when the *Show head height circle* check box is selected.
- 8 When you are finished with your selections, click *OK*.

### Example

- 1 Change to the plan view in your drawing.
- 2 Press TAB, and then type a value of 0" for the missing CAD coordinate.
- 3 Insert a few objects on the stage. All of these objects are drawn resting on the stage.
- 4 Change the missing CAD coordinate to a height of 10'.



- 5 Insert a riser by clicking the Riser button on the toolbar.
- 6 Although we are in a plan view the riser has been drawn at the height of 10', as specified in the missing coordinate dialog box.
- 7 Change to a side view and you will see that the riser has been placed above the stage.

### Tips:

- You can use separate missing coordinates for focusing fixtures if you enter a value for the Focus coordinate when pressing TAB. The advantage of this is that you can be adding pipes and other CAD elements at the specified missing CAD coordinate, but still focus the fixtures at an elevation of 5 feet, for example.
- If you select the *Show head height circle* check box, and then type a value in the *Head height* box, all subsequently focused fixture's beams will display both the coverage at the specified head height, as well as the footprint of the beam on the surface below.

## Command line

The command line is an area in WYSIWYG where you can enter coordinates for the purpose of placing or editing objects in a document. The placement of objects can often be done quicker and with more precision using the command line.

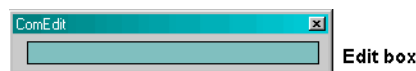
Generally, coordinates are specified as X, Y, Z. You can, however, insert coordinates using either two or three values. When using two values, the third value will be assumed from the missing coordinate. For more information on the missing coordinate, refer to "The missing coordinate" on page 104.

The values that you specify in imperial mode are assumed to be in feet unless otherwise specified. Similarly, the values that you specify in metric mode are assumed to be in metres unless otherwise specified. At any time, you can specify values in both imperial and metric measurements (for example, 5", 3 cm, 6').

The following example illustrates the many different ways of using the command line.

### Example

- 1 In a plan view, from the **Draw** menu, choose **Line**.
  - 2 From the sub-menu, choose **Solid**, **Dot**, **Center**, **Hidden** or **Spline**.
  - 3 Type 0,0 as the starting point of the line.
- Result:** When you start typing, the ComEdit toolbar is displayed.



- 4 Press ENTER to establish the first point of the line at the origin.
  - 5 To set the next point at exactly X=5 and Y=5, type 5,5, and then press ENTER.
- Result:** A new line segment is drawn and it assumes Z from the missing coordinate.
- 6 To place the next point of the line 10 units to the right and 5 units up (in Y) from the last point, type @10,5, and then press ENTER.
- Result:** A new line segment is drawn.
- 7 To place the next point at exactly 5 feet, 3 metres, and 6 inches from the last point, type 5', 3m, 6", and then press ENTER.
- Result:** A new line segment is drawn.

- 8 When you are finished drawing the lines, right-click, and then select **Finish Line**.

## Plot types

All objects occupy three-dimensional space. Different plot view types allow you to see and work with your drawing from different perspectives.

There are six types of plot views accessible from the CAD Options toolbar. The following definitions identify the working axes X, Y, and Z and the missing coordinate for each plot type. The missing coordinate can be defined as the axis for which a value cannot be set simply by clicking on the work space. For details, see "The missing coordinate" on page 104.



### Plan View

Plan views display the plot from above looking down. This is similar to a plan view drawing on paper. In plan views the working axes are X and Y and the missing coordinate is Z.



### Left View

Left views display the plot looking from the left side through the venue. This is similar to a section on paper. In left views the working axes are Y and Z and the missing coordinate is X.



### Right View

Right views display the plot looking from the right side through the venue. This is similar to a section on paper. In right views the working axes are Y and Z and the missing coordinate is X.



### Front View

Front views display the plot looking from the front side through the venue. This is similar to an elevation on paper. In front views the working axes are X and Z and the missing coordinate is Y.






### Back View

Back views display the plot looking from the back side through the venue. This is similar to an elevation on paper. In back views the working axes are X and Z and the missing coordinate is Y.



### Isometric View

An Isometric view is a 3D perspective drawing. Despite this, you are still limited to two working axes. In isometric views, the working axes and the missing coordinate are dependent on the workplane selected. The workplanes available are:

-  plan
-  side
-  front

If a plan workplane is selected, the working axes are X and Y and the missing coordinate is Z.

If a side workplane is selected, the working axes are Y and Z and the missing coordinate is X.

If a front workplane is selected, the working axes are X and Z and the missing coordinate is Y.

The crosshairs of your cursor change to reflect the selected workplane.

**Note:** Isometric views are not available in WYSIWYG Report.

## Ortho

Ortho mode constrains movement and drawing to a direction parallel to the specified axis. When ortho mode is inactive, objects can be drawn or moved in any direction on the workplane. You can draw diagonal lines or move objects anywhere in the working area.



You can activate ortho at any time by clicking the ortho tools on the *CAD Options* toolbar or by right-clicking the **Ortho** label on the status bar. You can also press F8 on the keyboard or double-click the Ortho label on the status bar to toggle your last recorded ortho setting on or off.

### Notes:

- The plot type determines the axes of movement: XY for plan views, YZ for side views, XZ for front and back views.
- To select the axes of movement with the toolbar buttons, click the appropriate two buttons to select both of them. For example, to choose the XY axis, click the *X* and *Y* buttons.
- To deselect any ortho buttons that you have chosen, press F8; to reset the same ortho selection as that which was previously made, press F8 again.

## Snaps

Snaps are used to assist in the drawing and placement of objects. When a snap setting is active, the cursor will be drawn to the applicable snap point. You can have multiple snaps active at the same time. Snap selections can be made on the CAD Options toolbar or from the Tools menu.

All snap tools function as follows: If no command is currently active, you can adjust the running snap tool. This means that the snap type is always active. If you are in mid-command and you select a snap tool, it becomes a “one time only” snap type. After the next click, the snap returns to the running snap. At any time you can toggle all snaps on or off by pressing F9 or double-clicking on the SNAP text in the status bar.

-  Grid snap


Aligns the placement of objects to grid points. You can set the grid interval and angle in the *Draw Options* page of the *View Options* window.

-  Point snap

Aligns the placement of objects to a point in the drawing.

-  Midpoint snap

Aligns the placement of objects to the mid-point of another line.


-  Endpoint snap

Aligns the placement of objects to the end-point of another line.

Fixture insertion points are considered points. It is therefore possible, using the Point snap, to align the placement of objects to fixtures (snap to fixtures). This is useful for dimensioning.

-  Centerpoint snap

Aligns the placement of objects to the center-point of circles, arcs, or cylinders.

-  Assembly snap

Use assembly snap to group multiple truss objects together as you insert them. This ensures proper structural assembly. Refer to “Using Assembly snap with truss” on page 176 for more details about truss assembly.

-  Pipe snap

Constrains fixtures to placement on a pipe at a specific interval. For more information, refer to “Pipe snap” on page 181.

-  Focus snap

Orients one or more fixtures to a focus position. When you choose this value, you can also lock beam dragging to the incremental values of your choice, as specified in the *Pan* and *Tilt* boxes of the **Draw Options** tab (the defaults are increments of 45 degrees for pan and increments of 10 degrees for tilt). These are the values to which you want the fixture's beam to “snap” while manually dragging and focusing it. For example, if you set a value of 30 degrees, when you drag the fixture's beam, it will snap at 30 degrees, 60 degrees, 90 degrees, and so on. Note that any focus positions that you have set take precedence over the pan and tilt values (if you drag the beam over the focus position, it will automatically snap to the focus position instead).

## Interactive mode

Interactive mode is an alternative method for drawing objects. Objects are typically drawn using a dialog box to set the object's size (width, depth, and height, for example). The full-size object is then attached to the cursor so you can place it in the drawing.

An Interactive button enables you to switch modes. Interactive mode allows you to click an insertion point for the object first, and then drag to create the scope of the object as allowed by the view (XY for plan view, XZ for front view, and so on).

Once those dimensions are set, a dialog box may open to allow you to set the third dimension, if required. Interactive mode works with Risers, Cylinders, Circles, Arcs, Spheres, and Pipes. There are some special considerations when drawing pipes in interactive mode, as explained in "Drawing pipes" on page 134.

### To set interactive as the default drawing mode

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **User Options**.
- 2 Click the *User* tab.
- 3 In the *Options* area of the window, click the *Interactive object creation* check box.

### To set interactive mode on the fly

Press F11 on your keyboard or click the Interactive tool on the *CAD Options* toolbar.

## Importing DWG/DXF files

You can open or merge DWG or DXF files into your WYSIWYG show document. If you open a DWG or DXF while another show document is currently open, you are prompted to save changes to that document before another show document is opened. Only one show document may be open at a time. When you merge documents, it enables you to add the contents of the DWG or DXF file to the contents of the current document.

3D solids contained within an AutoCAD file are automatically placed inside blocks by AutoCAD. When you import any file that contains a block, WYSIWYG will automatically explode the blocks in the DXF or DWG files for you if you decide to do this before opening them in WYSIWYG. AutoCAD files saved as Release 13 or higher generally yield the best results.

### Entities that can be imported

The DWG/DXF entities that can be imported are detailed in the following table. The resulting WYSIWYG objects are also shown.

DWG/DXF entity	WYSIWYG object
Circle	Circle
Point	Point
Arc	Arc
Line	Line
2D Polyline	Line
3D Polyline	Line
Mline	Line

DWG/DXF entity	WYSIWYG object
Spline	Spline
Text	Text
MText	Text
Polyface Mesh (PFACE)	Set piece
Polygon Mesh (3D Surfaces)	Set piece
Face (3D Face)	Surface
Aligned dimension	Dimension

### Entities that can be imported as a library item

- Circle
- Arc
- Line
- 2D Polyline
- 3D Polyline
- Polyline
- Mline
- Polyface Mesh (PFACE)
- Polygon Mesh (3D Surfaces)
- Face (3D Face)

### Limitations

- Multilines becomes single lines.
- Multiline text becomes single line text.
- Segments that are not straight (for example, arcs) become straight line segments. A spline must contain fit data for it to be imported.
- Stretched (scaled) blocks are not supported.
- Blocks to be converted to library items cannot imbed other blocks.
- Blocks to be replaced by a fixture cannot imbed other blocks.

### Tips

- It is recommended that you do not import 2D/3D solids whenever possible. Instead, use 3D Face and 3D Surface entities.
- It is recommended that you explode Polyface Mesh or Polygon Mesh entities in AutoCAD before importing to WYSIWYG so you can access each face in WYSIWYG.

## Opening a DWG/DXF document

### Before you begin

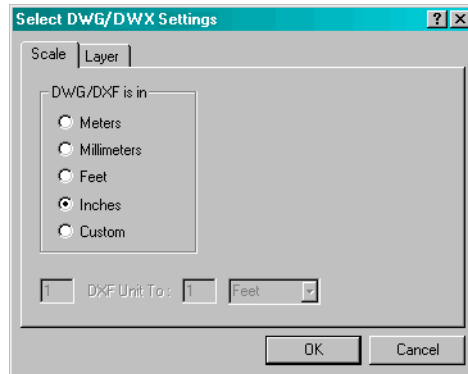
- Clean up the CAD file by removing all unnecessary layers, such as doors, windows, and architectural details. Generally you want to remove items that you do not need to see or will not use in the plot.
- Use the Purge command in AutoCAD to remove layers, blocks, and so on, that are not wanted or needed. You may want to do this several times since layers and

blocks are sometimes linked to other parts of the drawing, and the Purge command might not pick them up the first time. The more unwanted items you can remove, the smaller the file size will be, and the easier/faster it is to import.

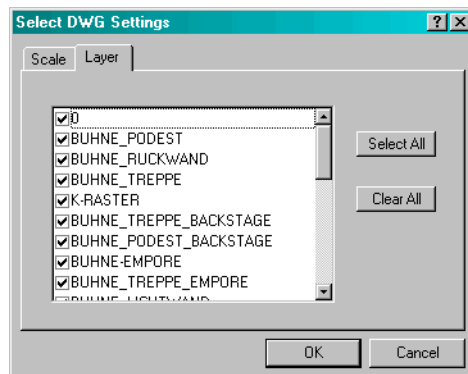
### To open a DWG/DXF document

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Open**.
- 2 From the *Files of Type* box, select the DWG or DXF type. Files of this type appear in the browser window.
- 3 Click the file name in the browser, and then click *Open*.

**Result:** The *Select DWG Settings* dialog box is displayed.



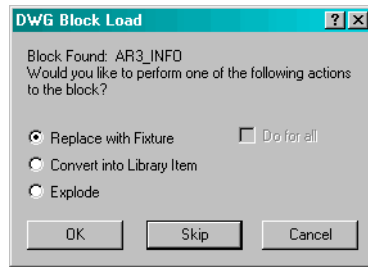
- 4 Select the unit type used in the DWG/DXF drawing.
- 5 Click the *Layer* tab, and then choose the layers that you want to import from the DWG/DXF drawing. Note that you do not need to import all the layers at once. Refer to “Importing scenario” on page 114 for suggestions on how to import the various layers.



- 6 Click *OK*.
- 7 If you have blocks in your drawing, you have the option to explode the blocks, convert them into a library item, or substitute WYSIWYG fixtures for the existing blocks.

**Note:** 3D solids are automatically placed inside blocks by AutoCAD, and assigned an abstract block name (for example, \*X1). The number of “blocks” that are found

are dependent upon the number of solids that were in the AutoCAD file. You will be prompted to determine what action to take for each type of "block."



### Exploding the block

Exploding the block does the same thing as the explode command in AutoCAD, that is, it breaks the block into its components. You must be careful of blocks that are made up of other blocks as WYSIWYG will only explode down one level.

### Converting blocks into library items

Converting a block into a library item imports the object and creates a duplicate of it to add to the objects library for future use. Note that the block will only be available in the library of the current document. To make it available globally, see "To create a custom library item" on page 122.

### Substituting fixtures for blocks

Converting a block into a fixture replaces the DWG/DXF block with a WYSIWYG fixture of your choice.

If you find that you are always replacing a particular type of block with a specific fixture, you can set an option in WYSIWYG so that the substitution will automatically occur each time you import the block. For example, if you have files in which the 'PAR64M' block is always a PAR 64 fixture with an MFL bulb, you have the option of telling WYSIWYG to automatically import the block in that way. To do this, select the *Remember for future imports* check box in the Library Browser that is displayed. To change this option, edit the import.lst file that is created in the Library folder (usually C:\Program Files\WYSIWYG\Library) once the first fixture is set to be remembered for future imports.

**Note:** WYSIWYG creates a pipe for every imported fixture since fixtures in WYSIWYG need to hang on a hang structure. If, however, fixtures are on a straight pipe represented by a straight line in the CAD file, WYSIWYG will convert the entire line into a pipe.

- 8 After you have made your selection, click *OK*.
- 9 If you decided to substitute fixtures for blocks in step 7, you are prompted to select the fixtures from the WYSIWYG library.

## Merging a DWG/DXF document

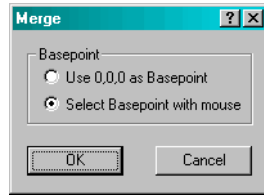
### To merge a DWG/DXF document

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Merge**.
- 2 From the *Files of Type* drop-down list, select the DWG or DXF type. Files of this type appear in the browser window.



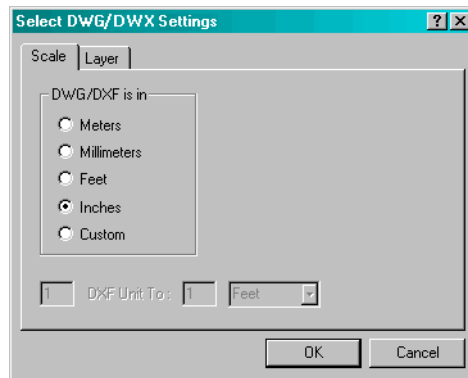
- 3 Click the file name in the browser, and then click *Open*.

**Result:** The *Merge* dialog box opens.



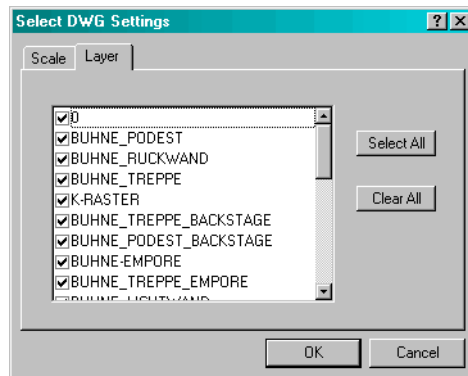
- 4 Choose the basepoint.

**Result:** The *Select DWG Settings* dialog box is displayed.



- 5 Select the unit type used in the DWG/DXF drawing.

- 6 Click the *Layer* tab, and then choose the layers that you want to import from the DWG/DXF drawing.

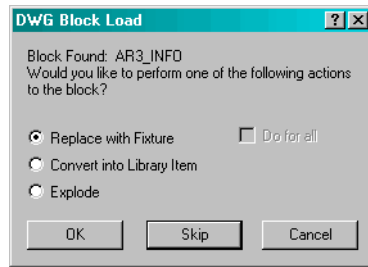


- 7 Click *OK*.

- 8 If you have blocks in your drawing, you have the option of exploding the blocks, converting them into a library item, or substituting WYSIWYG fixtures for the existing blocks.

**Note:** 3D solids are automatically placed inside blocks by AutoCAD, and assigned an abstract block name (for example, \*X1). The number of "blocks" that are found are dependent upon the number of solids that were in the AutoCAD file. You will be prompted to determine what action to take for each type of "block."

For more information on these options, see “Exploding the block” on page 112.



- 9 After you have made your selection, click *OK*.
- 10 If you decided to substitute fixtures for blocks in step 8, you are prompted to select the fixtures from the WYSIWYG library.
- 11 If you chose *Select Basepoint with mouse* in step 4, click to place the drawing.

## Importing scenario

You do not need to import everything in your file at once. You can import items one by one or separately to ensure accuracy. The following scenario may help you when importing DWG/DXF files into WYSIWYG:

1. After choosing to open a DWG/DXF file, switch to the *Layers* tab on the *Select DWG Settings* dialog box. In this tab, you can deselect the layers that you do not want imported in the first round. For example, you may only want to import the venue and all the layers related to it. In the case of a 2D CAD drawing, it is easier to extrude lines into walls and do everything else needed to complete the virtual venue. It will also be quicker as WYSIWYG will have a lot less objects with which to work.
2. Once you have completed working on the venue, you may want to merge in the hang structures if they exist in the CAD file. Using the **Merge** command from the **File** menu, you can open the same CAD file once again, and choose the appropriate layer(s) from the *Layers* tab. When WYSIWYG asks you to pick the insertion point, make sure you select *Use 0,0,0 as Basepoint*. This will ensure that everything in the new layer is placed accurately in the WYSIWYG plot.
3. Continue in the same manner with fixtures and the other objects. Note that if in the CAD file the fixtures exist on different layers, you may want to bring these in separately/one by one as well.

## Exporting DWG/DXF files

If you need to send your WYSIWYG drawings to someone using another drafting program, you can export your file to the DWG or DXF file type. DWG and DXF formats are used to transfer documents to AutoCAD or other compatible drafting applications.

### Entities that can be exported

The WYSIWYG objects that can be exported are detailed in the following table. The resulting DWG/DXF entities are also shown.

WYSIWYG object	DWG/DXF entity
Line	3D Polyline
Spline	Spline
Point	Point

WYSIWYG object	DWG/DXF entity
Circle	Circle
Arc	Arc
Text	Text
Pipe	Line
Dimension	Lines and MText
All other objects	PolyFace Mesh

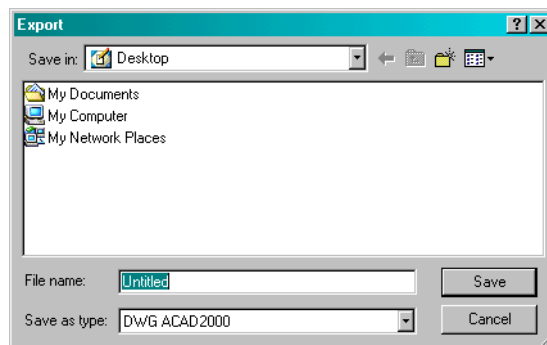
**Note:** You cannot export truss.

### Limitation

- The slope near the end of two lines may be slightly off.

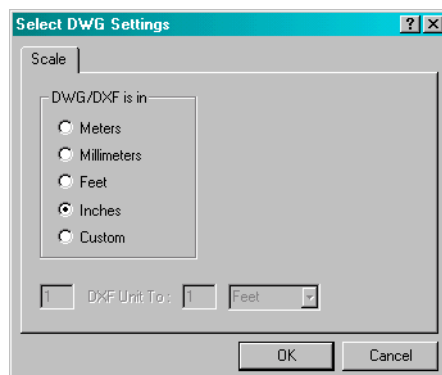
### To export to DWG/DXF in 2D

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **2D DWG/DXF Export**.
- 2 In the *Export* dialog box, navigate to the location where you want to save the exported file. Ensure that the destination appears in the *Save in* box.



- 3 In the *File name* box, type the name of the exported file.
- 4 From the *Save as type* drop-down box, choose the exported file type. There are a number of choices available for file type, based on AutoCAD versions.
- 5 Click *Save*.

**Result:** The *Select DWG Settings* dialog box is displayed.

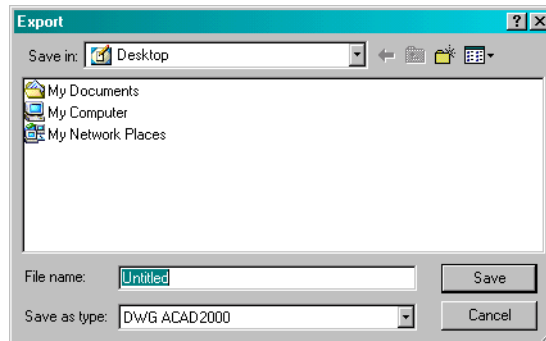


- 6 On the *Scale* tab, click the option button for the units to be used in the DWG/DXF drawing.

- a. To specify a custom unit of measurement, select the *Custom* option button.
  - b. Specify the mapping of the units of measurement to use in the exported file, in the *DXF Unit To* boxes.
- 7 Click *OK*.
- Note:** The current type of the drawing will be used as the point of view in the exported 2D drawing.

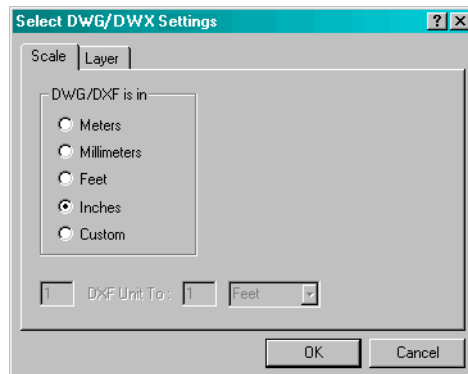
### To export to DWG/DXF in 3D

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **DWG/DXF Export**.
- 2 In the *Export* dialog box, navigate to the location where you want to save the exported file. Ensure that the destination appears in the *Save in* box.



- 3 In the *File name* box, type the name of the exported file.
- 4 From the *Save as type* drop-down box, choose the exported file type. There are a number of choices available for file type, based on AutoCAD versions.
- 5 Click *Save*.

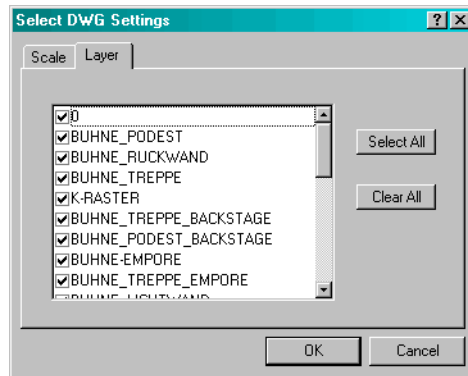
**Result:** The *Select DWG/DWX Settings* dialog box appears.



**Note:** You cannot export a 3D drawing from WYSIWYG Report.

- 6 On the *Scale* tab, click the option button for the units to be used in the DWG/DXF drawing.
  - To specify a custom unit of measurement, select the *Custom* option button, and then specify the mapping of the units of measurement to use in the exported file, in the *DXF Unit To* boxes.

- 7 Click the *Layer* tab.



- 8 Select the layers that you want to include in the DWG/DXF drawing.
  - a. Click *Select All* to select all the layers that are listed.
  - b. Click *Clear All* to deselect all layers.
- 9 Click *OK*.

## Importing floorplans

If you have an existing floorplan saved in bitmap (.bmp), JPEG (.jpg), or Targa (.tga) format, you can import it into your drawing, and then continue to customize it within WYSIWYG.

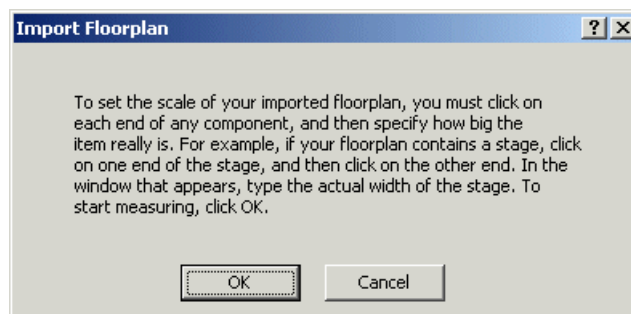
**Note:** You can view your imported floorplan on either of the Drawing tabs (Wireframe or Quad) only in Plan view.

To ensure that your drawing is accurate, when you import the floorplan, you must first set its scale by measuring one of its components, and then telling WYSIWYG how long the line you drew really is. WYSIWYG adjusts the size of the floorplan image based on the measurement that you specify.

### To import a floorplan

**Note:** Before you perform this procedure, you must know the precise dimensions of at least one of the elements in your imported floorplan. For example, if it contains a stage, note the width of the stage before you import the graphic into your drawing.

- 1 In either the Wireframe or Quad tab, in Plan view, click **File > Import Floorplan**.  
**Result:** The Open window appears.
- 2 Navigate to your floorplan file, select it, and then click *Open*. You can import floorplans that are saved in bitmap (.bmp), JPEG (.jpg), or Targa (.tga) format.  
**Result:** The floorplan is placed in your drawing and a window appears, listing instructions for setting the scale of the drawing.



- 3 Click *OK* to close the instruction window.
- 4 Choose an item in your drawing whose measurements you know, and then click on one end of the item. For example, if you know the dimensions of the stage, click on one corner of it.
- 5 Click on a second end of the item. For example, if you had clicked on one corner of the stage, click on a second corner of it.

**Result:** The Import Floorplan window appears, prompting you to enter the length of the line that you have just drawn.

- 6 Type the length of the line, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** WYSIWYG adjusts the size of the floorplan based on the scale that you have entered to ensure that your drawing is accurate. The floorplan appears in your drawing in plan view (the only view in which you can see it).

**Tip:** Once you import the floorplan, you cannot delete it from your drawing. However, you can hide it from sight by right-clicking on your drawing and selecting **Hide Floorplan**. To show the floorplan again, simply right-click and select **Show Floorplan**.



# The Library Browser

## Introduction

An essential component of WYSIWYG is its extensive library. You can view the contents of the library in the Library Browser.

## Working with the Library Browser

The Library Browser is dockable, which means that it has a grab bar on the top that is used to move it around the screen. You can place it on the edges of the work area, at the top, bottom, left, or right. You can also drag it off the edge of the work area and into its own window. This window remains on top of the WYSIWYG screen and may be dragged anywhere on your display.

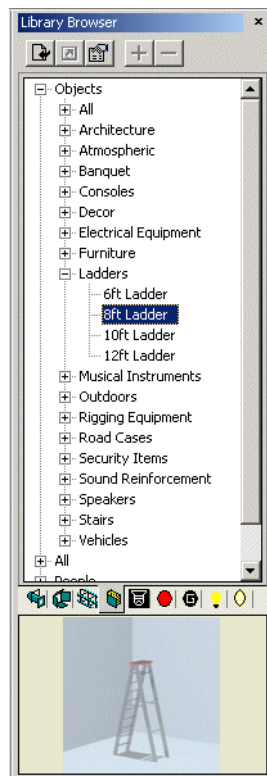
**Note:** If you experience difficulty undocking the browser, hold down the Ctrl key while dragging the grab bar.

### To open the Library Browser










- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Browse Library**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Library* tools on the *Draw* toolbar.

**Note:** You can also access the Library Browser from the **Options** menu on the Welcome window when a document is not opened.




- 2 Click any of the tools along the bottom of the browser window to view the contents of different sections of the library. The library is divided into the following sections:

-  Fixtures
-  Accessories
-  Truss
-  Library Items (scenic)
-  Symbols
-  Gel (color)
-  Gobos
-  Lamps
-  Lenses

Library entries are divided into sort criteria. These criteria may be organized alphabetically, by manufacturer, by type, or by other pertinent classifications. For example, you can find the ETC Source 4 in the Fixtures section > Manufacturer > EFGH > ETC > ERS sub-menu.

Based on the library item that you click, you may see a sample image of the item in the preview pane at the bottom of the browser.


### To view the properties of library objects

- 1 Open the Library Browser.
- 2 Navigate to and select the desired object.
- 3 Click the *Property* tool at the top of the Library Browser. 
- 4 Repeat steps 2-3 to view the properties of multiple objects. You may want to open the properties of different objects to compare data, such as photometric information.

#### Tips:

- You can also hold the ALT key and double-click on the object name.
- To view library objects without opening property windows, browse the library using the shortcut bar. To do this, select the shortcut bar for the type of object you want to view. Right-click in the shortcut bar, and then choose **New <library item>**. The *Library Selection* dialog box opens with a viewing pane included.

### To insert objects from the library

- 1 Open the Library Browser.
- 2 Navigate to the desired object.
- 3 Click the *Insert* tool at the top of the Library Browser. 

**Tip:** You can also double-click on the object name.


**Note:** Fixtures may only be placed on hang structures. Please refer to “Hanging and focusing fixtures” on page 179 for more information.



- 4 Click in your drawing to insert the object.
- 5 Click away from the object to deselect it.

### To create a shortcut for a library object

In the Wireframe and Quad views you can create shortcuts for frequently used objects. Shortcuts are tools found on the various shortcut bars to the left of the working area. Clicking a shortcut for an object is the same as finding the object in the Library Browser and using the *Insert* command.

- 1 Open the Library Browser.
- 2 Navigate to the desired object.
- 3 Click the *Create Shortcut* tool at the top of the Library Browser. 

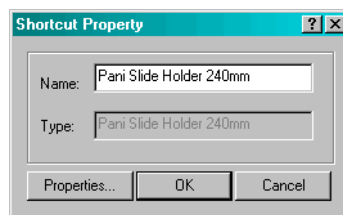
**Result:** A shortcut to the object will appear on the appropriate shortcut bar.

**Tip:** You can also right-click on the object name, and then select **Create Shortcut**.

### To modify a shortcut for a library object

- 1 Right-click on the shortcut, and then select **Properties**.

**Result:** The Properties dialog box appears. An example of the accessories *Shortcut Property* dialog box is shown below.



- 2 In the *Name* box, type a new name for the shortcut.  
The name of the fixture, color, gobo, accessories, library, or truss as listed in the library, is displayed in the *Type* box.
- 3 For fixtures, you can modify the type of lens and lamp associated with the fixture by selecting the appropriate option from the *Lens* and *Lamp* drop-down lists, respectively.
- 4 Click *Properties* to view the properties of the library entry.
- 5 When you are satisfied with your selections, click *OK*.

## Custom library items

You can create custom library items, custom conventional fixtures, custom gobos, and custom color and gobo wheels or scrolls.

When creating custom gobos and custom library items, you are given the option to make the item or gobo available to other documents, in which case the item or gobo is saved to the application's library. If you do not choose to make the items available to other documents, the items are only saved within the one document. In either case, the items are saved and visible in the document regardless of which computer (or application) the document is opened in.

Custom conventional fixtures must be created from the WYSIWYG welcome screen and are saved directly to your application's library. The new conventional fixture is available for you to use in all documents created using this application. If used in a show document, the custom conventional fixture is available in the document regardless of which computer (or application) the document is opened in.

Custom color, gobo wheels, and scrolls are only saved in the document and cannot be saved to the application's library. They travel with the document, but if you need to use the same wheel or scroll on another show, you must regenerate it every time.

**Note:** Once created, custom library items, custom gobos, and custom conventional fixtures cannot be deleted. The only way to delete them is to delete the appropriate .cdb file saved in the WYSIWYG library folder. This file is generated for each *category* of custom item: it is not generated for each item. When you delete the gobos.cdb file, for example, you delete all your custom gobos.

### To create a custom library item

See "To create a custom library item" on page 122.

### To create a custom fixture

See "To create a custom fixture" on page 122.

### To create a custom gobo

See "To create a custom gobo" on page 122.

### To create custom color or gobo lists

See "To create custom color or gobo lists" on page 122.



# Drawing objects

## Introduction

In WYSIWYG, the **Draw** menu lists the objects that you can draw. Keep the following tips and aids in mind when you are drawing the various objects.

### Drawing tips

- At any time, instead of clicking points with the mouse, you can type in the desired coordinates.
- Create shortcuts for library objects.
- Use the missing coordinate.

### Drawing aids

Several commands and icons are available to help you when drawing in CAD mode. For a complete list of these aids, refer to “Keyboard shortcuts and hot keys” on page 353.

## Drawing a venue

To begin your drawing, insert a venue.

### To insert a venue

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Venue**.

**Result:** A sub-menu will appear prompting you to choose the type of venue to be inserted.

- 2 Select **Black Box**, **Arena**, **Proscenium Arch**, **Frame Tent**, or **Circus Tent**.

**Result:** A dialog appears in which you can modify the properties of the room. The *Proscenium Arch* dialog box is shown below.

New Venue - Proscenium Arch					
<b>STAGE</b>					
Width	90'0"	Depth	50'0"	Stage Height	4'0"
Thrust Depth	8'0"	Thrust Width	35'0"	Fly Height	60'0"
<b>ARCH</b>					
Width	40'0"	Depth	2'0"	Height	20'0"
<b>AUDITORIUM</b>					
BOH Width	100'0"	Depth	100'0"	Height	45'0"
FOH Width	68'0"	Slope	12'0"		
OK		Units: <input type="radio"/> Metric <input checked="" type="radio"/> Imperial			

- 3 Accept the defaults, or choose custom properties.

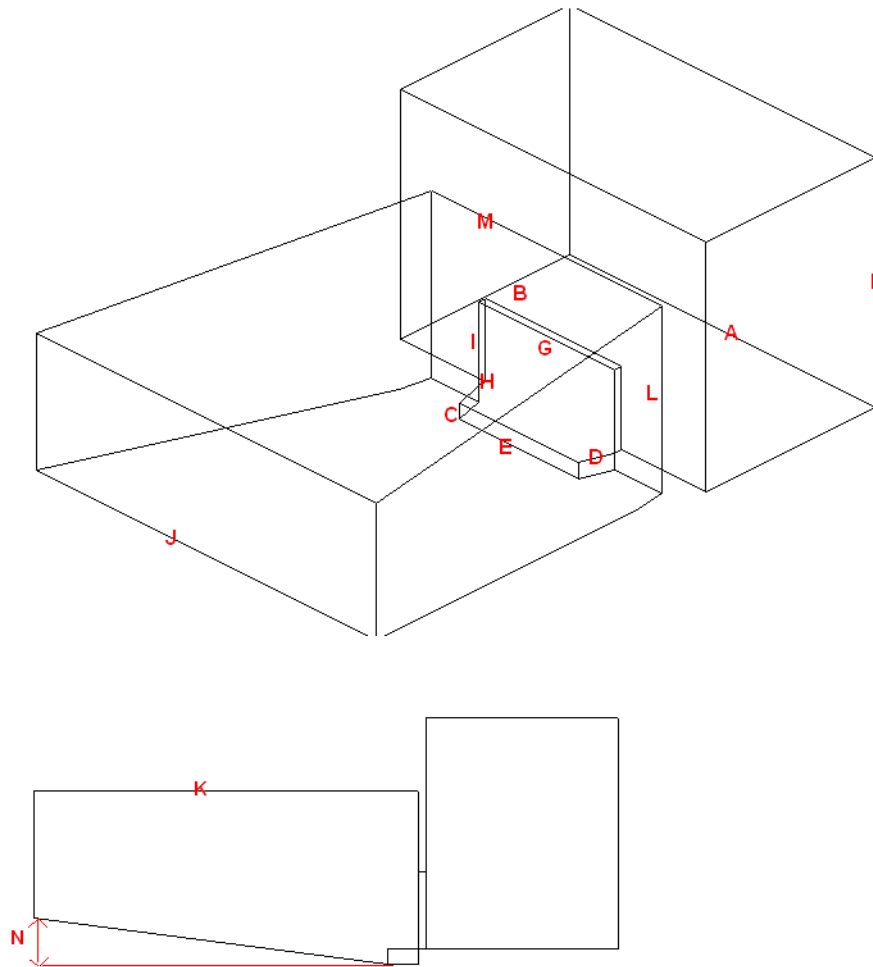
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The selected venue is inserted into the drawing.

The venue types are defined as follows:

### Proscenium Arch

A proscenium arch venue is a basic theatrical space with a stage, proscenium arch, and an auditorium. The origin is set at the intersection of the center line and the proscenium line on the stage floor.



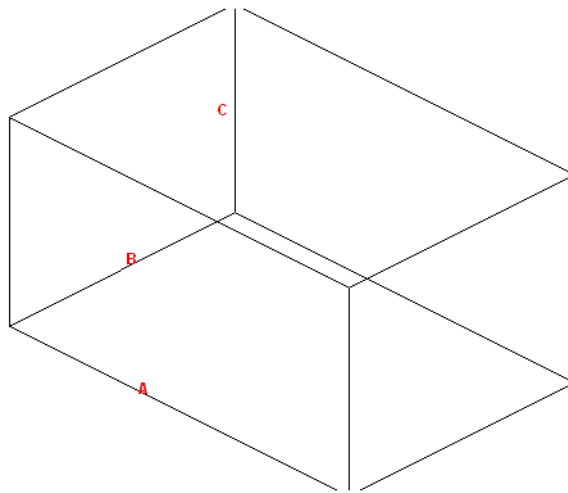
The following entries describe the parts of the proscenium arch.

- A: The stage width; the dimension from the extremity of the SR wing to the extremity of the SL wing. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 90'0".
- B: The stage depth; the dimension from the proscenium line to the back of the stage space. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 50'0".
- C: The stage height; the dimension from the auditorium floor to the stage deck. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 4'0".
- D: The thrust depth; the dimension from the edge of the stage to the proscenium line. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 8'0".
- E: The thrust width; the dimension from the extremity of the SR edge of the thrust to the SL extremity of the thrust. This dimension cannot be greater than the Arch width (G). In WYSIWYG, the default value is 35'0".
- F: The Fly height; the dimension from the stage deck to the top of the fly house. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 60'0".
- G: The proscenium arch width. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 40'0".
- H: The depth of the proscenium arch wall. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 2'0".

- I: The height of the proscenium arch; the dimension of the opening of the proscenium arch. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 20'0".
- J: The back of house (BOH) width; the dimension of the auditorium from the extremity of house right to the extremity of house left at the back of the house. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 100'0".
- K: The auditorium depth; the dimension from the proscenium line to the back of the house. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 100'0".
- L: The auditorium height; the dimension from the ceiling of the auditorium to the floor of the auditorium at the edge of the stage. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 45'0".
- M: The front of house (FOH) width; the dimension of the auditorium from the extremity of house right to the extremity of house left at the front of the house. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 68'0".
- N: The auditorium slope height. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 12'0".

### Black Box

A black box venue is an empty rectangular room. The origin is set at the center of the room on the floor.

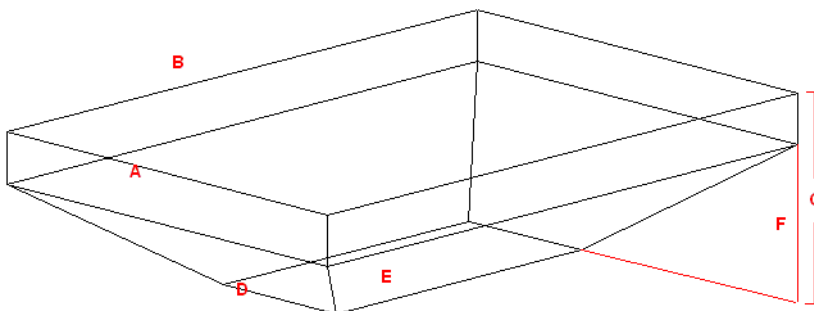


The following entries describe the parts of the black box:

- A: The width of the room. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 60'0".
- B: The depth of the room. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 40'0".
- C: The height of the room. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 30'0".

### Arena

An arena venue is a basic stadium space. The following entries describe the parts of the arena. The origin is set at the center of the venue on the floor or ice rink.



- A: The width of the arena. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 170'0".
- B: The depth of the arena. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 250'0".
- C: The total height of the arena. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 60'0".
- D: The width of the floor or ice rink. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 60'0".
- E: The depth of the floor or ice rink. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 130'0".
- F: The height of the stands or seating; the portion of the total height that is occupied by seating or stands. In WYSIWYG, the default value is 40'0".

## Tent

There are two types of tents that you can create in WYSIWYG—frame tents and circus tents.

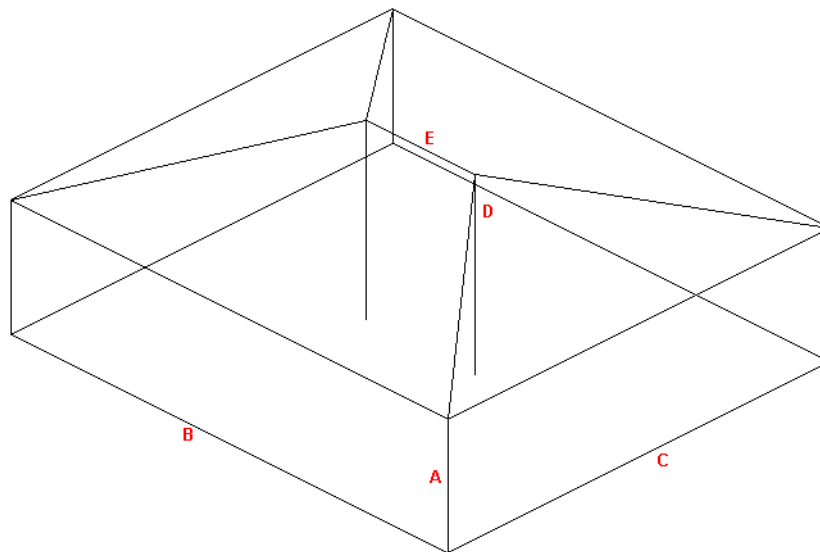
- **Frame tents** These tents are square or rectangular in shape and usually have two center poles. Each wall is made of a single piece of fabric supported by as many poles as you specify.
- **Circus tents** These tents are styled after the classical “Big Top” of the circus. They are more rounded in shape than the frame tent, the walls comprising multiple sections, each supported by as many poles as you specify. The roof is held up by one center pole.

When drawing either type of tent, you can specify many different properties, including the number of poles, length, height, or perimeter of the walls, and the color of different parts of the tent.

You can also choose from different materials and you can choose whether you want to apply either a custom color or texture to different parts of the tent. When assigning a texture, you can choose your own texture, such as a company logo or symbol, or you can choose a texture from the WYSIWYG library.

The origin for both types of tents is at the center of the tent on the floor.

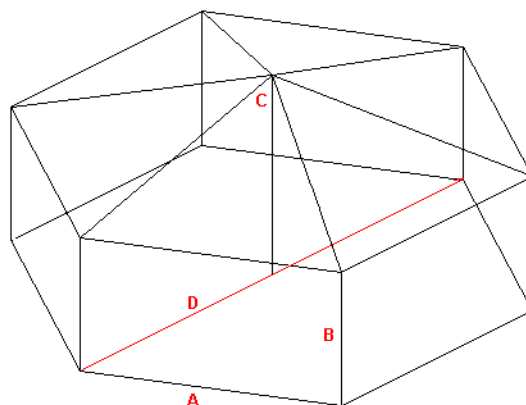
## Frame tent



The following entries describe the parts of the frame tent:

	<b>Description</b>	<b>New Venue - Tent Field</b>	<b>WYSIWYG Default Value</b>
A	The height of the tent walls.	Wall height	20'0"
B	The length of the tent walls.	Width	80'0"
C	The width the tent walls.	Depth	70'0"
D	The height that the center pole extends above the height of the walls.	Height above walls	10'0"
E	The distance between the center poles.	Separation	20'0"

### Circus tent



The following entries describe the parts of the circus tent:

	<b>Description</b>	<b>New Venue - Tent Field</b>	<b>WYSIWYG Default Value</b>
A	The number of individual segments in the tent.	Segments	6
B	The height of the tent walls.	Wall height	20'0"
C	The height that the center pole extends above the height of the walls.	Height above walls	10'0"
D	The diameter of the tent, measured from pole to opposite pole.	Diameter	70'0"

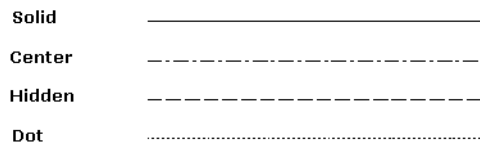
## Drawing lines

Lines are 2D objects. Lines are drawn continuously, allowing you to create shapes made up of multiple vertices.

Lines come in four styles:

- Solid
- Center
- Hidden
- Dot

Line styles determine how line objects appear on your plot and can be modified at any time. They look similar to the following.








You can make a multi-vertex line appear as a spline or french curve by selecting the option in the properties box. You can then drag the markers around to adjust the curves. Alternatively, you can choose to draw a spline directly. Splines have the same line style options as regular lines.

Lines can be extruded into surfaces. For more on extruding lines, refer to “Extrude” on page 167.

### To draw a line

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Line**.
- 2 From the sub-menu, select **Solid**, **Dot**, **Center**, **Dashed**, or **Spline**.

**Tip:** You can also use the appropriate line tool on the *Draw* toolbar. The available line tools are as follows:

-  Solid
-  Dot
-  Center
-  Dashed
-  Spline

- 3 Click on the drawing at the starting point of the line.
- 4 Drag the next vertex to its end point and click.
- 5 Continue to place vertices of the line as needed.
- 6 To end the line at its last end point, right-click and choose **Finish Line**. To abort the line entirely, choose **Abort Line**. This erases the whole line from the drawing.

## Drawing points

Points are identifiers of a specific coordinate in 3D space. Points are inserted as references or as scenic elements.



### To draw a point

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Point**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Point* tool on the *Draw* toolbar.



- 2 Click on the drawing to place the point.

**Note:** Points can be drawn as a dot, a cross, a square, or a circle.

### To set the point type default

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **Show Options**.
- 2 Click the *Object Defaults* tab.
- 3 Select the desired point type.
- 4 Click *OK*.

## Drawing circles

There are two ways in which you can draw circles:

- non-interactive mode in which you type the exact radius of the circle
- interactive mode in which you click and drag to set the radius

### To draw a circle in non-interactive mode

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Circle**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Circle* tool on the *Draw* toolbar.



**Result:** The New Circle dialog box appears.

- 2 In the *Radius* box, type a radius for the circle, and then click *OK*. The default value is 4'0".
- 3 Click on the drawing to place the circle.
- 4 Click elsewhere in the drawing to finish placing the new circle.

### To draw a circle in interactive mode

**Note:** To turn interactive mode on, click the Interactive Mode button on the toolbar.



- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Circle**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Circle* tool on the *Draw* toolbar.




- 2 Click to place the center of the circle.
- 3 Click to set the radius for the circle.

## Drawing arcs

There are two ways in which you can draw arcs:

- non-interactive mode in which you type the exact radius, start, and end angles of the arc
- interactive mode in which you click and drag to set the arc


### To draw an arc in non-interactive mode

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Arc**.  
**Tip:** You can also use the *Arc* tool on the *Draw* toolbar. 
- 2 In the *Radius* box, type a radius for the arc. The default value is 4'0".
- 3 In the *Start Angle* box, type the start angle. The default value is 0.00.
- 4 In the *End Angle* box, type the end angle for the arc. The default value is 180.00.
- 5 Click *OK*.
- 6 Click on the drawing to place the arc.
- 7 Click elsewhere in the drawing to finish placing the arc.

### To draw an arc in interactive mode


**Note:** To turn interactive mode on, click the Interactive Mode button on the toolbar.



- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Arc**.  
**Tip:** You can also use the *Arc* tool on the *Draw* toolbar. 
- 2 Click to place the start point of the arc.
- 3 Click to place the end point of the arc.
- 4 Click to place the middle point of the arc.
- 5 Click elsewhere in the drawing to finish placing the arc.

## Drawing text labels

### To draw a text label

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Text Label**.  
**Tip:** You can also use the *Text Label* tool on the *Draw* toolbar. 
- 2 In the *Text* box, type the desired text.
- 3 Type a height for the text. This is similar to selecting a font size. The default value is 2'0".
- 4 Click on the drawing to place the text label.

**Note:**

- You cannot change the font for text labels in CAD mode.
- The insertion point for the text label is at the intersection of the crosshairs.

### To set alignment for a text label


- 1 Select the text label for which you want to change the justification.
- 2 Right-click, and then choose **Properties**.
- 3 Click the Text Label tab.
- 4 Set the horizontal and vertical justification as desired.
- 5 Select the *Align to View* check box to ensure the text label is legible in all view types (plan, left, right, front, back, and isometric).
- 6 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The text label is relocated around the insertion point, based on the options selected.

## Drawing dimension lines

Dimension lines are 2D objects. They have a start and end point, and measure and display the distance covered based on the measurement mode selected. The measurement modes available are: X, Y, XY, XZ, YZ, and XYZ. The dimension will only be visible in one view type. The view type is set when the dimension is drawn and is dependent on the plot type and workplane in which the dimension is drawn.

### To draw a dimension

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Dimension**.  
**Tip:** You can also click the *Dimension* tool on the *Draw* toolbar. 
- 2 Click on the drawing to set the dimension start point.
- 3 Right-click to set the measurement mode.
- 4 Click on the drawing to set the dimension end point.
- 5 Click and drag the grab point in the center of the dimension text to drag the text to the correct side of the object, if required.
- 6 Click to set the dimension line.


#### Tip:

Use snaps to connect dimensions directly to other objects.

## Drawing surfaces

Surfaces are 2D objects. Surfaces are drawn continuously, stretching out behind the cursor. Surfaces can be used to create backdrops or other flat objects. Surfaces can be extruded to create odd shaped risers, or other custom shaped 3D objects. For more information on extruding, refer to “Extrude” on page 167.

### To draw a surface

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Surface**.  
**Tip:** You can also click the *Surface* tool on the *Draw* toolbar. 
- 2 Click on the drawing at the starting point of the surface.
- 3 Drag to the next point of the surface and click.
- 4 Continue to place points for the surface as needed.
- 5 To finish and close the surface, right-click and choose **Finish Surface** from the sub-menu. To abort the surface entirely, choose **Abort Surface**. This erases the whole surface from the drawing.

## Drawing risers

Risers are solid 3D rectangular objects. You can use risers for creating platforms, square columns, or any other box-shaped objects.

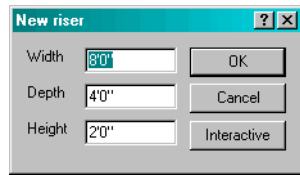
There are two ways in which you can draw risers:

- non-interactive mode in which you type the exact width, depth, and height of the riser
- interactive mode in which you click and drag to set the dimensions of the riser

### To draw a riser in non-interactive mode

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Riser**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Riser* tool  on the *Draw* toolbar.



- 2 In the *Width* box, type the width for the riser. The default value is 8'0"
- 3 In the *Depth* box, type the depth for the riser. The default value is 4'0".
- 4 In the *Height* box, type the height for the riser. The default value is 2'0".
- 5 Click *OK*.  
**Result:** The riser is attached to the cursor.
- 6 Drag the new riser to its position, and then click to place it in the drawing.

### To draw a riser in interactive mode

**Note:** To turn interactive mode on, click the Interactive Mode button on the toolbar.



- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Riser**.
- 2 Click the starting point of the riser on the drawing. The insertion point is the lower left corner of the riser.
- 3 Drag up and to the right to stretch out the riser's shape. Click to place the upper right corner of the riser.
- 4 In the dialog box that opens, type the missing dimension of the riser.
- 5 Click *OK*.

## Drawing cylinders

Cylinders are solid 3D objects. Cylinders can be used for creating platforms, columns, or any other cylinder-shaped objects.

There are two ways in which you can draw cylinders:

- non-interactive mode in which you type the exact height and diameter of the cylinder
- interactive mode in which you click and drag to set the dimensions of the cylinder

### To draw a cylinder

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Cylinder**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Cylinder* tool on the *Draw* toolbar.



- 2 In the *Height* box, type the height for the cylinder. The default value is 8'0".
- 3 In the *Width* box, type the width for the cylinder. The default value is 8'0".
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The cylinder is attached to the cursor.

- 5 Drag the new cylinder to its position, and then click to place the object in the drawing.

### To draw a cylinder in interactive mode

**Note:** To turn interactive mode on, click the Interactive Mode button on the toolbar.



- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Cylinder**.
- 2 Click to place the center of the bottom surface of the cylinder.
- 3 Click to set the radius for the cylinder.
- 4 In the dialog box that opens, type the desired height or length for the cylinder.
- 5 Click *OK*.

### Drawing spheres

Spheres are solid 3D circular or oval objects.

There are two ways in which you can draw spheres:

- non-interactive mode in which you type the exact horizontal and vertical diameter of the sphere
- interactive mode in which you click and drag to set the dimensions of the sphere

### To draw a sphere in non-interactive mode

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Sphere**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Sphere* tool on the *Draw* toolbar.



- 2 In the *Horizontal Diameter* box, type the horizontal diameter for the sphere. The default value is 8'0".
- 3 In the *Vertical Diameter* box, type the vertical diameter for the sphere. The default value is 8'0".
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The cylinder is attached to the cursor.

- 5 Drag the new sphere to its position, and then click to place the object in the drawing.

### To draw a sphere in interactive mode

**Note:** To turn interactive mode on, click the Interactive Mode button on the toolbar.



- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Sphere**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Sphere* tool on the *Draw* toolbar.



- 2 Click to place the sphere in your drawing, and then click again.

**Result:** The New Sphere dialog box appears.

- 3 In the dialog box that opens, type the horizontal and vertical diameter of the new sphere.
- 4 Click *OK*.
- 5 Click in the drawing to finish placing the new sphere.

## Drawing pipes

For details, refer to “Drawing pipes” on page 134.

## Drawing masking

Masking, specifically borders and legs, can be automatically attached to pipes using the border and legs tool.

### To draw borders and legs

- 1 Select the pipes for which you want to attach a border and legs.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Border and Legs**.
- 3 Select the *Border* check box to add a border to the selected pipes, and then specify the height of the border.

**Note:** This is the distance from the pipe to the bottom of the border.

- 4 Select the *Legs* check box to add legs to the selected pipes, and then specify the width and bottom elevation of the legs.

**Note:** The width is the distance from the extremity of the pipe to the inside edge of the leg. The bottom elevation is the distance from the floor ( $z = 0$ ) to the bottom of the legs.

- 5 Select the *Group to pipe* check box to group the border and legs to the pipe. When this option is selected all the components (border, legs, and pipe) are selected as one.

**Note:** If, at a later time, you want to edit a border or leg individually, you must ungroup the objects.

- 6 Click *OK*.

**Result:** Three surfaces are drawn and attached to the selected pipe.

## Drawing focus positions

For details, refer to “Drawing focus positions” on page 183.

## Drawing screens

Streaming video enables you to bring a live or pre-recorded video stream into WYSIWYG and play it back while you set looks in Design mode and while you precue in Live mode. To do so, you must first use CAD mode to draw the screen upon which the video will play.

Once you draw the screen, you can leave it blank, assign a static image, or you can assign a video source to it using the Video Manager. You can select a video file or you can capture a live video stream from an external source, such as a web cam or a video capture device that is installed on your computer (provided that you have WYSIWYG Perform). For video files, you must select one of the following video file formats for playback:

- Motion Picture Experts Group (MPEG)
- Audio-Video Interleaved (AVI)

**Note:** If you cannot view these file types, you may not have the proper decoder installed on your PC. Install the appropriate decoder, and then try viewing the file again. For help on installing the decoder, consult the developer of the video file type.

For live video streams, your capture device must be using WDM drivers.

After you draw the screen and attach the video source, you use the Video Designer Tool in Design mode to start the playback or stream. For more information, see “To use the Video tool” on page 241. You can view the video in any of the shaded views, using the controls on the Video designer tool to pause, fast forward, rewind, or stop the video.

You can also patch the *control* of the video source to a console device. This means that you can use the console device to control the progress of a live video stream or a video file by making the video play, pause, or rewind; you cannot use WYSIWYG to change different aspects of the video itself.

To control the video source, the DMX patch is given three channels. For details on controlling the video with the console device in Live mode, see “To control a DMX patched video source with a console” on page 316.

#### Notes:

- Before you render your drawing, you can either pause the video at the precise image you want to see in the final rendering, or you can let the video run while the Render Wizard processes the information in your drawing. In this case, the Render Wizard captures the video frame that was showing when it processed the screen information.
- If the video control is patched and DMX connected in Live Mode, then you will not be able to control the video using any of the Video Designer Tool commands in Design mode. Video sources can only be controlled by a designer tool when the DMX source is disconnected; therefore, you must first disconnect the applicable console device from Live Mode before using any of the Video Designer Tool commands.

### To draw a screen

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, click **Screen**.
- 2 In the appropriate boxes, type the width and height of the screen (or accept the default width of 8 feet and height of 6 feet).
- 3 To configure the image that will appear on the screen, click the appropriate option button:
  - To leave the screen blank, click the *Blank Screen* option button.
  - To show a static image on the screen, click the *Image File* option button, and then click *Browse* to locate the graphic. (The image must be saved in either bitmap or JPEG format.)
  - To attach a video source to the screen, click the *Video Source* option button, and then choose the video source from the drop-down box (or click *Create New* to configure a new video source with the Video Manager). For details on creating a new video source, see “To configure a new video source for streaming video” below.
- 4 Click *OK*.

### To configure a new video source for streaming video

To create a new video source for streaming video, you use the Video Manager. There are a couple of ways of opening the Video Manager (for example, from the New Screen window, or from the **Tools** menu); the following procedure lists one possible way.

**Note:** You can only incorporate live video if you have WYSIWYG Perform; you cannot select a video from a live capture device if you have WYSIWYG Design.

- 1 Click **Tools** > **Video Manager**.
- 2 Click *New*.  
**Result:** The Video Source window opens.
- 3 In the *Name* box, type a descriptive name for the video.
  - To play a video from a file, click the *Video File* option button, and then click *Browse* to locate the file.
  - To capture a live video stream from an external source, such as a web cam or a video capture device that is attached to your computer, click *Video Capture*, and then use the drop-down arrow to select the appropriate device. (This option is available only if you have WYSIWYG Perform installed.)

**Note:** The video capture device must already be configured on your computer and must be using WDM drivers.
- 4 To play the video with a DMX control, click *DMX Patch*, and then use the drop-down arrow to select the appropriate patch universe to control the video. In the box to the right of the drop-down list, type the starting DMX address.  
**Note:** You must have a named patch already configured on your computer.
- 5 To mute the sound of the video, click *Mute*; to play the sound of the video, ensure that *Play Sound* is selected.
- 6 Click *OK*.
- 7 In the Video Manager, ensure that the status of the video source is *Connected*. If it is not, then press *Connect*.  
**Tip:** To ensure that the video source is connected to the console every time you start WYSIWYG, click to select the check box beside *Connect on load*.
- 8 Click *OK* to save your changes and close the Video Manager.

**Notes:**

1. For details on patching the video control in Data mode, see "To patch the control of a video source" on page 224.
2. For details on using the Video Designer Tool to play the video in Design mode, see "To use the Video tool" on page 241.
3. For details on using a console device to control the video in Live mode, see "To control a DMX patched video source with a console" on page 316.

## Drawing movement axes

For every movement axis that you draw in CAD mode, you can attach one or more objects to it, and then define the object's position along the axis. You can attach objects such as risers, library objects, or custom objects that you have drawn.

To be able to move an object in different planes, you can attach multiple movement axes to one another. Simply attach the object to one of the axes, and then control the object's movement along any of the axes by selecting it with the Moving Scenery Designer tool. This feature is useful, for example, if you have a set piece that needs to be able to move in both a vertical and horizontal motion.

**Notes:**

- When attaching axes to one another, you cannot create a circular linking pattern. For example, you can link Axis A to Axis B, and then link Axis B to Axis C, but you cannot then link Axis C back to Axis A because this creates a circular link.
- You cannot attach fixtures to movement axes; however, you can attach pipes that hold fixtures to axes.



- Currently, you cannot attach focus positions or groups containing focus positions to movement axes. However, in future releases you will be able to attach either of these items to movement axes.

You can draw axes either diagonally or straight along any direction of movement—X, Y, or Z—choosing between the following two main types of axes:

- **Linear** Choose this type of axis to have an object move in a straight line along the path that you specify (or in a series of straight segments all joined together at different vertices to create the path). You can create a linear axis in any length or shape that you require, as long as it comprises straight line segments; you cannot draw a curved axis. For example, you could have a person walk across a stage in a zig zag path, if desired.

When you draw this type of axis, and then attach an object to it, the distance from the axis to the object does not affect the object's movement; the object will always follow the path of the axis regardless of where you have placed the axis or object. By default, all linear axes have an arrow on one end, signalling the direction in which the object will move. You can adjust the size of the arrow to suit your needs by opening the Properties page for the axis.

- **Rotation** Choose this type of axis if you want to have an object rotate in a circular motion. When you click to place this type of axis in your drawing, a circle with a center dot appears. The circle acts as a visual cue, telling you the direction in which the object will rotate; the center dot is the actual axis around which the object rotates.

The orientation of the object's rotation changes based on the view in which you draw the axis (plan, side, or front/back). When placing the object to be rotated in your drawing, note that its position relative to the center dot of the rotation axis is important. The distance from the center dot to the object represents the size of the circle in which it will rotate, with the dot marking the center of the circle. To have the object rotate in a very tight circle (for example, a dancer doing a pirouette, or a spinning object), place the object directly on the center dot.

By default, all rotation axes have an arrow on one end, signalling the direction in which the object will rotate. While you cannot adjust the size of the arrow head directly, you can click and drag the circle to the desired size, which adjusts the arrow head proportionately. To change the direction of the object's rotation, switch views, and then drag the center point to the new orientation.

### To draw a linear movement axis

- 1 In Wireframe view, select the view in which you want to draw the axis (plan, front, back, side, or isometric)
- 2 Click **Draw > Axis > Linear Axis**.
- 3 In the window that appears, type a name for the axis, and then click **OK**.
- 4 In your drawing, click in the position where you want to start the axis, and then move your cursor to the next point of the axis and click. To create an axis with multiple segments, continue clicking at each point (vertex) of the axis.
- 5 When you are finished creating the axis, right-click and choose **Finish Axis**.

### To draw a rotation movement axis

**Note:** Unlike linear axes, rotation axes cannot have multiple vertices. Instead, when you draw one of these axes, the object rotates around the center point.

- 1 In Wireframe view, select the view in which you want to draw the axis (plan, front, back, side, or isometric).
- 2 Click **Draw > Axis > Rotation Axis**.
- 3 In the window that appears, type a name for the axis, and then click **OK**.

- 4 In your drawing, click in the position where you want the axis to appear.

**Note:** The circle that appears when you draw a rotation axis is only a visual cue to show you the direction in which the object rotates—it does not affect the size of path on which the object rotates. The circle is given a default size, but you can change it to suit your needs.

### To attach a movement axis to a DMX patch universe

To move the object with a DMX control, you first have to attach the movement axis to a named DMX patch universe that you have created in Data mode.

**Note:** For information on creating a patch universe, see “To create a new patch universe” on page 223.

- 1 Click to select the axis that you want to attach to the patch universe.
- 2 Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the Axis tab.
- 4 Click the *DMX Patch* option button.
- 5 From the *Universe* drop-down box, select the DMX patch universe to which you want to attach the axis.
- 6 In the *Address* box, type the starting DMX address.
- 7 Click *OK*.

### To attach a movement axis to a motion patch universe

To move the object with a motion control system, you first have to attach the movement axis to a named motion control patch universe that you have created in Data mode.

**Note:** For information on creating a patch universe, see “To create a new patch universe” on page 223.

- 1 Click to select the axis that you want to attach to the patch universe.
- 2 Right-click and select **Properties**.
- 3 Click the Axis tab.
- 4 Click the *Motion Patch* option button.
- 5 From the *Universe* drop-down box, select the motion control patch universe to which you want to attach the axis.
- 6 From the *ID* drop-down list, select the ID on the motion control system with which you want to associate this axis.

**Note:** The motion control system must be connected to your computer for the ID to appear in this drop-down list. If the system is not currently connected, you can also type the ID directly into this drop-down list box.

- 7 Click *OK*.

### To attach an object to a movement axis

#### Notes:

- You can attach one or more objects to each axis; however, each object can be attached to only one axis at a time.
- When you attach an object to a linear axis, the distance from the axis to the object does not affect the object's movement; the object will always follow the path of the axis regardless of where you have placed the axis or object.

- When placing the object to be rotated in your drawing, note that its position relative to the rotational axis is important. The distance from the central point of the axis to the object represents the size of the circle in which it will rotate. To have the object rotate in a very tight circle (for example, a dancer doing a pirouette, or a spinning object), place the object directly on the center point of the axis.
- 1 Place the object that you want to attach to the axis at the appropriate position in your drawing, either by adding a new object, or moving an existing object to this location.
  - 2 Select the object, right-click, and then choose **Properties**.
  - 3 On the *General* tab, from the *Attach to Axis* drop-down box, select the axis to which you want to attach this object.
  - 4 Click *OK*.

### To add a vertex to a linear movement axis

To change the path of an existing linear axis, you can add one or more vertices, and then drag these vertices to the new position.

- 1 In your drawing, click on the point of the axis at which you want to add a vertex.
- 2 Right-click and select **Add Vertex**.

**Result:** The vertex is added at the point where you clicked.

**Tip:** To change the path of the axis, click to select the axis and view all the vertices. Click the desired vertex, drag it to the new position, and then release the mouse. Any objects that are attached to the axis will now follow the new path.

### Viewing moving scenery

After you create the axes and attach the objects to them, you can watch the objects move along the axes by using the Looks feature in Design mode. Just as you can simulate moving lights by cross-fading between one lighting look to the next, you can also simulate moving scenery by creating Looks that contain movement axes and fading from one Look to the next. For more information, see “To view moving scenery” on page 249.

You can also patch the axis in Data mode so you can control the movement of the object with either a DMX console device, such as a Mini Console, or a motion control system. For details, see “To patch a movement axis to a DMX console device” on page 225 or “To patch a movement axis to a motion control system” on page 225.

## Drawing cameras

You can add cameras to the drawing to provide additional view points in shaded views and renderings.

### To insert a camera

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Camera**.
- 2 Type a name for the camera and a value in degrees for the field angle. The default value for the field angle is 53.13.
- 3 Click on the drawing to place the camera.

- 4 Drag the cursor to aim the camera, and then click to place the target.

**Result:** The camera is inserted into your drawing and available in the camera selection list for shaded views and renderings.

**Tip:** Use the missing coordinate tool while placing the camera and target.

**Note:** The target of your camera is easily identifiable in Wireframe views as defined by the marker points of the camera drawing. Camera drawings are invisible in shaded views because you are looking *through* the camera. For this reason, in this view you can choose to display the target. For more information on displaying the target, refer to "Modifying shaded views" on page 71 or see "Using the Camera toolbar" on page 140.

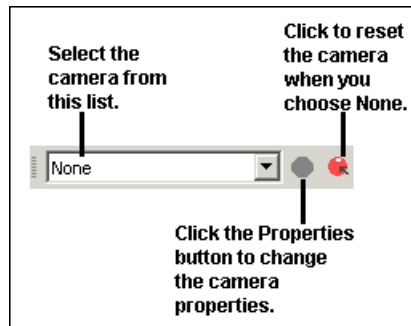
### Using the Camera toolbar

After you have drawn a camera, you can use the Camera toolbar in Shaded views to view your drawing through the camera of your choice. You can also use this toolbar to quickly access the camera properties page and change properties, such as the camera name and field angle.

#### To use the Camera toolbar

- 1 In CAD, Design, or Live mode, click the Quad or Shaded tab.
- 2 Right-click in the toolbar area and select **Camera**.

**Result:** The Camera toolbar appears.



- 3 From the drop-down list, select the camera through which you want to view your drawing.

**Note:** To switch back to the default view, click None, and then click the far-right button to reset the view. To change the camera properties, select the camera from the drop-down list, and then click the properties button.

### Drawing a compass

You can add a compass to a drawing to define the direction that is north. This definition is important to set the position of the sun and/or moon for renderings that use environmental options.

**Note:** There can be only one compass in a file.

#### To draw a compass

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Define North**.
- 2 Click to place the starting point of the compass.

- 3 Click to place the end point of the compass. The end point must be directly north of the start point.

**Result:** A compass is drawn, centered on the start point and pointing towards the end point.

**Notes:**

- To remove the compass from the drawing, choose **Clear Direction** from the **Tools** menu.
- To redefine north, repeat steps 1-3. You do not need to remove the compass from the drawing when redefining north as there can be only one compass in a file.

## Saving custom library items

Custom library items are made of one or more objects including existing library items. Save a custom library item for a complex object that you have drawn and think you might want to use again.

**Note:** You cannot save fixtures, hanging structures, such as pipes and truss, and splines as components of custom library items.

### To create a custom library item

- 1 Select the objects to be saved as a custom item.
- 2 From the **Library** menu, choose **Create New Library Item**.

**Tip:** If the menu item is greyed out, one or more of the objects selected cannot be included in the custom library item.
- 3 Pick a base point for the item. This will become the insertion point for the item.

**Result:** The Library Item Wizard opens displaying a rotating shaded view of your new item.
- 4 Type a name for the new library item.
- 5 To make this item available to other documents, check the appropriate box.
- 6 Click *Next*.
- 7 Add or modify the path.

**Note:** The path is the location in the library where the item will be stored. An item assigned to the path "Custom/Tables" would be available in the custom section of the items library in a sub-category named Tables.
- 8 Click *Next*.
- 9 Type all pertinent information including manufacturer, weight, and any notes.
- 10 Click *Next*.
- 11 Type your name.
- 12 Click *Finish*.

**Result:** The custom item is placed in the item library as per the path specified in step 3.






## Editing objects

### Selecting

Before you can manipulate objects, you must select them. Selected objects are easily identifiable: a white box appears at the insertion point and the lines of the object become dotted. Fixtures that are selected are filled in green and their beams can be set to either on or off.

Use the following table to identify the selection method for objects.

Desired action	Selection method
Select a single object.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click on the object.</li> </ul>
Select multiple objects.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold CTRL while clicking on the desired objects.</li> <li>Draw a box from left to right to select all objects fully within the box.</li> <li>Draw a box from right to left to select all objects fully within the box, as well as the objects partially contained in the box.</li> </ul>
Select all the objects on the current layer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold CTRL+SHIFT and type <i>A</i> or use the <i>Select Current Layer</i> tool on the <i>Selection</i> toolbar. </li> </ul>
Select all the objects on the screen.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold CTRL and type <i>A</i> or use the <i>Select All</i> tool on the <i>Selection</i> toolbar. </li> </ul>
Select all the objects on one or more layers.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the <b>Edit</b> menu, choose <b>Select Special</b>, and then choose <b>Specify layers to select</b>. You can also use the <i>Specify Layers</i> tool on the <i>Selection</i> toolbar.  To select multiple layers, press and hold CTRL while selecting the layers.</li> </ul>
Set beam display for selected fixtures.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the <i>Show beams for selected fixtures</i> option. For more information on this option, refer to the "Show Details tab" on page 70.</li> </ul>

### Undo/Redo

If you discover that you have made an error while editing an object, you can easily reverse the error by using the Undo tool available in WYSIWYG. The name of the Undo tool changes based on what the last action was (for example, if the last action was a Paste operation, the Undo tool will be Undo Paste). You can use Undo to reverse the last series of actions until the tool is greyed out.

If you decide that you did not want to undo an action, use the Redo tool. Similar to the Undo tool, the name of the Redo tool changes based on what the last undo action was.

### To use the Undo tool


From the **Edit** menu, choose **Undo**.

**Tip:** You may also use the *Undo* tool on the *Edit* toolbar. 

**Result:** The last action you performed is reversed.

### To use the Redo tool

From the **Edit** menu, choose **Redo**.

**Tip:** You may also use the *Redo* tool  on the *Edit* toolbar.

**Result:** The last undo action you performed is reversed.

## Grouping/ungrouping

Grouping objects together ensures that they will always be selected as one. For example, you may want to group an object and its corresponding focus position. If you relocate the object in the drawing, the focus position will automatically follow, as will all the light beams pointing at it, saving you time and work.

### To group objects

- 1 Select the objects to be grouped.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Group**.

**Tip:** You may also use the *Group* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 

### To ungroup objects

- 1 Select the grouped objects.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Ungroup**.


**Tip:** You may also use the *Ungroup* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 

**Note:**

You can group together objects located on different layers, but the resulting group can only exist on one layer.

### To change or view the layer of a group

- 1 Select the object(s) for which you want to view the grouping.
- 2 Right-click and select **Properties**.

**Tip:** At any time, to access an object's properties, you can click on the *Properties* tool on the *Edit* toolbar. 

- 3 Click the *Group* tab.

**Result:** The layers for the objects in the group are listed with the layer for the group highlighted.

**Note:** By default, the group assumes the current layer when initially created.

- 4 To group the objects on a different layer, select the layer from the list.
- 5 Click *OK*.

## Moving


WYSIWYG supports two types of move commands: relative and absolute.

- Absolute coordinates are relative to the origin of the drawing. An absolute move is defined as moving an object from one specific point to another.
- A relative move is defined as moving an object to a destination relative to its original position.


### To move an object using the mouse

- 1 Select the objects to be moved.
- 2 Hover the cursor over the object until a grey box appears, and then click and hold.
- 3 Drag the object to the new position, and then release the mouse button to finish the move.

### To move an object using absolute values


- 1 Select the objects to be moved.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Move**.  
**Tip:** You may also use the *Move* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 
- 3 Click to set the base point for the move, or type the coordinates of the base point, and then press ENTER.  
**Note:** When you start typing, a box appears at the bottom left-hand corner of the window, showing the value that you enter.
- 4 Type the new coordinate location for the base point, and then press ENTER.

### To move an object using relative values

- 1 Select the objects to be moved.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Move**.  
**Tip:** You may also use the *Move* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 
- 3 Type @, followed by the distances to move the object, and then press ENTER. For example, to move an object 2'-0" stage right (X axis) and 3'-0" off the floor (Z axis), type the following, and then press ENTER:

**@2',0,3'**

### To move an object using distance and direction

- 1 Select the objects to be moved.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Move**.  
**Tip:** You may also use the *Move* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 
- 3 Type @, the distance that you want to move the object, the < sign, and the direction (as an angle, positive or negative) to move the object, and then press ENTER. For example, to move an object 3'-6" to the left, type the following, and then press ENTER:


**@3'6" < -180**

## Rotating

You can rotate objects around a base point to place them on angles in your drawing.




### To rotate an object

- 1 Select the object(s) to be rotated.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Rotate**.  
**Tip:** You may also use the *Rotate* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 
- 3 Click to set the center point for the rotation, or type in the coordinates of the center point, and then press ENTER.
- 4 Type the rotation angle, and then press ENTER, or drag the mouse and click to type the rotation angle. For example, to rotate an object 45 degrees, type 45, and then press ENTER.

## Mirroring

The Mirror command duplicates and reverses an object, inserting it the same distance from an axis line as the original object.

### To insert a mirrored object

- 1 Select the object(s) to be mirrored.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Mirror**.  
**Tip:** You may also use the *Mirror* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 
- 3 Click on the drawing to enter the first axis point.
- 4 Click on the drawing to set the second axis point.  
**Result:** The mirrored object is copied, reversed from the origin, based on the axis drawn.

## Modifying object shapes

You can change the shape of certain objects after they're drawn. The objects you can change include lines, risers, cameras, surfaces, and arcs. Modifying the shape changes one or more of the parameters of the object, such as its width, height, or radius.

### To modify the shape of an object


- 1 Select the object whose shape you want to modify.  
**Result:** You will notice that several white boxes will appear at the vertices of the object. These boxes are referred to as "markers."
- 2 Move your cursor to a vertex.  
**Result:** The cursor changes to an arrow.  
**Note:** If you see a grey dotted box beside your mouse cursor, the object will be moved instead of reshaped. Move your cursor so that only the arrow appears.
- 3 Left-click to "grip" one of the markers.
- 4 While holding down the left mouse button, click and drag the object until it reaches the desired shape.
- 5 Release the mouse button to set the shape.  
**Tip:** As you move the mouse, the current coordinates appear at the bottom of the screen.

## Object properties

All objects in WYSIWYG have properties. Properties are the characteristics or attributes that shape and define an object. Modifying object properties is a form of editing and is the only way to make changes to objects once they have been drawn (some exceptions exist).

### To edit object properties

- 1 Select the objects that you want to edit.
- 2 Right-click on the object, and then select **Properties**.

**Tip:** At any time, to access an object's properties, you can click on the *Properties* tool on the *Edit* toolbar. 

**Result:** The *Properties* dialog is displayed.

**Note:** All objects have general properties that affect the color and layer on which they are drawn. Objects also have properties that are particular to that type of object. For example, fixtures have unit numbers but do not have a radius. When an object is selected and its properties are displayed, a tab appears in the properties dialog box for that type of object. When you select multiple objects of different types, tabs appear for each type of object selected.

### General object properties

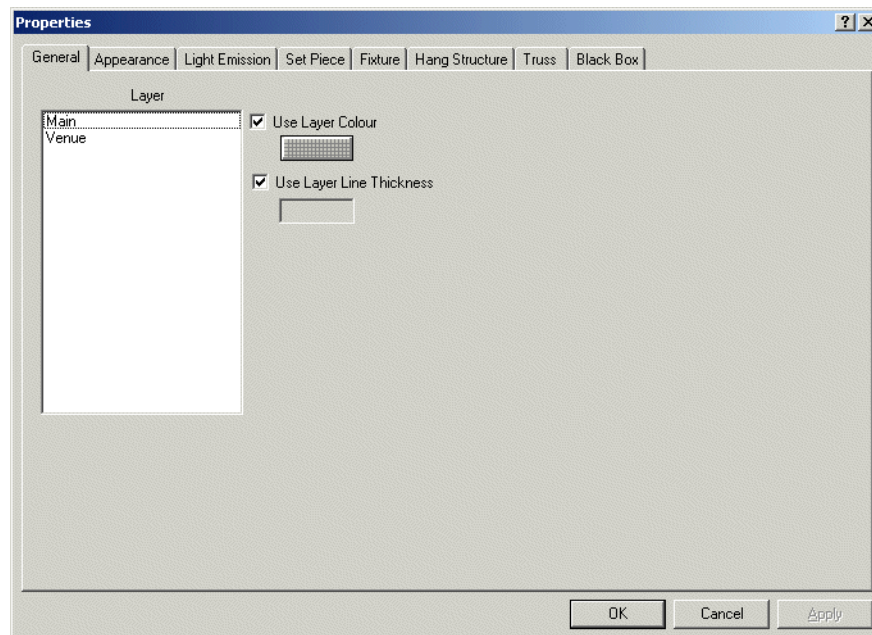
In WYSIWYG, there are three tabs that appear in the properties dialog box for every object. These three tabs are the *General*, *Appearance*, and *Light Emission* tabs.

For 3D solids and surfaces, the *Set Piece* tab also appears in the properties dialog box.

All tabs are explained here.

### General tab

Options on the *General* tab affect the layer's color and line thickness.



- *Layer* list: A list of the layers in your document is displayed. Click on a list item to change the layer on which the objects will be drawn.
- *Use Layer Color*: Select this check box to set the object's color for wireframe views to be the same as the properties of the layer on which the object resides. For more information, refer to "Layer properties" on page 158.

Click to clear the check box, and then use the color button to set a specific color for the object.

- *Use Layer Line Thickness:* Select this check box to set the object's line thickness to be the same as the properties of the layer on which the object resides. For more information, refer to "Layer properties" on page 158.

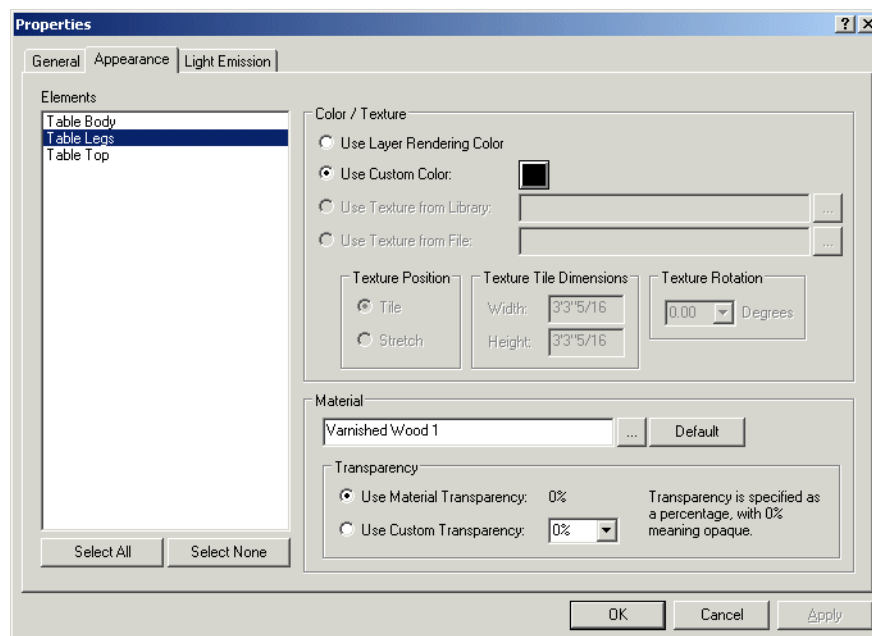
Click to clear the check box, and then type a thickness in the box below to set a specific line thickness for the object. The line weight is used to determine how thick the pen should be when printing a copy of the document.

The applied line thickness is only visible in Print Preview mode and when printed.

## Appearance tab

Use this tab to specify the appearance of the different components that make up the currently selected items. Based on the items that you have selected, the options in this tab differ.

You can use this tab to customize objects by adding different materials, colors, or textures to each element of the item. For example, if you have selected a library object, such as a podium, you can apply different materials, colors, and textures to each part of it (the body and the top portion).



**Note:** You can apply textures only to venues, surfaces, risers, and walls. You can apply transparency to everything. When customizing the selected element, you can choose between applying a custom color or a custom texture—you cannot choose both. In addition to either color or texture, you can also apply material.

Choose one of the following options:

- *Use Layer Rendering Color:* Check this option to set the object(s) color for shaded views and renderings to the same as the properties of the layer on which the object resides. For more information on layer properties, refer to "Layer properties" on page 158.
- *Use Custom Color:* Click this option and then use the color button to set a specific color for the object(s).
- *Use Texture from Library:* Click this option to apply a texture from the library to the selected object(s). In the resulting window, navigate to and select the desired texture. You can apply textures to venues, drape lines, surfaces, risers, and walls. Click the ellipsis button (...) to change the selected texture file.

- *Use Texture from File:* Click this option to apply to the selected object(s) a texture that you have created and saved in either bitmap or jpeg format. In the resulting window, navigate to and select the desired file. You can apply textures to venues, surfaces, risers, and walls. Click the ellipsis button (...) to change the selected texture file.

If you have chosen a texture option, then you can also set the properties of the texture as follows:

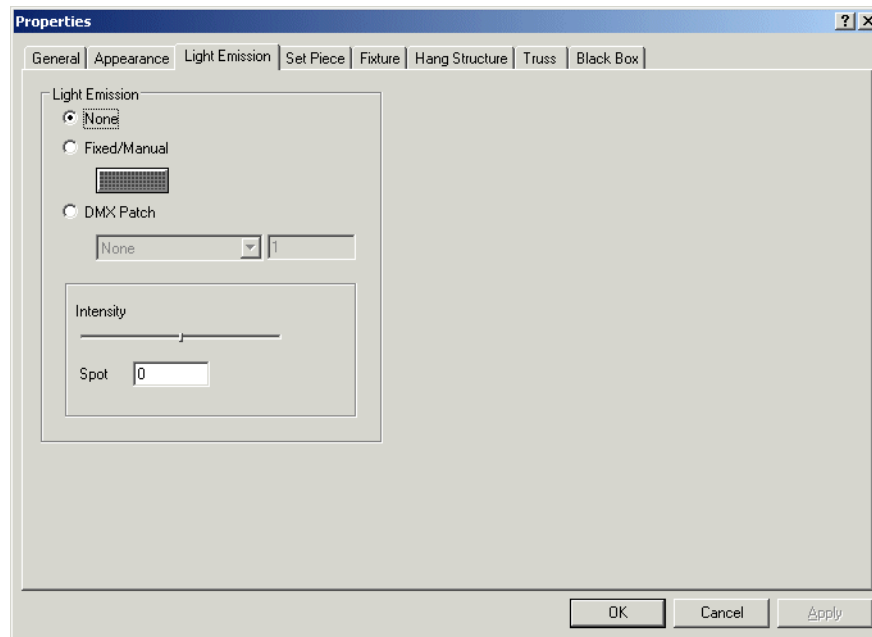
- *Tile:* Click this option button if you want to have the texture repeated over the selected element in a continuous series of squares or rectangles, and then type the size of the frame in which you want the texture to appear in the *Width* and *Height* boxes. Based on the size that you enter, WYSIWYG calculates how many times the texture is repeated (or tiled) to completely cover the selected element.
- *Stretch:* To have the texture stretch over the entire element surface, click this option button. Based on the aspect ratio and the rotation angle, WYSIWYG evaluates the surface with all of its edges and stretches the texture so the best fit is used.
- *Texture Rotation:* If the texture has text or another recognizable image in it, you might need to rotate the image to get it right-side up. Type the rotation angle in this box.

Proceed with the following properties settings:

- *Material:* Click the ellipsis button (...) to choose a material for the selected elements. Click *Default* to remove the selected material from the element and return to the default material. For more information on materials, refer to "Materials" on page 155.
- *Use Material Transparency:* All materials in WYSIWYG specify a level of transparency that varies from one material to the next. For example, glass is more transparent than brick. The transparency level of the selected material appears beside this option button (with 0% being completely opaque). If you select *Default*, the transparency level is set to 0% (opaque). To customize the transparency level, click the *Use Custom Transparency* option button, and then type the desired transparency level in the box provided (or use the arrow to select a value).
- *Use Custom Transparency:* Click this option button if you want to set a transparency level for the color or texture that you have chosen, or if you want to override the default transparency level of the selected material. Then type the desired transparency level in the box provided (or use the arrow to select a value).

## Light Emission tab

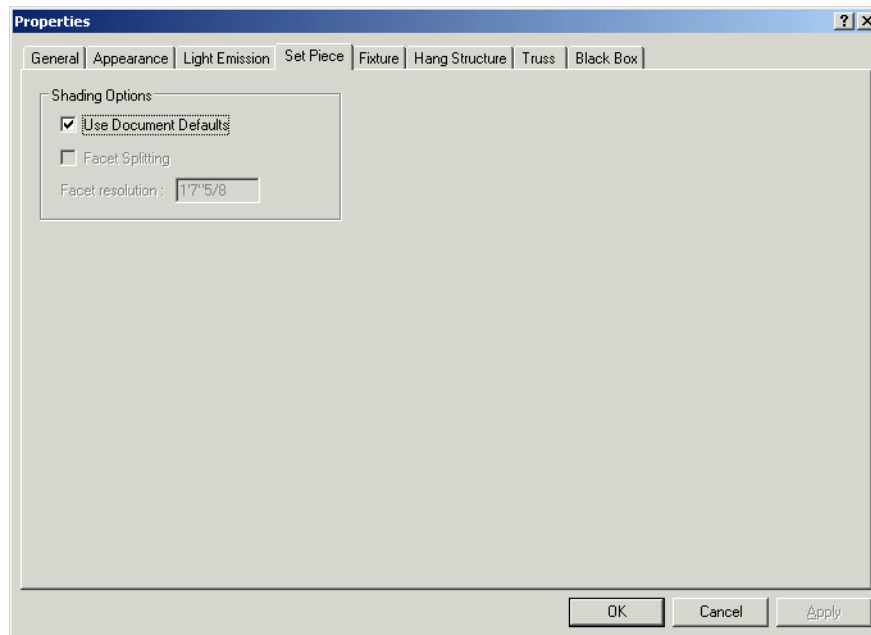
Options on the *Light Emission* tab affect the light emission properties for the selected object(s). Light emission is defined as the ability for objects to glow or emit light and can be used to simulate LEDs, lasers, neon, light boxes, projection screens, and so on.



- *None*: Sets the selected object to not have any light emitting properties.
- *Fixed/Manual*: Sets the selected object to have light emitting properties based on the intensity level set on the *Intensity* slider. Click the color box to choose the color of the light emission. Once this option is set, the object will have light emitting qualities in all shaded views and renderings in all modes (CAD, Design, Live).
- *DMX Patch*: Sets the selected object to have light emitting properties controllable by three DMX channels (red, blue, green). The object must be patched according to the WYSIWYG patch notation: *universe.DMX address*. From the drop-down box, select the patch universe of the selected object, and then type the starting DMX address in the box to the right of the drop-down box. Assign a spot number for the selected object. This is the spot number that is used by the console to call the object. Once the object is successfully patched, you can control it from your console in Live mode as you would a regular fixture. If all channels are at a level of 0, the object is not visible. As you increase the levels on the red, blue, and green channels, the object illuminates accordingly.

## Set Piece tab

Options on the *Set Piece* tab affect the facet properties for the selected surfaces or set pieces and, consequently, how they will respond during simulation in shaded views when the beam quality is set to "Light up." Facet Splitting splits surfaces or set pieces into small triangles for the purposes of smooth beam fallout.



- *Use Document Defaults*: Select this check box if you want to reference the object settings that are saved in *Show Options*. For more information on object settings, refer to the "Object Settings tab" on page 90. Deselect this option to set object-specific facet options.
- *Facet Splitting*: Select this check box to ignore the document defaults and set object-specific facet properties. Specify the size of the triangles in the *Facet Resolution* box. The more triangles you have, the more realistic the cosine distribution is. However, this also decreases the simulation speed.

## Object-specific properties

As explained above, objects also have properties that are particular to the type of object. For example, fixtures have unit numbers but do not have a radius. When an object is selected and its properties are displayed, a tab appears in the properties dialog box for that type of object. When you select multiple objects of different types, tabs appear for each type of object selected. The following objects are defined:

- points
- lines
- text labels
- dimensions
- library items

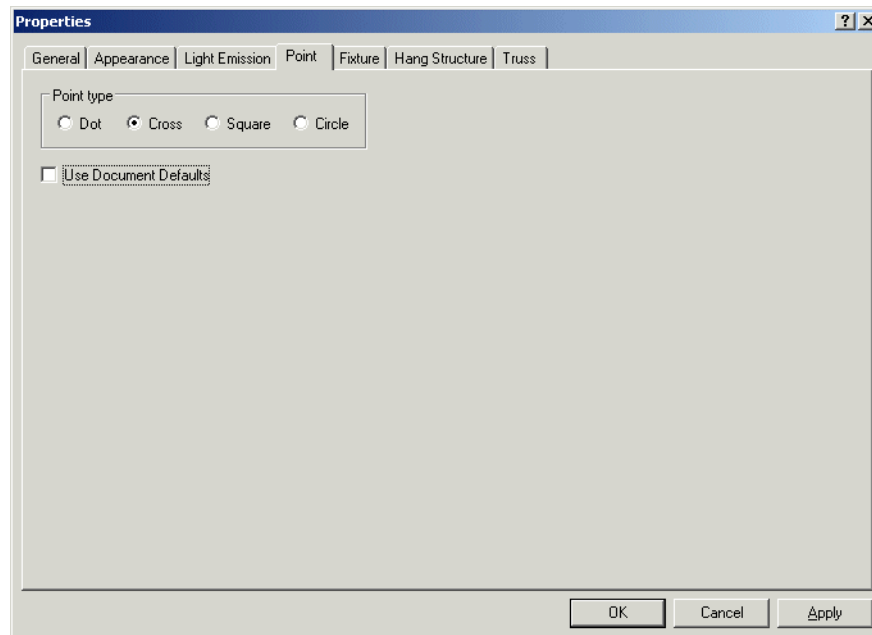
For all other types of objects (venues, circles, arcs, risers, cylinders, spheres, and cameras), refer to "Drawing objects" on page 123. In these cases, the properties dialog offers the same options that were given when the object was initially drawn.

Hanging structures properties (pipes, truss, floor mounts, and so on) are fully defined in "Hang structures" on page 171.

Fixtures and lighting-specific object properties are fully defined in "Hanging and focusing fixtures" on page 179.

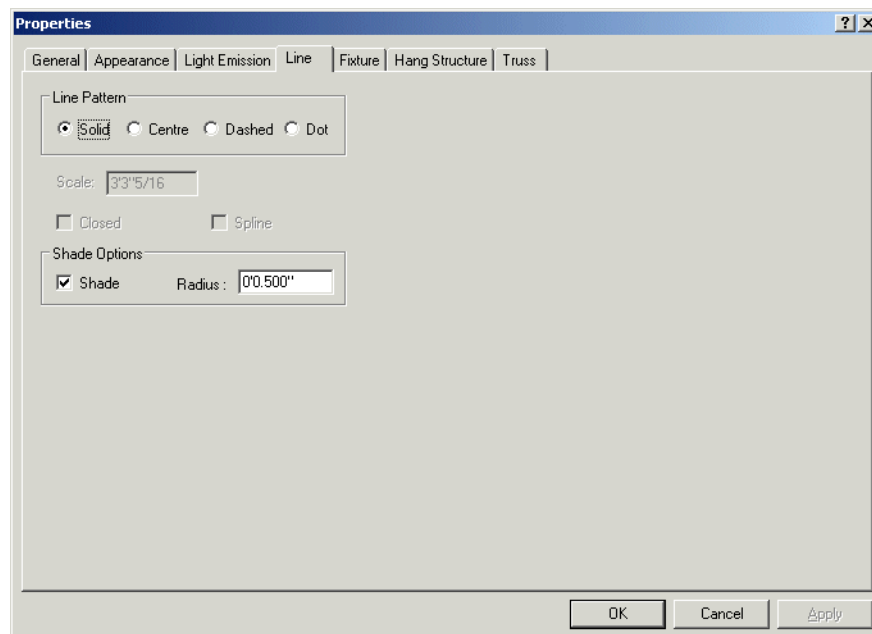
## Point tab

Options on the *Point* tab affect how the selected point is drawn. The default point type used in a document is defined on the *Object Defaults* tab of *Show Options*. To ignore the default setting, click to clear the *Use Document Defaults* check box, and then select the desired point type.



## Line tab

Options on the *Line* tab affect how the selected line is drawn.

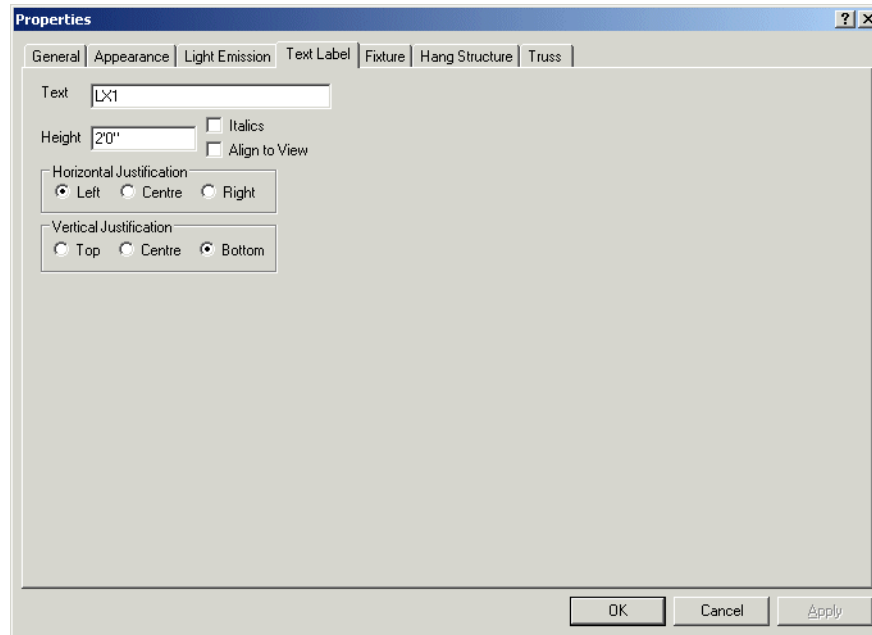


- *Line Pattern*: Choose a line pattern for the selected lines. Refer to “Drawing lines” on page 128 for an illustration of each type.
- *Scale*: Type a value in this box to change the length and spacing of dots and dashes for the selected lines. This value is applicable to center, hidden, or dot lines only.
- *Closed*: Select this check box to quickly connect the first point of a multi-segment line to the last point of that line.

- *Spline*: Select the *Spline* check box to transform a line into a spline or French curve.  
**Note:** You cannot change a line to a spline or French curve unless the selected line has more than two vertices.
- *Shade Options*: select the *Shade* check box to have the selected line(s) displayed in shaded views and renderings, and then type a value for the radius to set its thickness.

## Text label tab

Options on the *Text Label* tab affect the justification and style of the selected text labels.

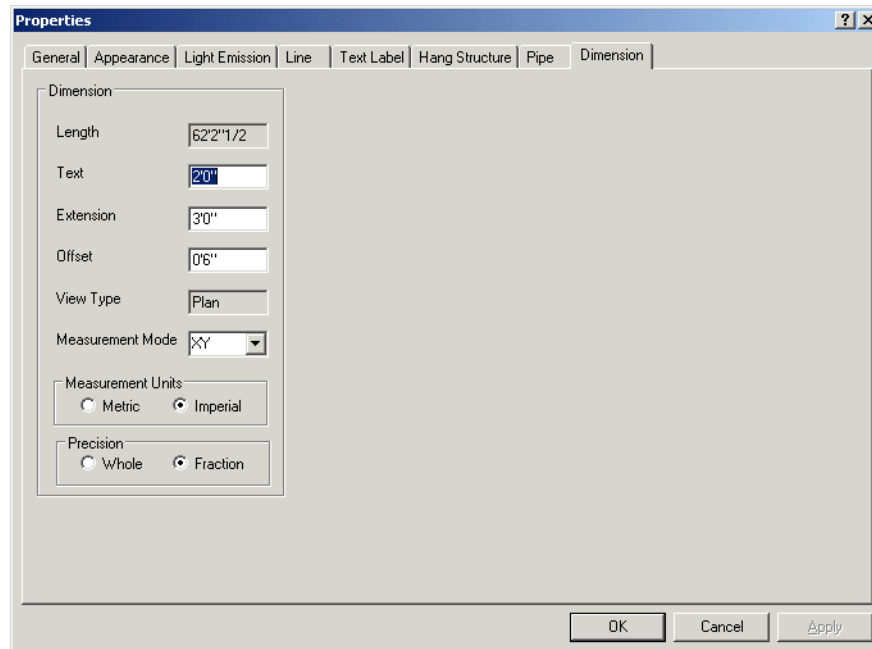


- *Text*: Type new text to change the label.
- *Height*: Type a value for the height to adjust the font size.
- *Italics*: Select this check box to make the text appear in italics.
- *Align to View*: Select this check box to set the text labels to be legible regardless of plot type.
- *Horizontal Justification*: Select the desired option button to set the text label's horizontal alignment. The available horizontal alignment options are:
  - *Left*: Places the selected text label to the left of the insertion point.
  - *Center*: Horizontally centers the selected text label on the insertion point.
  - *Right*: Places the selected text label to the right of the insertion point.
- *Vertical Justification*: Select the desired check box to set the text label's vertical alignment. The available vertical alignment options are:
  - *Top*: Places the selected text label below the insertion point.
  - *Center*: Vertically centers the selected text label on the insertion point.
  - *Bottom*: Places the selected text label above the insertion point.



## Dimension tab

Options on the *Dimension* tab affect the appearance and measurement mode of the selected dimension. To change the length of a dimension, it must be stretched in the drawing.



- **Length:** This box is not editable. It displays the actual length of the line drawn for the dimension.
- **Text:** Type a height value to change the font size of the dimension label.
- **Extension:** Type a value to change the length of the extension lines for the dimension. The extension lines mark the extremities of the dimension.
- **Offset:** Type a value to change the offset. The offset is the distance between the extension lines and the object being measured.
- **View Type:** This box is not editable. It displays the plot type in which the dimension label is visible, which is determined when the dimension is drawn.
- **Measurement Mode:** Select an option to change the measurement mode. Measurement modes are explained in "Drawing dimension lines" on page 131.
- **Measurement Units:** Select the *Imperial* or *Metric* option buttons to change the measurement units.
- **Precision:** Select the appropriate option buttons to specify measurement precision of the dimension line. Based on your choice for measurement units, you can choose to display the drawing resolution in centimeters, millimeters, whole numbers, or fractions.

## Textures

You can apply textures to different objects, such as venues, surfaces, risers, and walls. (Surfaces are created using the *Surface* tool, or by extruding a line.) The textures provided with WYSIWYG emulate various types of surfaces, such as brick or cloth. You can also use your own bitmap or jpeg files as textures, to emulate projection screens, or to cover a surface with a texture specific to your show.

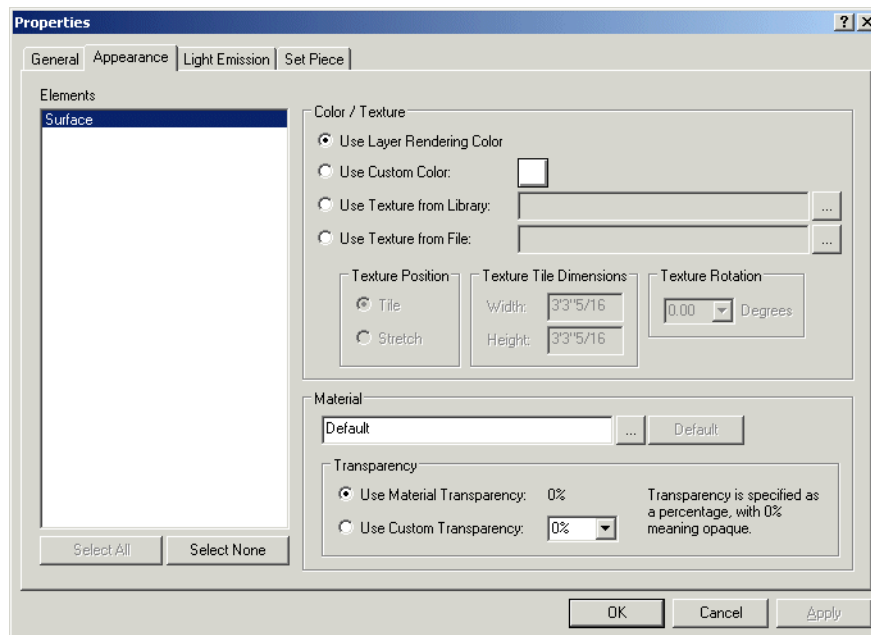
When customizing an object, you can apply *either* a color or a texture; you cannot apply both.

**Notes:**

- The availability of textures depends on the type of installation performed. Textures are installed in a “Full” installation from the CD. If you performed a “Typical” installation, the textures will not be immediately available. Run the installer again and choose *Modify* to load the texture files. If you downloaded WYSIWYG from the Cast Web site, you will need to download and install the textures file separately.
- The following procedure details how to apply a texture to a surface, but it can also be used to apply a texture to a venue, riser, or walls by right-clicking, and then selecting **Properties**.

**To apply a texture to a surface**

- 1 Right-click the surface to which you want to apply a texture, and then choose **Properties**.
- 2 Click the *Appearance* tab.

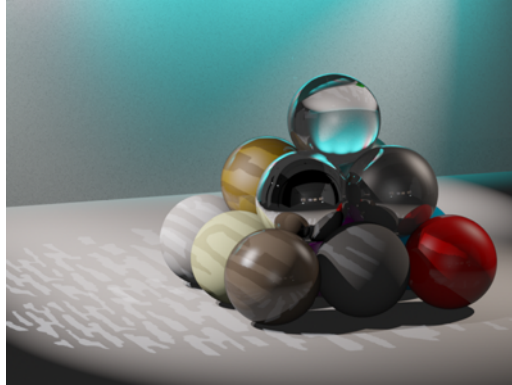


- 3 Select the texture option that you want. The options are:
  - *Use Texture from Library*: Indicates that the selected surface is a texture from the WYSIWYG library. The texture name appears in the box provided. Click the ellipsis button (...) to modify the selected surface.
  - *Use Texture from File*: The selected surface uses a texture from an external bitmap or jpeg file on your hard drive rather than one from the WYSIWYG library. Click the ellipsis button (...) to select the external file to be used as a texture.
- 4 Click *Tile* to have the texture repeated over the selected element in a continuous series of squares or rectangles, and then type the size of the frame in which you want the texture to appear in the *Width* and *Height* boxes. Based on the size that you enter, WYSIWYG calculates how many times the texture is repeated (or tiled) to completely cover the selected element.
- 5 Check *Stretch* to make the selected texture grow to cover the entire surface. Based on the aspect ratio and the rotation angle, WYSIWYG evaluates the surface with all of its edges and stretches the texture so the best fit is used. This option is not active unless you choose a texture.

- 6 If the texture has text or another recognizable image in it, you might need to rotate the image to get it right-side up. Type the rotation angle in the *Texture Rotation* box.
- 7 Click *OK*.

## Materials

Materials differ from textures in that they do not affect what the objects or surfaces will look like, but rather how they interact with light. The result of applying a material is only apparent in renderings, as shown below:

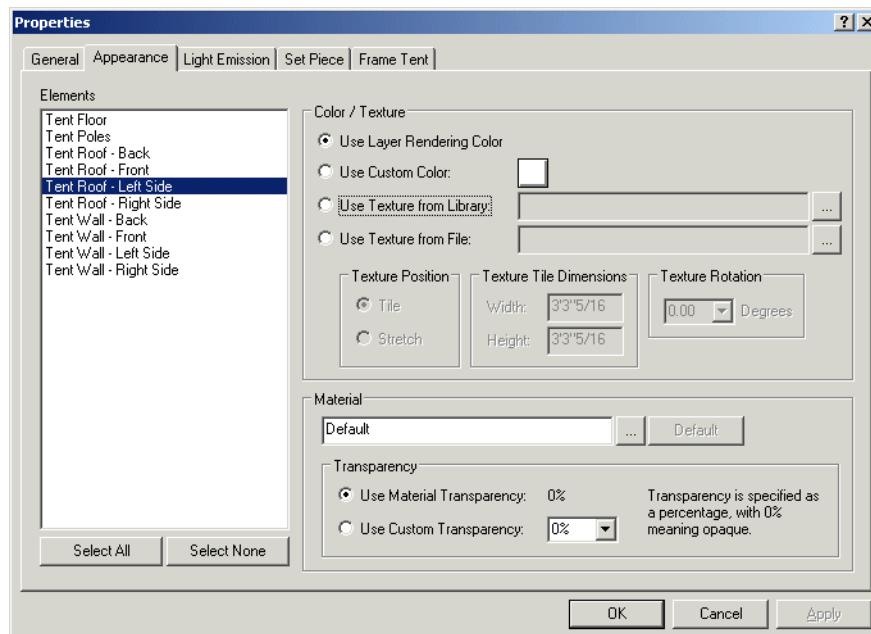


Objects and surfaces can be assigned both a texture and a material.

You apply materials using the *Appearance* tab in the *Properties* dialog box. You can choose your preferred material from the list of materials provided with WYSIWYG.

### To apply a material to an object (surface, object, or venue)

- 1 Right-click the object to which you want to apply the material, and then choose **Properties**.
- 2 Click the *Appearance* tab.



- 3 From the Elements list box, choose the elements to which you want to apply the material. To choose a custom material for the selected elements (such as metal, paper, plastic, or fabric) click the ellipsis button (...) beside the *Material* box.

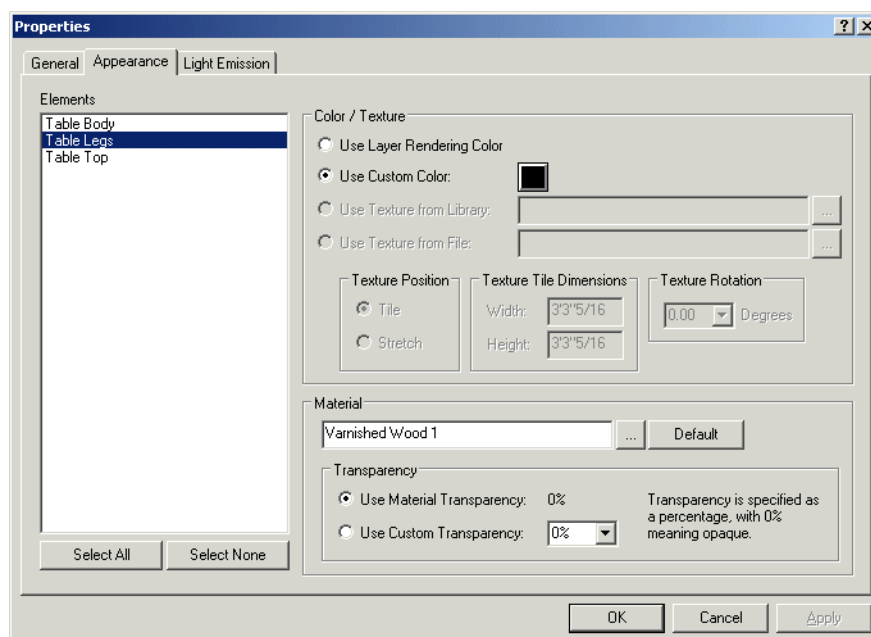
- 4 In the resulting dialog, navigate to and highlight the desired material, and then click *OK*.
- 5 Click *Apply*.
- 6 If desired, you can apply a transparency level to the selected element. Based on the settings that you have chosen for color, texture, and material, the transparency options vary as follows:
  - *Use Material Transparency*: All materials in WYSIWYG specify a level of transparency that varies from one material to the next. For example, glass is more transparent than brick. The transparency level of the selected material appears beside this option button (with 0% being completely opaque). If you select *Default*, the transparency level is set to 0% (opaque). To customize the transparency level, click the *Use Custom Transparency* option button, and then type the desired transparency level in the box provided (or use the arrow to select a value).
  - *Use Custom Transparency*: Click this option button if you want to set a transparency level for the color or texture that you have chosen, or if you want to override the default transparency level of the selected material. Then type the desired transparency level in the box provided (or use the arrow to select a value).
- 7 Click *Apply*.
- 8 Click *OK*.

## Applying a material to a Library item element

You can apply different materials to each element of Library objects using the *Appearance* tab in the *Properties* dialog box.

### To apply a material to a Library item element

- 1 Right-click the library item to which you want to apply material, and then choose **Properties**.
- 2 Click the *Appearance* tab.



- 3 Select an element from the *Element* list.

- 4 If a material was chosen previously, it is listed in the *Material* box. To choose a different material, or to choose a material for the first time, click the ellipsis (...) button, and then navigate to the new material.  
**Note:** Click *Default* to remove your selection and apply the default material to the element.
- 5 Repeat steps 4 and 5 for each element to which you want to apply materials.
- 6 When finished, click *OK*.

## Layers

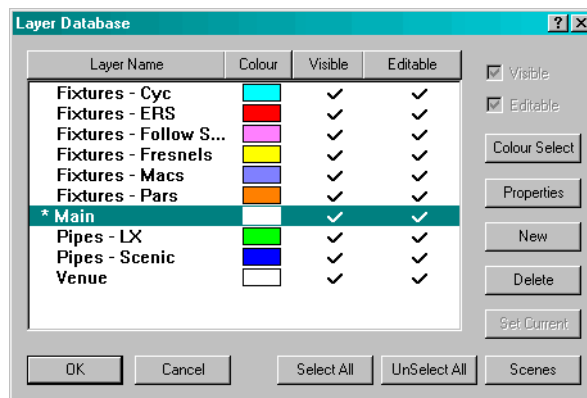
Layers are drawing aids intended to help you organize your plot. They are like transparent acetate sheets upon which you can draw. In the same way that you can view several transparent sheets at once by placing them on top of each other, you can hide and unhide layers by choosing which sheets are in the stack. The top sheet is the layer that new objects are placed on and is called the current layer.

## Creating layers

### To create new layers

- 1 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Layers**.

**Result:** The *Layer Database* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 To create a new layer, click *New*.
- 3 Type a new name for your layer (for example, "Pipes"), and then click *OK*.
- 4 To change the color of the layer, click *Color Select*. It is recommended that you select different colors for each layer so as to easily identify the layers on the plot.
- 5 To make a layer and all objects on the layer visible on the plot and in shaded views, select the *Visible* check box. If not selected, the layer is not visible and is not, therefore, editable.
- 6 To make a layer and all objects on the layer editable on the plot and in shaded views, select the *Editable* check box. If not selected, the layer is not editable and is not, therefore, visible.  
**Tip:** You might want to deselect a layer when you are finished working with it to avoid possible errors while working on other parts of the plot. This is similar to freezing in Auto CAD.
- 7 To view and modify the scenes in which a layer is included, select a layer, and then click *Scenes*. For details, see "Scenes" on page 160.
- 8 To view the properties of a layer (for example, name, color, and inventory of objects drawn on the layer), click *Properties*. For more information on these properties, refer to "Layer properties" on page 158.

- 9 Before closing the dialog, set your current layer by highlighting it, and then clicking *Set Current*.

The current layer is the layer that you are working on at the moment – any object that you draw is placed on this layer and assumes the layer's default properties when it is drawn. An asterisk (\*) appears beside the name of the current layer.

- 10 Click *OK* to close the Layers dialog.

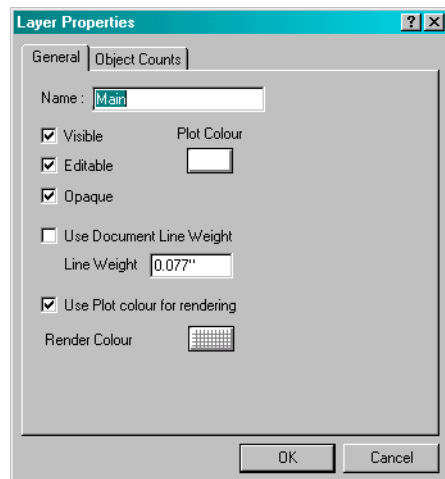
**Note:** To quickly sort the layers within the layer database, click the appropriate column heading in the *Layer Database* dialog box. For example, click the *Editable* column heading to sort the layers by edit setting; that is, those layers marked as editable appear at the top of the list in alphabetical order.

## Layer properties

All layers have properties that describe the appearance of the layer. Objects that reside on the layer inherit the properties of the layer by default unless you decide to override the values. For more information on overriding object properties, refer to “General object properties” on page 146.

### General tab

Options on the *General* tab affect the selected layer's color, line thickness, and visibility.



- **Visible:** Select this check box to make the selected layer visible on the plot and in shaded views. If you modify the property here, it is changed on the Layer Database dialog box.
- **Editable:** select this check box to make the selected layer editable on the plot and in shaded views. Modifying the property here changes it on the Layer Database dialog box.
- **Opaque:** Click this check box if you want all objects on the current layer to be opaque (beams of light will not pass through any of these objects).
- **Plot Color:** Sets the layer's color for wireframe views. This is the color that is used for objects that reside on the selected layer when printing the document, unless otherwise modified. To modify the object color, refer to the “General tab” on page 146.
- **Use Document Line Weight:** Select this check box to set the layer's line thickness to the default value specified in Show Options. For more information, refer to the “Show Options window” on page 89.

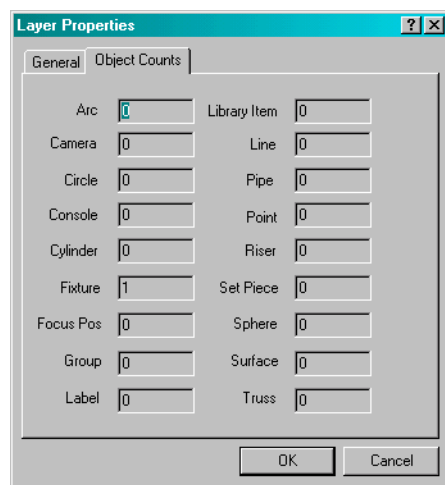
Click to clear the check box, and then type a thickness in the *Line Weight* box below to set a specific line thickness for the layer. The value is used as the line thickness for all the objects that reside on the specified layer, unless otherwise modified. To modify the line thickness of an object, refer to the “General tab” on page 146.

**Note:** The applied line thickness is only visible in Print Preview mode and when printed.

- *Use Plot Color for rendering:* select this check box to set the layer’s color for shaded views and renderings to the same as the plot color specified above. Click to clear the check box and use the color button to set a specific color for the selected layer. The chosen color is used for all objects that reside on the selected layer, unless otherwise modified. To modify the object color for rendering, refer to the “General tab” on page 146.

## Object Counts tab

Entries on the *Object Counts* tab indicate the total number of objects that reside on the selected layer. Values on this tab are read-only.




## Deleting layers

You must remove all objects from a layer before you can delete it. You cannot delete the current layer.

### To delete a layer

- 1 Select all the objects on the layer that you want to delete, and then delete them or move them to another layer.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Layers**.  
**Result:** The *Layer Database* dialog box is displayed.
- 3 Ensure that the layer you want to delete is not set as the current layer.
- 4 Select the layer in the list.
- 5 Click *Delete*.
- 6 Click *OK*.

### Tips:

- The *Layer* toolbar gives you quick access to all existing layers and the Layers database. Click the tool on the left end of the *Layer* toolbar to access the Layer database. 

- Use the layer list in the *Layer* toolbar to quickly set the current layer. If objects are selected when you do this, those objects are moved to the selected current layer.

## Scenes

Scenes are collections of layers used to organize the plot. A scene may contain one or more layers.

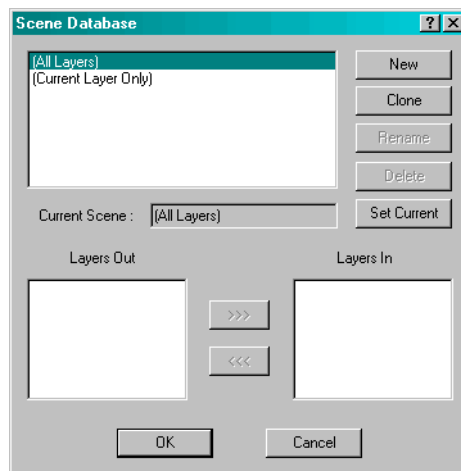
Hiding a scene hides all the layers assigned to that scene. By organizing the layers and scenes in your plot, you can quickly perform set changes.

By default WYSIWYG creates two initial scenes: *Current Layer Only* and *All Layers*. You cannot delete these scenes.

### To create a new scene

- 1 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Scenes**.

**Result:** The *Scene Database* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Click *New* to create a new scene.
  - 3 Type the name of the new scene, and then click *OK*.
- Result:** The layers associated with the scene are displayed in the *Layers Out* and *Layers In* boxes.
- 4 Select the layers that you want to include in the scene, and then use the arrow buttons to move the layers accordingly. The layers that are available in a scene can also be set in the *Layers* dialog box. For more information, refer to “Layers” on page 157.

#### Notes:

- To copy a scene, select the scene, and then click *Clone*. The copied scene has the same properties of the selected scene.
- To rename a scene, select the scene, and then click *Rename*.
- To remove a scene from the scene database, select the scene, and then click *Delete*.


- 5 Click *Set Current* to activate your new scene.

**Note:** If the current layer is not in the current scene, you will not be able to add any objects.

- 6 Click *OK*.



**Tip:**

The *Scene* toolbar gives you quick access to all existing scenes and the Scenes database. Click the tool on the left end of the *Scene* toolbar to access the Scene database. 

**Note:** In order for fixtures to be displayed in scenes, both the layer on which the fixtures reside and the layer on which the respective hang structure resides (if different) must be included in the scene. You cannot display fixtures without their hang structures.



## Break

The Break command allows you to break an object into smaller components.

### To break an arc into arcs

- 1 Select the arc that you want to break.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Arc into arcs**.
- 3 Type the number of desired break arcs, and then click *OK*.  
**Result:** The arc is broken equally into the number of arcs specified.

### To break an arc into lines

- 1 Select the arc that you want to break.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Arc into lines**.
- 3 Type the number of desired break lines, and then click *OK*.  
**Result:** The arc is broken equally into the number of lines specified.

### To break a circle into arcs

- 1 Select the circle that you want to break.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Circles into arcs**.
- 3 Type the number of desired break arcs, and then click *OK*.  
**Result:** The circle is broken equally into the number of arcs specified.

### To break a circle into lines

- 1 Select the circle that you want to break.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Circles into lines**.
- 3 Type the number of desired break lines, and then click *OK*.  
**Result:** The circle is broken equally into the number of lines specified.

### To break a line at vertices

- 1 Select the multi-segment line that you want to break.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Lines At Vertices**.  
**Result:** The continuous multi-segment line is broken at the segment intersections. Each vertex is now an independent line.

### To break a line into lines

- 1 Select the line or multi-segment line that you want to break.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Lines into lines**.

- 3 Type the number of desired break lines, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The line is broken equally into the number of lines specified.

### To break a set piece into faces


- 1 Select the 3D solid that you want to break (for example, a riser).
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Set pieces into faces**.

**Result:** Each face of the solid becomes an independent surface.

### To break a set piece into lines

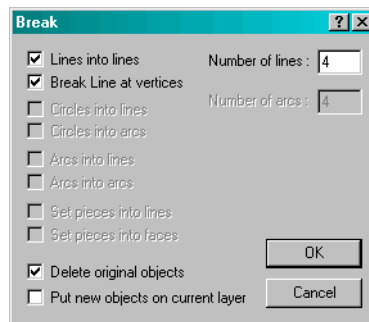
- 1 Select the 3D solid that you want to break, a riser for example.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Set pieces into lines**.

**Result:** Each segment of the solid becomes an independent line. The 3D solid is no longer a solid.

**Note:** Alternatively, to perform a break command, you can use the *Break* tool on the *Tools* toolbar.  This is the same as choosing **Specify** from the **Break** sub-menu.

### To break using the Specify dialog

- 1 Select the object that you want to break.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Break**, and then choose **Specify**.



- 3 Select the desired break type from the available options by selecting the appropriate check boxes. Based on the object that you have selected to break, these options vary.
- 4 In the boxes at the top right corner, specify the number of break lines or arcs if appropriate.
- 5 Select the *Delete original objects* check box if you want the original object to be replaced with the new "broken" ones.
- 6 Select the *Put new objects on current layer* check box if you want the new "broken" objects to be placed on the current layer, as opposed to the selected object's original layer, if different.
- 7 Click *OK*.

## Convert

The Convert command turns an object into a different kind of object. For example, you can convert a circle into a circular surface, you can convert lines into pipes, and vice versa, and you can convert points into focus positions, and vice versa.

### To convert a circle into an arc

- 1 Select the circle that you want to convert.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Convert**, and then choose **Circles into arcs**.

**Result:** The circle is converted into a 360-degree arc. The marker points can be dragged out to open the arc, if desired.

### To convert a circle into a surface

- 1 Select the circle that you want to convert.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Convert**, and then choose **Circles into surfaces**.
- 3 Type the number of segments to make up the contour of the surface. You cannot type the number 1. The higher the number, the more circular the surface.

**Result:** The circle is converted into a surface.

**Notes:**

- If you type 2, the circle is converted into a linear surface.
- If you type 3, the circle is converted into a triangular surface.
- If you type 4, the circle is converted to a square surface.
- This pattern will repeat for each increment in the number of segments.

### To convert a line into a pipe

- 1 Select the line that you want to convert.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Convert**, and then choose **Lines into pipes**.

**Result:** The line is converted into a pipe, assuming all of the properties and characteristics of a pipe. You can name it and hang fixtures on it.

### To convert a pipe into a line

- 1 Select the pipe you want to convert.  
**Note:** There cannot be any fixtures hanging on the selected pipe. You must unhang or delete any fixtures before attempting to convert the pipe into a line.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Convert**, and then choose **Pipes into lines**.

**Result:** The pipe is converted into a line.

### To convert a focus position into a point


- 1 Select the focus position that you want to convert.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Convert**, and then choose **Focus positions into points**.

**Result:** The focus position is converted into a point. Any fixtures that were focused to the initial focus position retain their orientation, but lose the association with that point.

## To convert a point into a focus position

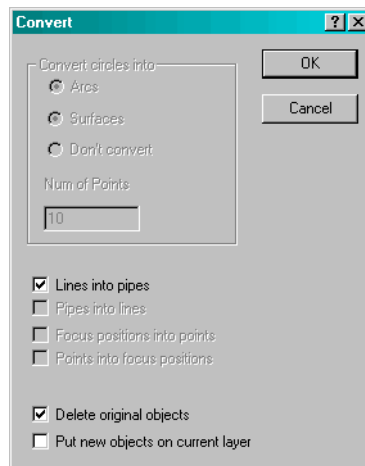
- 1 Select the point that you want to convert.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Convert**, and then choose **Points into focus positions**.

**Result:** The points are converted into a focus position, and are automatically called "Label." To change the name for the newly created focus position, refer to "Focus position properties" on page 183.

**Note:** Alternatively, to perform a convert command, you can use the *Convert* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 

## To convert using the Specify dialog

- 1 Select the object that you want to convert.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Convert**, and then choose **Specify**.



- 3 Select the desired conversion type from the available options by selecting the appropriate option buttons. Select the *Don't convert* option button if you do not want to convert the circle into either an arc or a surface.

**Note:** For circles, select the *Arcs* or *Surfaces* option button, and then type the number of points as discussed above.

- 4 Select the *Delete original objects* check box if you want the original object to be replaced with the new "converted" one.
- 5 Select the *Put new objects on current layer* check box if you want the new "converted" objects to be placed on the current layer, as opposed to the selected object's original layer, if different.
- 6 Click *OK*.

## Divide

The divide command separates objects into equal parts. The initial object is left intact (if not deleted), and the parts are identified by newly created objects, such as points or lines.

## To divide an arc into lines

- 1 Select the arc that you want to divide.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Divide**, and then choose **Arcs into lines**.

- 3 Type the number of lines desired.

**Result:** The arc is divided into equal parts by the number of lines specified. The lines are automatically drawn from the center of the arc outward, resulting in something similar to a pie chart.

### To divide an arc into points

- 1 Select the arc that you want to divide.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Divide**, and then choose **Arcs into points**.
- 3 Type the number of points desired.

**Result:** The arc is divided into equal parts by the number of points specified. The points are placed along the arc at the calculated interval.

### To divide a circle into lines

- 1 Select the circle that you want to divide.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Divide**, and then choose **Circles into lines**.
- 3 Type the number of lines desired.

**Result:** The circle is divided into equal parts by the number of lines specified. The lines are automatically drawn from the center of the circle outward, resulting in something similar to a pie chart.

### To divide a circle into points

- 1 Select the circle that you want to divide.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Divide**, and then choose **Circles into points**.
- 3 Type the number of points desired.

**Result:** The circle is divided into equal parts by the number of points specified. The points are placed along the circle at the calculated interval.

### To divide a cylinder into circles

- 1 Select the cylinder that you want to divide.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Divide**, and then choose **Cylinders into circles**.
- 3 Type the number of circles desired.

**Result:** The cylinder is divided into equal parts by the number of circles specified. The circles are stacked within the cylinder at the calculated interval.

### To divide a cylinder into lines

- 1 Select the cylinder that you want to divide.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Divide**, and then choose **Cylinder into lines**.
- 3 Type the number of lines desired.

**Result:** The cylinder is divided into equal parts by the number of lines specified. The lines follow the same pattern as the cylinder's existing segments, but at the calculated interval.

### To divide a line into points

- 1 Select the line that you want to divide.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Divide**, and then choose **Lines into points**.

- 3 Type the number of points desired.

**Result:** The line is divided into equal parts by the number of points specified. The points are placed along the line at the calculated interval.


**Note:** Lines may also be divided by adding vertices. In this case, no new objects are created; the line is simply divided by marker points.

### To add a vertex to a line

- 1 Select the line to be divided.
- 2 Right-click on the line segment that you want to divide, and then choose **Add Vertex**.

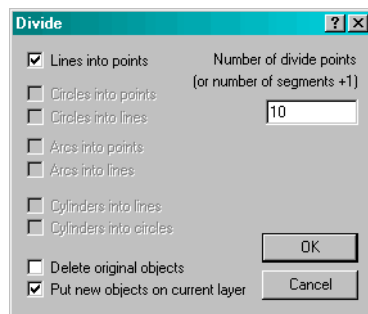
**Result:** The original line remains intact. A marker point is placed at the midpoint of the line.

#### Notes:

- This procedure can be repeated for vertices within a line. The marker points will always be placed at the mid point of the vertices.
- Marker points can be dragged out to re-shape the line.
- If the line is deleted, the marker points are also deleted.
- Alternatively, to perform a divide command, you can use the *Divide* tool on the *Tools* toolbar.  This is the same as choosing *Specify* from the *Divide* sub-menu.

### To divide using the Specify dialog

- 1 Select the object you want to divide.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Divide**, and then choose **Specify**.



- 3 Select the desired divide type from the available options by selecting the appropriate check boxes.
- 4 Select the *Delete original objects* check box if you want the original object to be deleted when the new ones are created.
- 5 Select the *Put new objects on current layer* check box if you want the new objects to be placed on the current layer, as opposed to the selected object's original layer if different.
- 6 Click *OK*.

## Extrude

The Extrude command allows you to turn a 2D object like a line or an arc into a surface, or turn a surface into an extruded surface or 3D solid.

### To extrude a line

- 1 Select the line that you want to extrude.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Extrude**, and then choose **Lines into Surfaces**.
- 3 Type the distance to extrude the line. The extrusion will occur parallel to the axis of the missing coordinate. For example, a line shown in plan view will extrude vertically. For splines, you must specify the number of segments for the new surface in the *# of Points* box.

### To extrude an arc

- 1 Select the arc that you want to extrude.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Extrude**, and then choose **Arcs into Surfaces**.
- 3 Type the distance to extrude the line. The extrusion will occur parallel to the axis of the missing coordinate. For example, an arc shown in plan view will extrude vertically.
- 4 Type the number of segments for the new surface. You cannot type the number 1. The higher the number, the more circular the surface.

### To extrude a surface into an extruded surface

- 1 Select the surface that you want to extrude.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Extrude**, and then choose **Surface into Extruded Surface**.
- 3 Type the distance to extrude the surface. The extrusion occurs parallel to the axis of the missing coordinate. For example, a surface shown in plan view will extrude vertically.

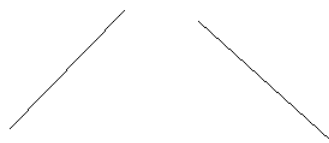
#### Tip:

You can also use the *Extrude* tool on the *Tools* toolbar.



## Fillet

The Fillet command joins two lines sharing the same end point or two apparent intersecting lines with an arc. A fillet radius must be specified to achieve the desired fillet angle.



Apparent Intersecting Lines



Resulting Fillet with a 5' radius



Lines sharing End Point



Resulting Fillet with a 5' radius



### To set the fillet radius

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Fillet**, and then choose **Specify fillet radius**.
- 2 Type a radius measurement for the resulting fillet.

**Note:** All subsequent fillet commands will follow this value until it is modified again.

### To fillet two lines

- 1 Select the lines to be filleted.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Fillet**, and then choose **Fillet**.

**Result:** The lines are joined by an arc based on the value set for the fillet radius.

#### Notes:

1. You must set a fillet radius before you can perform this command.
2. If the fillet radius is 0, the lines will be extended and joined at their intersection. If they are already intersecting, nothing occurs.

## Array

The Array command is used to make multiple copies of an object distributed evenly along a line or arc.

### To perform a linear array

- 1 Select the object that you want to array.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Array**, and then choose **Array Linear**.
- 3 Click a point on your drawing or type in coordinates to specify the direction and interval for the linear array. For example, to place a copy of the selected object every 5' at a 45-degree angle, type the following, and then press ENTER:

**@5'<45**

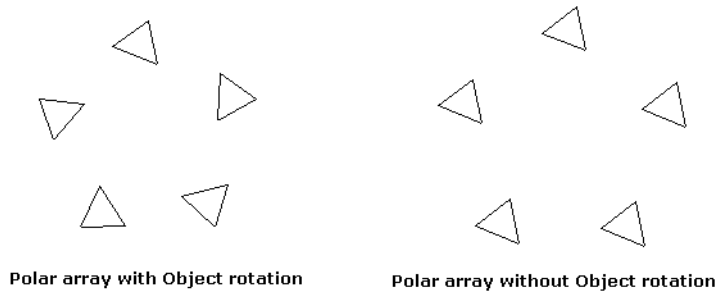
- 4 In the dialog box that opens, type the total number of copies desired (this includes the original object). Adjust the value for the interval, if required.
- 5 Click *OK*.

**Note:** The interval is defined as the distance between the copied objects.

### To perform a polar array

- 1 Select the object that you want to array.
- 2 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Array**, and then choose **Array Polar**.
- 3 Click a point that will represent the center of the circle around which the objects will be arrayed.
- 4 In the dialog box that opens, type the total number of copies desired (this includes the original object).
- 5 Specify the total angle in degrees to fill with copied objects.

- 6 Select the *Rotate object* check box if you want the copied objects to rotate as they are pasted around the center of the circular array, as shown below:



- 7 Click *OK*.

## Distance

The distance tool allows you to measure the distance and angle from one point to another.

### To measure a distance

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Distance**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Distance* tool on the *Tools* toolbar.



- 2 Pick the starting point for the measurement.
- 3 Pick the end point of the measurement.

**Result:** The length and angle of the specified trajectory is displayed in the bottom left corner of the status bar.

**Tip:** When selecting the starting and end points for the measurement use the snap tools for precision.



# Hang structures

## Introduction

Hang structures are a very important part of creating a lighting plot in WYSIWYG. All fixtures must be placed on a hang structure - either a pipe or a truss. This includes fixtures on set mounts or floor mounts. Hang structures are not only a place to hang fixtures, but also a means to organize your paperwork. Some general facts about hang structures:

- Hang structures can be pipes or trusses. Pipes are drawn, trusses are placed from the truss library. There are many different types of truss pieces in the truss library, including box, triangle, and curved. Truss includes floor mount, boom, and ladder positions as well.
- AutoUnit will assign and adjust unit numbers for fixtures on a pipe as you add, move, or delete them.
- Hang structures can have the same name, even if they are not connected. For example, you can use this feature for set mounts, where you have many small pipes attached to the same piece of scenery.

## Position Manager

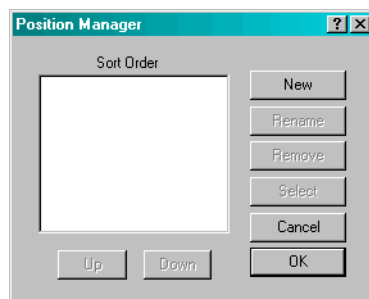
The Position Manager organizes all the available position names in your show document. It also sets the sort order of your positions. You can use the Position Manager to change the sort order of the position names, which is important for printed paperwork like instrument schedules and other reports that use the Position field. The order of position names is also used for general sorting in the Data view and the order in which positions appear in the Flight Case.

The Position Manager is accessible from the *Properties* window of a hang structure and from the **Positions** command in the **Edit** menu.

### To view and edit entries in the Position Manager

- 1 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Positions**.

**Note:** The ellipsis button [...] on the Hang Structure page of a pipe's or truss' properties will also open the Position Manager.

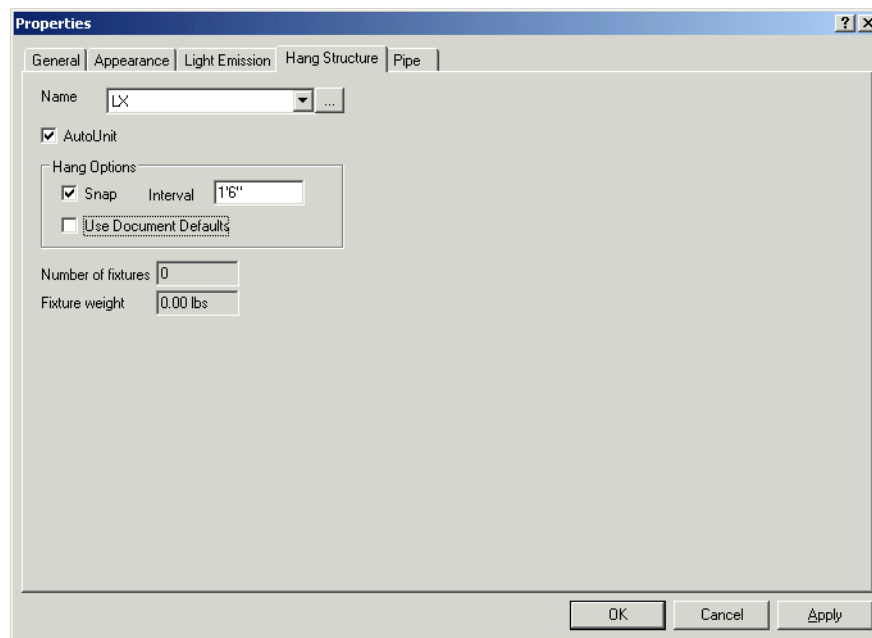


- 2 Click *New*.
- 3 Type the name of the new position, and then click *OK*.
- 4 To modify the name of a position, select the position, and then click *Rename*.
- 5 Type the new name, and then click *OK*.

- 6 To remove a position name, select the name, and then click *Remove*. Removing the position name does not delete the hang structure. Rather the hang structure removes its association with the position name.
- 7 To reorder the position names in the list, select the name of the position you want to move. Click *Up* or *Down* to move the name in the list.
- 8 If you are in a plot view and want to determine what a particular position references, click *Select*. If the plot view is open (and the correct layers are marked editable), the hang structures that use that position name are selected. To select more than one position, press CTRL, and then click the position.
- 9 Click *OK* to close the Position Manager.

## Hang structure properties

Options on the *Hang Structure* tab affect the properties of the selected hang structure(s).



- **Name:** Select a new name for the hang structure from the *Name* drop-down list. Click the ellipsis (...) button to open the Position Manager and create new names.
- **AutoUnit:** Select this check box to automatically assign a number to each fixture that you hang. Fixtures are automatically renumbered if you add a new fixture into the middle of a row of fixtures. This option is available for pipes only and does not apply to truss.
- **Snap:** Select this check box to hang fixtures on the pipe at a certain interval, as specified in the *Interval* box.
- **Interval:** Type the distance between fixtures in this box. This option is used for pipe snaps.
- **Use Document Defaults:** Select this check box to use the interval for pipe snap as defined on the *Object settings* tab in *Show Options*. For more information on this tab, refer to "Object Settings tab" on page 90.
- **Number of fixtures:** The number of fixtures on the hang structure.
- **Fixture weight:** The total weight of fixtures on the hang structure. The weight measurement accounts for fixture weight only and does not consider cable or other safety ratings.

## Drawing pipes

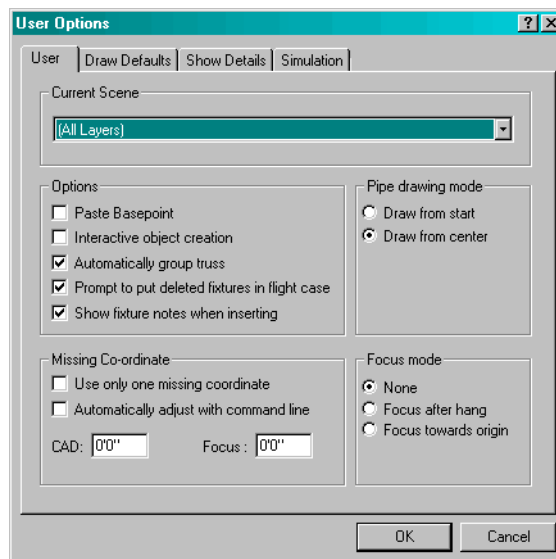
Pipes are single member hang structures. Pipes can be set to be drawn from the center or from the start.

The first pipe drawing mode, Draw from Start, requires pipes to be drawn by specifying the start point and the end point (from one extremity of the pipe to the other).

The second pipe drawing mode, Draw from Center, requires that the pipe be drawn by specifying the center point and one end point or extremity of the pipe. Although it is only necessary to enter all points when drawing in interactive mode, the pipe drawing mode will affect the insertion point of the pipe when drawing using the pipe dialog box. The drawing mode will also affect how the fixtures are hung when using pipe snap, how the fixture offset distance is measured, and how pipe tape prints are labelled.

### To set the pipe drawing mode

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **User Options**.
- 2 Click the *User* tab.



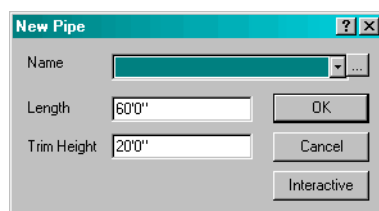
- 3 In the *Pipe Drawing Mode* section, select *Draw from Center* or *Draw from Start*.

#### Tips:

- You can change the default setting for a pipe in mid-command by right-clicking and choosing the drawing mode for that pipe just before inserting it into the drawing.
- You can change the pipe mode for a specific pipe at any time in the pipe's properties. For more information, refer to "Pipe properties" on page 175.


### To draw a pipe

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Pipe**.



- 2 In the *New Pipe* dialog box, find the name of the pipe. If you need to create the name of the pipe, click the ellipsis button [...] to open the Position Manager. Click *New*, and then type the name of the pipe.
- 3 In the *Length* box, type the length of the pipe, if different from the default. The default value is 60'0".
- 4 In the *Trim Height* box, type the desired trim height for the pipe. The default value is 20'0".  
**Note:** Pipes ignore the missing coordinate setting when drawn using this method.
- 5 Click *OK*.

**Tip:**

You may also use the *Pipe* tool on the *Draw* toolbar. 

**To draw a pipe from center in interactive mode**

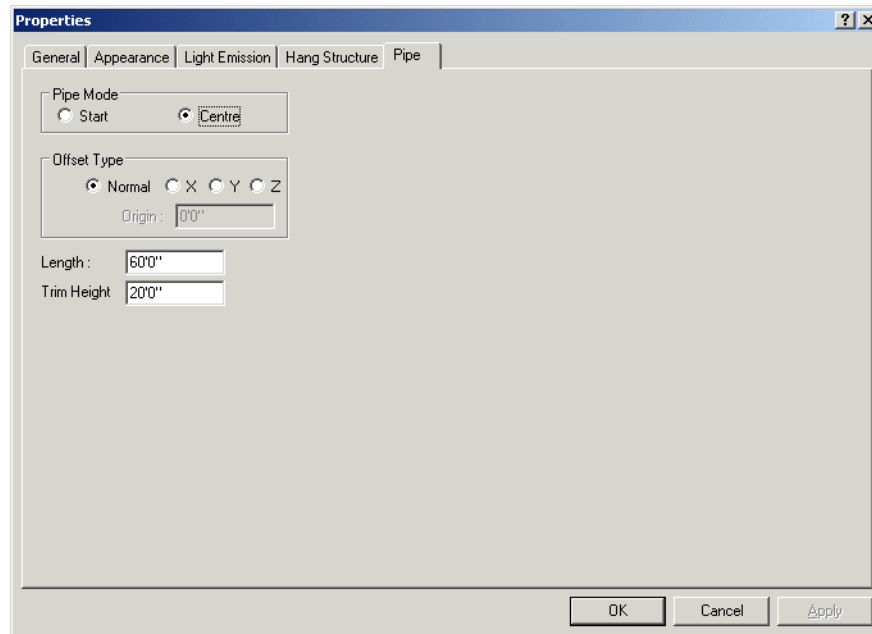
- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Pipe**.
- 2 Set the height of the pipe that you are about to draw by pressing the TAB key, and then entering a value for the missing coordinate, if applicable.
- 3 Click to place the center point of the pipe.
- 4 Drag it to the proper length, and then click to place the end point of the pipe. Notice that the pipe extends in both directions - mirrored at center.
- 5 Right-click on the pipe that you have just drawn, and then click **Properties**.
- 6 Click the *Hang Structure* tab.
- 7 From the Name drop-down list, select the name for this new pipe. If the name is not already in the list, use the *Position Manager* [...] to enter the new name.
- 8 Repeat to draw more pipes.
- 9 Click *OK*.

**To draw a pipe from start in interactive mode**

- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Pipe**.
- 2 Set the height of the pipe that you are about to draw by pressing the TAB key, and then entering a value for the missing coordinate, if applicable.
- 3 Click to place the starting point of the pipe.
- 4 Drag it to the proper length, and then click to place the end point of the pipe. Notice that the pipe extends in one direction.
- 5 Right-click on the pipe that you have just drawn, and then click **Properties**.
- 6 Click the *Hang Structure* tab.
- 7 From the Name drop-down list, select the name for this new pipe. If the name is not already in the list, use the *Position Manager* [...] to enter the new name.
- 8 Repeat to draw more pipes.
- 9 Click *OK*.

## Pipe properties

Options on the *Pipe* tab affect the mode, offset, and dimensions of a pipe.



- *Pipe mode:* Select the pipe mode for the specific pipe. The available modes are:
  - *Start.* If enabled, pipes are drawn from one end to the other. When start mode is used, offset is measured from the beginning of the pipe in a positive direction.
  - *Center.* If enabled, pipes are drawn from the center out to both ends at the same time. When center mode is used, offset values are either positive or negative, measured from the center of the pipe.
- *Offset Type:* Offset is a fixture property that measures where a fixture is hung on a pipe. The value depends on the pipe mode selected.

Pipes can also base the Offset on a specified coordinate. In this case, a fixture's offset value is calculated as the distance on the specified axis from the specified coordinate. This is handy if you have many small pipes grouped together to form one hang position, for example the Balcony Rail. If this is the case, choose all the pipes' properties to have their Offset based about X=0. Fixtures on the Balcony Rail will then report where they are relative to the theatre, rather than the beginning of the pipe.

This offset methodology can be extended to box booms as well. For example, a boom in the first box (which is 10' above the deck) can be drawn as a vertical pipe and have its offset to be based about Z=10'. A fixture's offset will then tell you how high (from the bottom of the box) to hang it.

In WYSIWYG, set the offset mode that you want to use. The choices are:

- *Normal*, which indicates that the offset is based on the pipe mode.
- *X*, *Y*, and *Z*, which calculates the offset based on the specified coordinate.

If you have selected an X, Y, or Z offset type, then you must specify a coordinate on the axis from which offset values will be calculated.

- *Length:* Type new text to change the length of the selected pipe.
- *Trim Height:* Type new text to change the trim height. If the pipe is vertical, this value determines the lowest Z value of the pipe.

## Hanging truss

Truss is a hang structure with multiple hanging members. Truss differs from pipes in that it is built from library objects instead of being drawn. WYSIWYG contains an extensive library of different truss types from many different manufacturers. The truss library also contains floor mounts, booms, and ladders.

### To hang truss

- 1 Open the Library Browser, and then click the *Truss* tool.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Truss* tool on the *Draw* toolbar to place truss.



- 2 Navigate through the library to find the type of truss you want to use.
- 3 Double-click on the truss name.

**Result:** A piece of truss attaches to the cursor.

- 4 Click on the drawing to place the first piece of truss.
- 5 Continue placing pieces of truss as needed.

**Note:** To change the truss type, return to the library, double-click on the name of the new desired truss type and continue placing truss pieces as normal.

**Tip:** You can also use Truss shortcuts.

- 6 Right-click and choose **Finish Placing Truss**.
- 7 Right-click on the truss that you have just inserted, and then click **Properties**.
- 8 Click the *Hang Structure* tab.
- 9 From the Name drop-down list, select the name for this new truss. If the name is not already in the list, use the *Position Manager* [...] to enter the new name.
- 10 Click *OK*.

### To insert a shortcut for truss objects

Refer to “To create a new shortcut” on page 54.

## Using Assembly snap with truss

Assembly snap assemble truss pieces together as you insert them, ensuring proper structural assembly. This is especially useful for long or complex structures made up of many individual pieces of truss.

As with all snap functions (discussed in “Snaps” on page 107), you can select Assembly snap in mid-command or as a running snap type.

### To select Assembly snap as a running snap type


Enable Assembly snap before inserting truss to assemble and group all subsequently inserted pieces of truss.

### To select Assembly snap in mid-command

Enable Assembly snap after inserting the first piece of truss to assemble selectively. Assembly snap disengages after you place the next piece of truss, assembling only the first truss (or group of trusses) with the second piece.




## To use Assembly snap

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, click **Snap**, and then choose **Assembly**.  
**Tip:** You can also click the *Assembly* snap tool on the *CAD Options* toolbar. 
- 2 Insert truss as described above. To snap truss pieces together, hover the cursor over the end of the piece of truss to which you want to attach the next piece and it will automatically snap into position.
- 3 Click to insert the piece of truss in the drawing.



## Rotating truss

When inserting truss pieces in your drawing, you can rotate them to the desired position by using the Rotate tool and the rotate hot keys (X and Z). By enabling Assembly snap, pieces of truss that you drag into the drawing will snap to connect to the first piece of truss that you inserted, ensuring proper structural assembly.

### Notes:

- When inserting and rotating the first piece of truss in a series, you must use the Rotate tool () to rotate it to the desired position; you cannot use the hot keys (X and Z) to rotate the first piece of truss.
- Once you have placed and rotated the first piece of truss, and have enabled Assembly snap, you can then drag new pieces of truss into the drawing, and use the hot keys (X and Z) to rotate them to the same position as the first piece of truss.

## To rotate truss

- 1 Open the Library Browser, and then click the *Truss* tool.   
**Tip:** You can also click the *Truss* tool on the *Draw* toolbar to place truss.
- 2 Navigate through the library to find the type of truss that you want to use.
- 3 Double-click the object name.  
**Result:** A piece of truss attaches to the cursor.
- 4 Click on the drawing to place the first piece of truss.
- 5 Right-click and choose **Finish Placing Truss**.
- 6 Select the piece of truss, and then click the Rotate tool ()
- 7 Click in the drawing to choose the base point around which you want to rotate the truss.
- 8 Type the rotational value in degrees (for example, 45 degrees), and then press *Enter*.  
**Note:** As you type, the value appears in the box in the lower left-hand corner of the window.
- 9 When you are finished rotating the truss, click to insert it.
- 10 From the **Tools** menu, click **Snap**, and then choose **Assembly**.
- 11 To place the second piece of truss, click the truss name in the library, and then, without clicking in the drawing, drag the new piece of truss near one of the ends of an existing piece of truss until it snaps into position.  
**Note:** To change the truss type, return to the library, double-click on the name of the new desired truss type and continue placing truss pieces.

- 12** To rotate this second piece of truss, click *X* for a clockwise rotation and *Z* for a counter-clockwise direction until it aligns with the first piece of truss.

**Tip:** You can also click *S* to rotate the truss from one end to the other, based on its center point.
- 13** When you are satisfied with its position, click to insert the truss into the drawing.




# Hanging and focusing fixtures

## Introduction

Fixtures are objects on the plot and appear in 3D in shaded views. When you insert a fixture into the plot, it must be hung from a hang structure. WYSIWYG has an extensive library of fixtures to choose from. Inserting fixtures into your drawing is as easy as pointing and clicking. You can insert fixtures directly from the Library Browser, or you can create shortcuts to your favorite fixtures.

## Hanging fixtures

### To insert fixtures

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Browse Library**.
- 2 Click the *Fixture* tool at the bottom of the browser. 
- 3 In the tree menu that is now visible, click on the "+" sign beside *Manufacturer* to select fixtures by manufacturer name, *Type* to select by fixture type, or *All* to see all the fixtures in alphabetical order.
- 4 Double-click on the name of the fixture that you want to insert.  
**Result:** A fixture with default settings for this type attaches to the cursor.  
**Note:** You can change the fixture frame size using the Add Accessory option. For more information on adding accessories, refer to "To insert an accessory" on page 202.
- 5 To change the properties of the fixture before inserting, right-click on the fixture name, and then click **Property**.  
**Result:** A dialog box opens with a shaded view of the fixture on the left and an image of its symbol on the right. Use the *Photometrics* tab to change the lamp and lens settings for the fixture, if applicable. For more information on the Photometrics tab, refer to "Photometrics tab" on page 190. Click *Insert* and the dialog will close.
- 6 Move the mouse over a hang structure, and then click to place the fixture. Continue placing this type of fixture by clicking on the other hang structures as desired.
- 7 Finish placing this fixture type by right-clicking, and then choosing **Finish placing fixtures** from the resulting menu.
- 8 To place other fixture types, repeat the above steps for each type.

### To replace fixtures

- 1 Select the fixtures that you want to replace.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Replace Fixture**.
- 3 Select the new type of fixture from the Fixture Selection dialog box.
- 4 Click *Insert*.

**Result:** All the fixtures that you selected in step 1 are replaced with the fixture type chosen in step 3. Some fixture attributes may be modified as a result of the replacement.

## Custom fixtures

### To create a custom fixture

You must create custom fixtures on the WYSIWYG welcome screen with all files closed. If you are currently working on a document, save and close it.

**Note:** You do not have to complete all fields. Fill in as much information as you can. You cannot delete or edit custom fixtures once saved.

- 1 On the WYSIWYG welcome screen, from the **Options** menu, choose **Create new conventional**.

**Result:** The *Fixture Wizard* opens.

- 2 Select the type of fixture that you want to create.
- 3 In the *Name* box, type a name for the new fixture.
- 4 Click *Next*.
- 5 From the *Type* drop-down list, select the circuit type. The default, REGDIM, is a regular dimmer.
- 6 Click *Next*.
- 7 Add or modify the path.

**Note:** The path is the location in the library where the fixture will be stored. A fixture assigned to the path "Custom/Fresnels" would be available in the custom section of the Fixture library in a sub-category named FRESNELS.

- 8 Click *Next*.
- 9 Select the lamp base and default lamp for this fixture.
- 10 Click *Next*.
- 11 Specify the lens system for the fixture.
- 12 Click *Next*.
- 13 Type a value in degrees for the beam angle for this fixture.
- 14 Type a value in degrees for the field angle for this fixture.
- 15 Click *Next*.
- 16 Select the color frame slot size.
- 17 Click *Next*.
- 18 From the symbol library, select a 2D symbol for this fixture.
- 19 Click *Next*.
- 20 From the shape library, select a 3D symbol for this fixture.

**Note:** A 10" parcan is shown beside the selected shape in the viewing pane to offer a relative size measurement.

- 21 Click *Next*.
- 22 Type the manufacturer, weight, and any other information.
- 23 Click *Next*.
- 24 Type your name
- 25 Click *Finish*.

## Pipe snap

Pipe snap places fixtures on a pipe at a specific interval. Pipe snap does not work for truss or other hang structures. It allows you to specify a pre-determined distance between fixtures.

As with all snap functions (refer to “Snaps” on page 107 for more information about snap tools), you can select Pipe snap in mid-command or as a running snap type.

### To select Pipe snap as a running snap type

Enable Pipe snap before inserting fixtures to hang fixtures equidistantly.

### To select Pipe snap mid-command

Enable Pipe snap after inserting the first fixture to enforce the interval selectively. Pipe snap will disengage after you place the next fixture.

### To use pipe snap

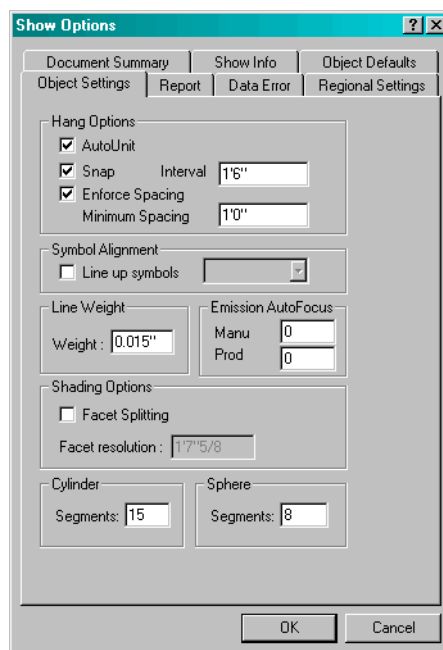
- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Snap**, and then choose **Pipe Snap**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Pipe snap* tool on the *CAD Options* toolbar. 

- 2 Insert fixtures as described above. With pipe snap active, the fixtures are automatically hung at the pre-defined interval.

### To set the snap interval

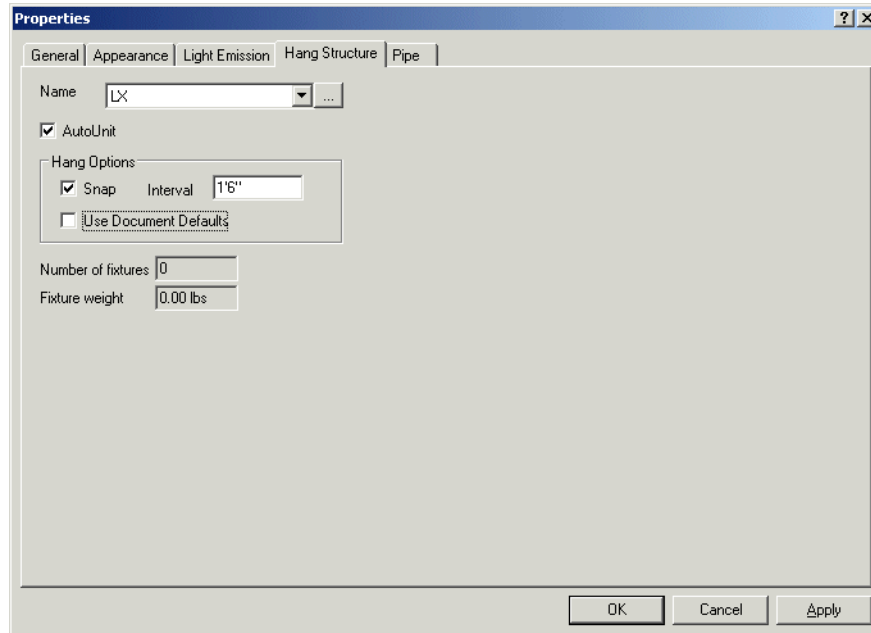
- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **Show Options**.
- 2 Click the *Object Settings* tab.



- 3 Select the *Snap* check box if it is unchecked, and then type the new value in the *Interval* box.
- 4 Click *OK*.

### To set an interval for a specific pipe

- 1 Right-click the pipe.
- 2 Click **Properties**.
- 3 Click the *Hang Structure* tab.



- 4 Click to clear the *Use Document Defaults* check box.
- 5 Select the *Snap* check box.
- 6 In the *Interval* box, type a new distance. This is the measurement between fixture insertion points.
- 7 Click *OK*.

## Focusing fixtures

You can focus the fixtures in your plot in three ways:

- You can click and drag the beam of a selected fixture.
- You can type the pan, tilt, and spin values for the fixture in its *Properties* box.
- You can assign a focus position to the fixture.

### To focus using click and drag

- 1 Select the fixture that you want to focus.

**Result:** The fixture's beam appears.

- 2 Click on the beam and drag it to its new position. When you are done, release the mouse button.

#### Tips:

- You can also right-click the fixture, and then click **Focus** to drag the beam without having to hold the mouse button down continuously. Click to finish when the beam is focused where you want it.
- Use the missing focus coordinate to set a value on the inactive axis.


## Drawing focus positions

Focus positions are

- points at which fixtures can be focused.
- objects in the drawing.

### To insert a focus position

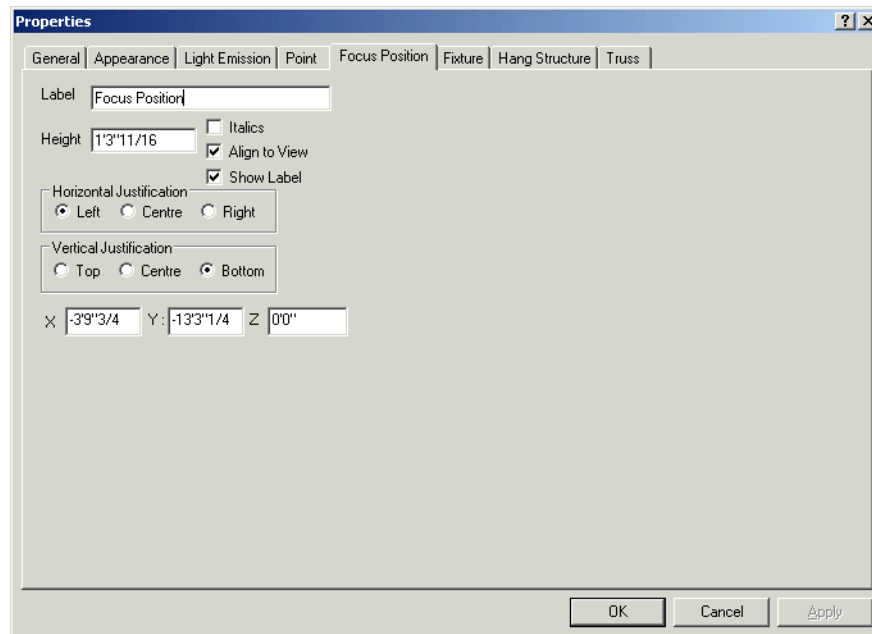
- 1 From the **Draw** menu, choose **Focus Position**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Focus Position* tool on the *Draw* toolbar to place focus positions. 

- 2 Type a label for the focus position.
- 3 Move the mouse so that the intersection of the crosshairs is placed where you want the focus position.
- 4 Click to insert the focus position.
- 5 Repeat these steps to insert all focus positions.

## Focus position properties

Options on the *Focus Position* tab affect the alignment and style of the selected focus position.




You can modify the justification, height, and presentation of a focus position. For a description of the justification and presentation-type properties, refer to the "Text label tab" on page 152.

Focus positions are unique in that you can adjust the focus position coordinates without actually moving the focus position on the drawing. The X,Y, and Z coordinate is the coordinate of the location in 3D space where the focus position is to lie.

## Quick focus

Quick focus assigns a focus position or Pan and Tilt angle to the selected fixture.

### To assign a focus position

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Quick Focus**.  
**Tip:** You can also click the *Quick Focus* tool on the *Tools* toolbar. 
- 2 Click on the desired focus position. This will set that position as the destination for the next fixtures you select.
- 3 Click on each fixture that you want focused to that position.
- 4 Right-click anywhere in the wireframe view, and then choose **Finish Quick Focus**.

### To assign a pan and tilt angle

**Note:** For more information on Quick Tools, see “Quick tools” on page 191.

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Quick Tools**.
- 2 In the dialog box that opens, check *Focus*.
- 3 Type values in degrees for *Pan* and *Tilt*.
- 4 Click *OK*.
- 5 Click on each fixture you want oriented to the specified angle.
- 6 Right-click anywhere in the wireframe view, and then choose **Finish Quick Tools**.

### To focus from the fixture's properties

- 1 Select the fixtures that you want to focus.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Properties**.
- 3 Click the *Fixture* tab.
- 4 Type values in degrees for *Pan*, *Tilt*, and *Spin*, or select a focus position from the drop-down list.

**Note:** For the definitions of these attributes, please refer to “Data fields” on page 216.

- 5 Click *OK*.

## Fixture-specific focusing tools

All fixture-specific focusing tools such as shuttering, spotting/flooding, and lens changes are available through the selected fixture's properties on the *Shutter*, *Lens*, and *Fixture* pages respectively.

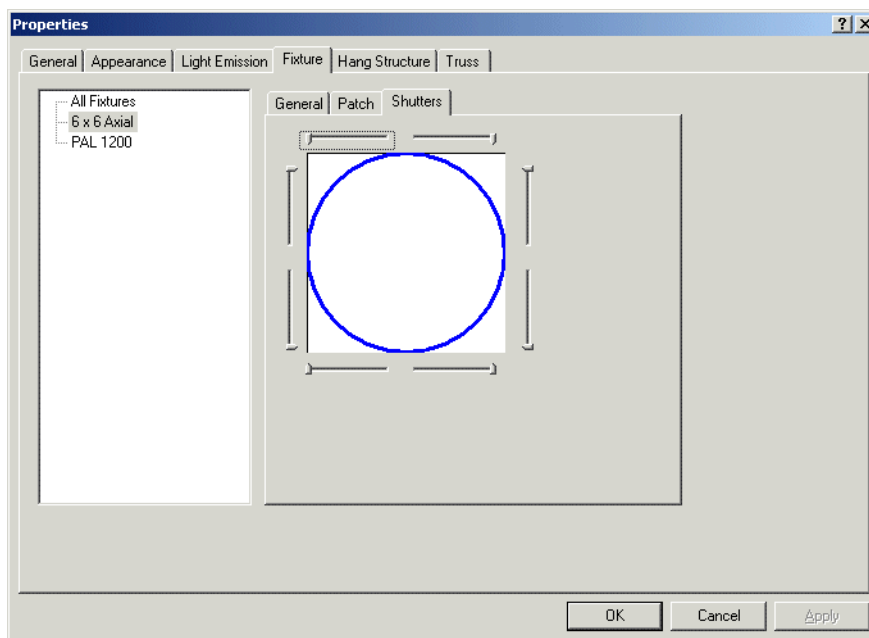
### To make shutter cuts

- 1 Select the fixtures for which you want to make shutter cuts.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Properties**.
- 3 Click the *Fixture* tab.



- 4 Click the *Shutters* tab.

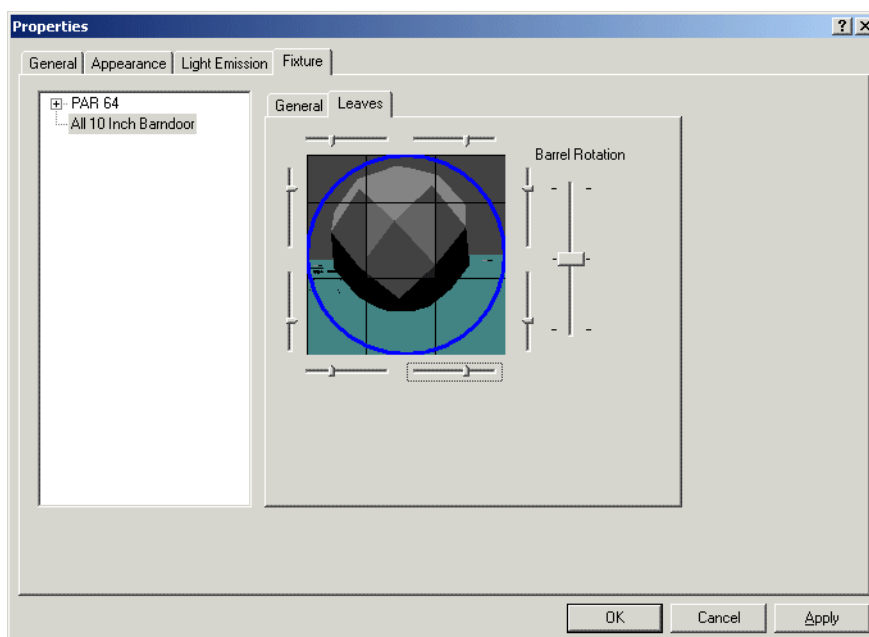
**Note:** The POV image is not available when a fixture is zoomable or articulable.



- 5 Use the sliders along the top, bottom, and the sides to move the shutter blades.  
**Result:** The cuts that you make are visible in the drawing.
- 6 Click *OK* when finished.

### To adjust the leaves of barndoors

- 1 Select the fixture with barndoors for which you want to adjust the leaves.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Properties**.
- 3 Click the *Fixture* tab.
- 4 From the list on the left side, highlight the barndoor.
- 5 Click the *Leaves* tab.



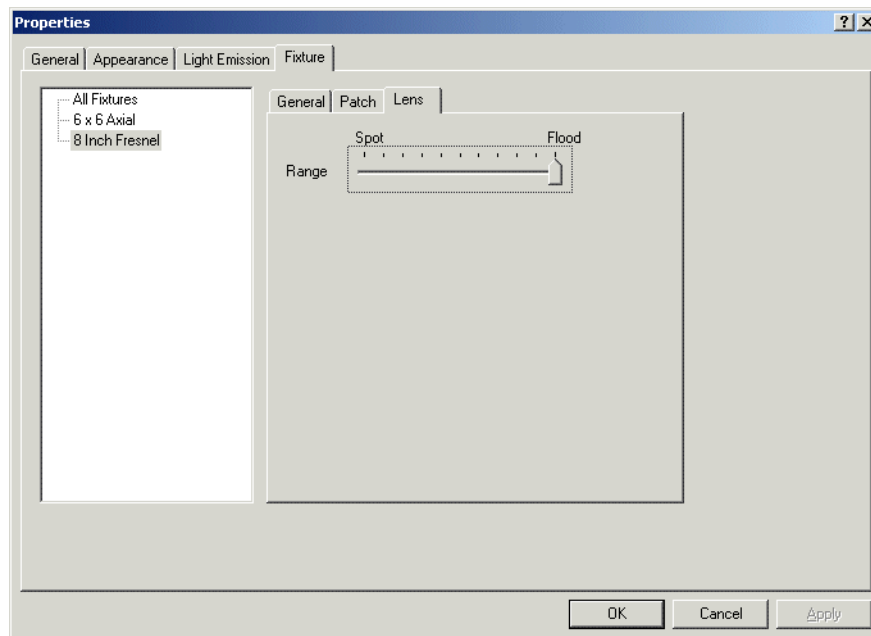
- 6 Use the sliders along the top, bottom, and sides to move the barndoor leaves. You will notice that the movement of the leaves is restricted to left, right, up, and down.

**Result:** The cuts are visible in the drawing.

- 7 Click *OK* when finished.

### To adjust flood or spot

- 1 Select the fixture(s) for which you want to adjust the flood or spot.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Properties**.
- 3 Click the *Fixture* tab.
- 4 Click the *Lens* tab.

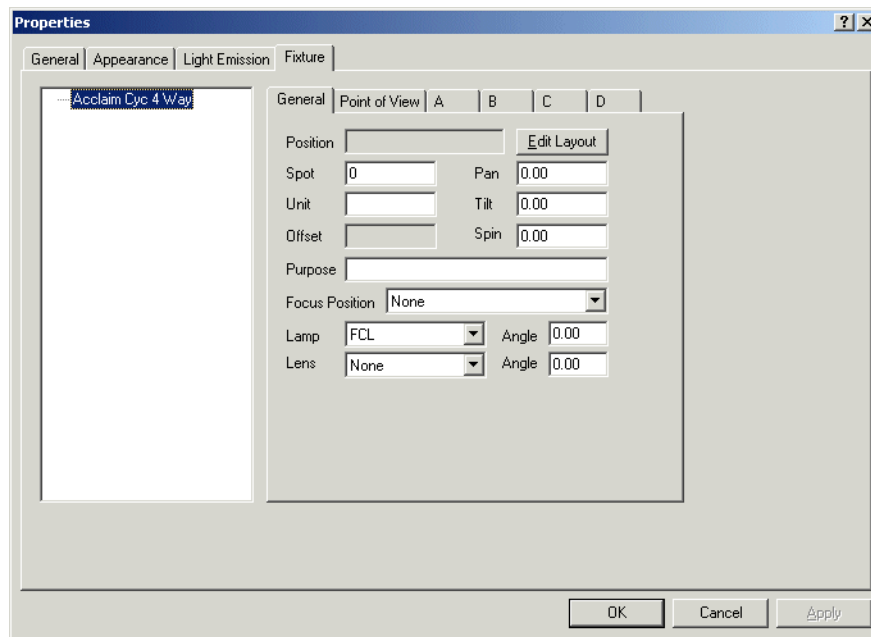


- 5 Use the slider to adjust the spot and flood.
- 6 Click *OK* when finished.

### To focus a Par

- 1 Select the PAR fixture that you want to focus.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Properties**.

- 3 Click the *Fixture* tab.



- 4 From the *Lamp* drop-down list, select the lamp that you want to focus.
- 5 In the *Angle* box for the lamp, type the rotation angle. The angle determines the degree of rotation of the lamp within the housing.
- 6 Click *OK* when finished.

## Fixture properties

All fixtures in WYSIWYG have properties. Properties are the characteristics or attributes that shape and define a fixture.

Fixture properties can be divided into two categories:

- the properties that are common to all fixtures in WYSIWYG
- the properties that you define by assigning attributes to a fixture

Fixtures also have many non-visible attributes, some of which can be edited. These include Alias (found as Type in the reports), Cost, Weight, and AutoFocus codes.

### General fixture properties

In WYSIWYG there are five tabs that appear in the properties dialog box for every fixture:

- Appearance
- Version
- Data
- Options
- Photometric

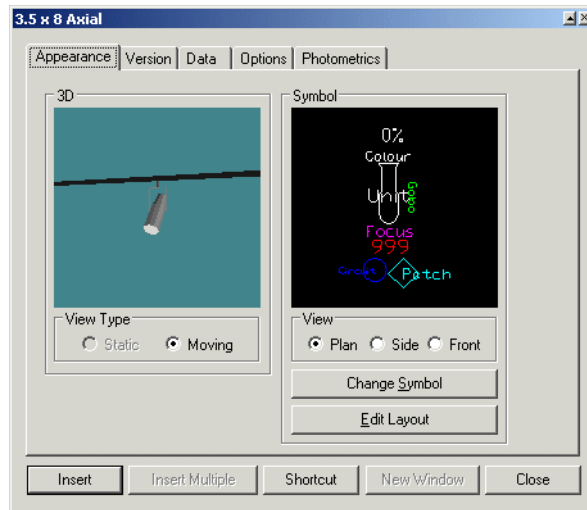
Each tab is explained in this section.

## To view fixture properties that are common to all fixtures

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Browse Library**.
- 2 Click the *Fixture* tool at the bottom of the browser.
- 3 Browse to the desired fixture and highlight it.
- 4 Right-click on the fixture name, and then click **Property**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Property* tool at the top of the Library Browser.

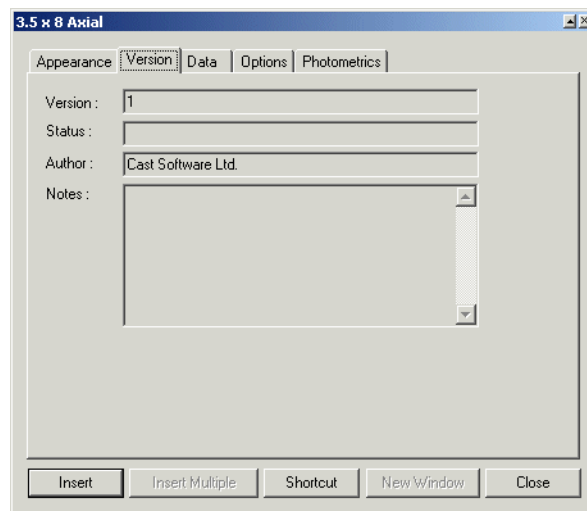
**Result:** The properties window for the selected fixture appears, with a shaded view and an image of the fixture's symbol displayed in the two boxes. An example is shown below:



- 5 Click *Plan*, *Side*, or *Front* to view the fixture in the different views. The Wireframe view changes based on the view type that you select.

### Version tab

Options on the *Version* tab are read-only and are set when the fixture is added to the library.



- *Version*: The release number of the fixture.
- *Status*: The status of the fixture. For example, *Beta* indicates that the fixture is completed but not verified. *Release* indicates the fixture has been tested and is accurate. A status of *Preliminary* indicates that the fixture has minimal functionality.
- *Author*: The individual or company who constructed the fixture.

- *Notes:* Any notes that pertain to the fixture. The notes usually pertain to the simulation capabilities in WYSIWYG.

## Data tab

Options on the *Data* tab are read-only and are set when the fixture is added to the library. This does not, however, include the *Alias*, *Weight*, *Cost*, *Manu*, and *Prod* fields. To modify these fields, access the desired fixture's properties from the Library Browser.

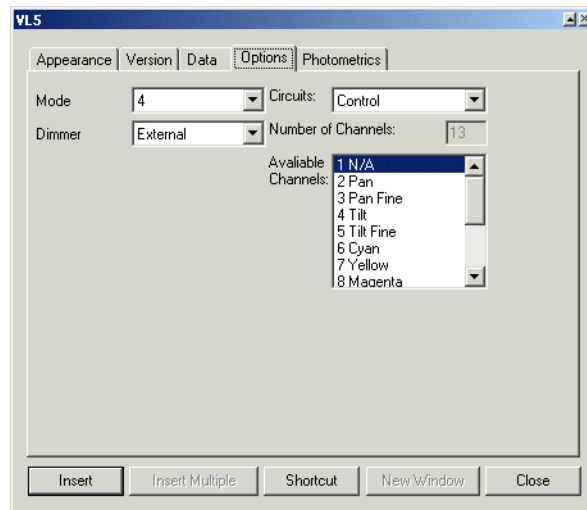
- *Manufacturer:* The name of the manufacturer of the fixture.
- *Model:* The model number of the fixture.
- *Alias:* The alternate name for the fixture.
- *Weight:* The weight of the fixture.
- *Use default:* Select this check box to use the default weight.
- *Cost:* The cost of renting or purchasing the fixture. The cost of renting the fixture can be the price for a day, week, or month. The default value is 0.00.

### Notes:

- If a cost is assigned to a fixture type when a WYSIWYG document is open, the cost is applied to the current document only.
- If a cost is applied to a fixture type when a document is not open, the cost is used as the default for all documents created on your copy of WYSIWYG.
- When opening a document created by someone other than yourself, the cost entered in that person's document is used.
- The cost entered in this tab is displayed in WYSIWYG reports. For more information on the display of this data, refer to page 217.
- *Catalog:* The code that is used by the manufacturer to identify the fixture.
- *Manu:* The manufacturer's code for those fixtures that are Autofocus-compatible. Conventional fixtures do not have a manufacturer's code. The default value is 0.
- *Prod:* The product code for those fixtures that are Autofocus-compatible. Conventional fixtures do not have a product code. The default value is 0.
- *Use default:* Select this check box to indicate that the default settings for Prod and Manu (0, 0) are to be used.
- *URL:* The internet address of the manufacturer.
- *Open:* If an internet address is shown, click this button to open the Web page of the manufacturer.

## Options tab

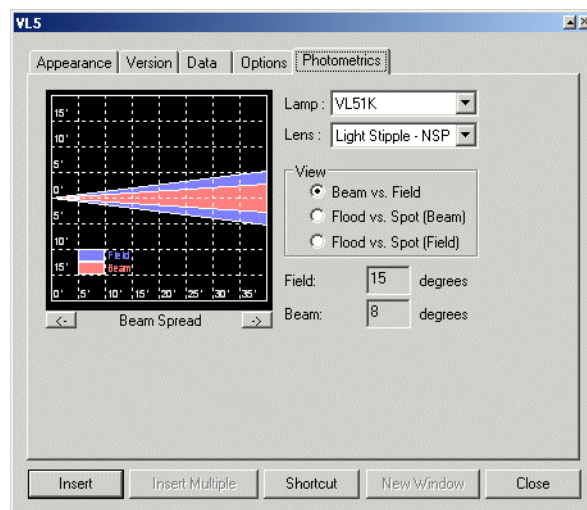
The boxes on this tab indicate various options about the selected fixture, such as the number of channels and the available channels. Based on the fixture selected, the options shown on this tab vary. For example, if you choose a light like the Vari\*Lite VL5, the options on the left side of the window affect those on the right side. In this case, based on the options that you select on the left side, the hookup for this fixture may differ.



- **Mode:** Select the mode in which you want to configure the fixture. This field is not applicable for certain fixtures.
- **Dimmer:** If applicable, select the type of dimmer for this fixture (for example, choose either Internal or External).
- **Circuits:** Indicates the type of DMX controls for this fixture (for example, Control, Intensity, RIntensity, Color, and so on).
- **Number of Channels:** Based on the circuit that you selected above (in addition to the options selected), this box indicates the number of channels for this fixture.
- **Available Channels:** The names of the channels available for this fixture (based on the circuit and options that you selected).

## Photometrics tab

Options on the *Photometrics* tab affect the lamp and lens settings for the fixture.



- **Lamp:** Select the lamp to be used in the fixture.
- **Lens:** If applicable, select the lens setting for the fixture. Changing the lens alters the photometric properties of the fixture.

- *View*. Select the graphical representation that you want to display in the box to the left. The choices are as follows:
  - *Beam vs. Field*. Displays a graphical representation of the beam and field angles of the fixture.
  - *Flood vs. Spot (Beam)*. Displays a graphical representation of the ratio between the flood and spot for the fixture's beam angle.
  - *Flood vs. Spot (Field)*. Displays a graphical representation of the ratio between the flood and spot for the fixture's field angle.
- *Field*: The measurement in degrees from the center of the beam to where the light level drops off to 10 percent of the peak.
- *Beam*: The measurement in degrees from the center of the beam to where the light level drops off to 50 percent of the peak.

## Quick tools

Quick tools allow you to quickly assign data, accessories, and other attributes to fixtures without having to switch to the Data mode or open the Properties box for each individual fixture. Quick tools will enter repetitive information, as well as incremental information for each fixture as you click on it.

### To use Quick Tools

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Quick Tools**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Quick Tools* tool on the *Tools* toolbar.



**Quick Fixture Tool**

**Fixture**

- ☐ Spot: 1 ☒ Auto Increment
- ☐ Unit: 1 ☒ Auto Increment
- ☐ Purpose:
- ☐ Focus: Pan: 0 Tilt: 0

**Data**

- ☐ Channel: 1 ☒ Auto Increment
- ☐ Patch: ... ☒ Auto Increment
- ☐ Dimmer: 1 ☒ Auto Increment
- ☐ Circuit: Name: Num: 1 ☒ Auto Increment

**Accessories**

- ☐ Colour: ...
- ☐ Gobo: ...
- ☐ Other: ...

OK Clear All Cancel

- 2 To activate a tool, select the check box to the left of the tool. You can activate as many as you want at a time. See below for explanations of the different tools.
- 3 Type the initial value for the tool in the box to the right of the tool name. If you want the value to auto increment, as for channels or spot numbers, make sure you select the *Auto Increment* check box. WYSIWYG will assign the next sequential number based on the properties and requirements of the previous fixture.
- 4 When the dialog box is set up the way you want it, click *OK*.

- 5 The cursor will show a “Q”, indicating that Quick Tools have been activated. Click on each fixture in the order you want any auto-incrementing values to be assigned.

**Note:** The attributes to be assigned to the next fixture are logged in the bottom left hand corner of the status bar.



- 6 When complete, right-click and choose **Finish Quick Tools**.

**Note:** To change the values at any time, right-click and choose **Change Options**.

**Tip:** Use the *Clear All* button to reset all the values and deselect all quick tools.

### Quick Tools

- Quick Spot enters a spot number in the *Spot* box.
- Quick Unit enters a unit number in the *Unit* box.
- Quick Purpose enters a fixture purpose in the *Purpose* box.
- Quick Focus enters a focus position or pan and tilt angle for the selected fixture.
- Quick Channel enters a channel number in the *Channel* box.
- Quick Patch enters a patch universe assignment in the *Patch* box.
- Quick Dimmer enters a dimmer number in the *Dimmer* box.
- Quick Circuit enters a circuit name and number in the Circuit *Name* and *Num* boxes.
- Quick Color enters a gel color number for the selected fixtures.
- Quick Gobo enters a gobo number for the selected fixtures.
- Other enters an accessory type for the selected fixtures.

### Notes:

1. When typing values, type the exact value or use the [...] browse button to open a selection dialog.
2. The entry in the patch box must fulfill the requirements of patch notation which is *universe.#*. For more information regarding patch notation refer to “Reading the patch” on page 227.
3. For more information about the data fields, refer to “Data fields” on page 216.
4. When using the quick tools to insert a color or gobo, WYSIWYG automatically inserts a default color frame or gobo holder, which is already defined in the fixture. Remove the default frame and add a new one using Add Accessory. For information on adding accessories, refer to “To insert an accessory” on page 202.
5. When you are applying a color to a multi-source fixture, a dialog appears, listing the circuit names to which you can apply the Quick Tool color selection. To apply the same color to multiple circuits listed in this dialog, press CTRL, and then select the desired circuits. Press *Select* when you are finished.


### Fixture-specific properties

Customize the properties of a fixture by assigning specific attributes, such as point of view, patch information, and lens type.

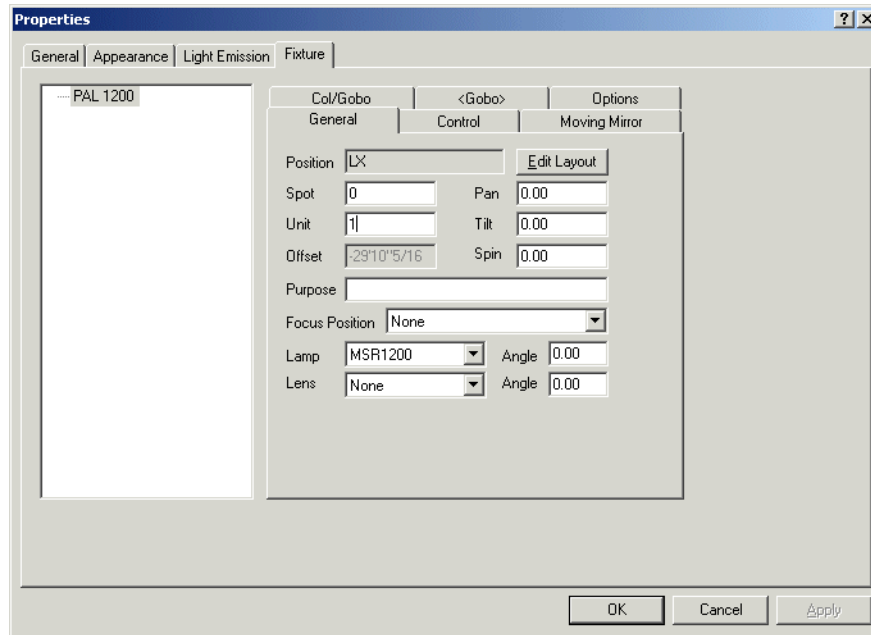


## To edit/view fixture attributes

- 1 Select the fixture that you want to view or edit.
- 2 Right-click and select **Properties**.

**Tip:** At any time, to access an object's properties, you can click on the *Properties* tool on the *Edit* toolbar. 

**Result:** The *Properties* dialog box is displayed. Based on the type of fixture that you have selected, the Properties dialog box varies. An example is shown in the graphic below.



### Fixture tab

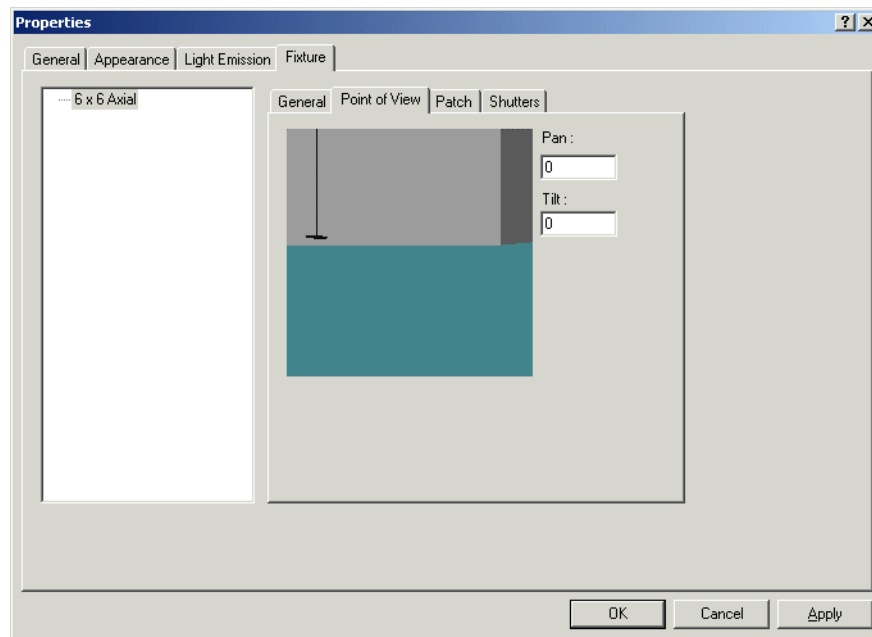
Options on the *Fixture* tab affect the fixture properties and their accessories. On the left side of the dialog box is a list of the selected fixtures and their accessories. Click on a list item to obtain further details about the item. Refer to “Data fields” on page 216 for a description of the fields.

- *Edit Layout*: click to edit the text label layout for the selected fixture. For more information on layout refer to “Information layout” on page 198.

## Point of view tab

Options on the *Point of View* sub-tab affect the orientation of the fixture. Use the arrow keys on your keyboard to pan and tilt the light.

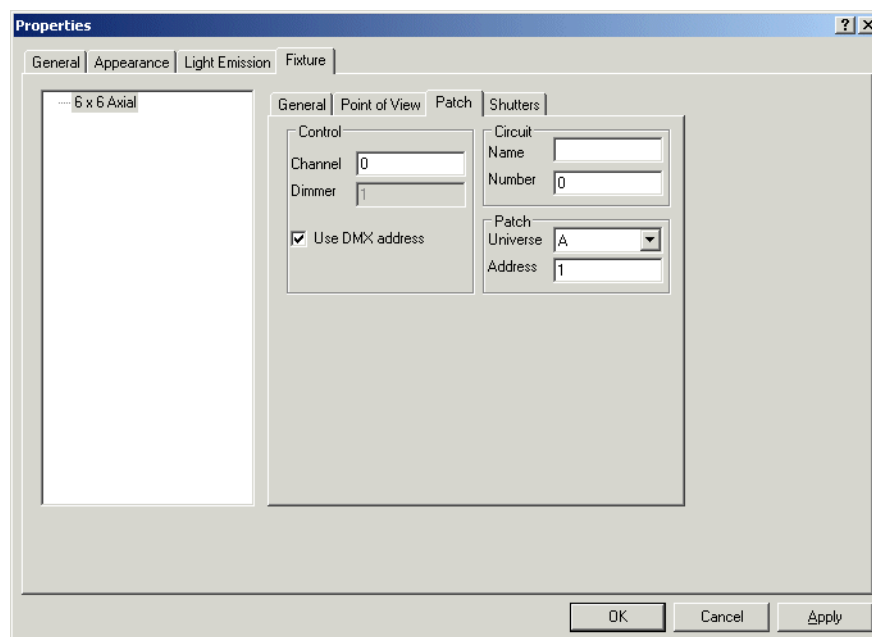
This sub-tab is not available if a fixture is articulable (that is, if any accessories in the fixture tree have a moving head or moving mirror modifier).



- *Pan*: Type a value for the pan and view the result in the window to the left.
- *Tilt*: Type a tilt value and view the result in the window to the left.

## Patch tab

Options on the *Patch* sub-tab affect the circuit, channels, and patch universe for the selected fixture.

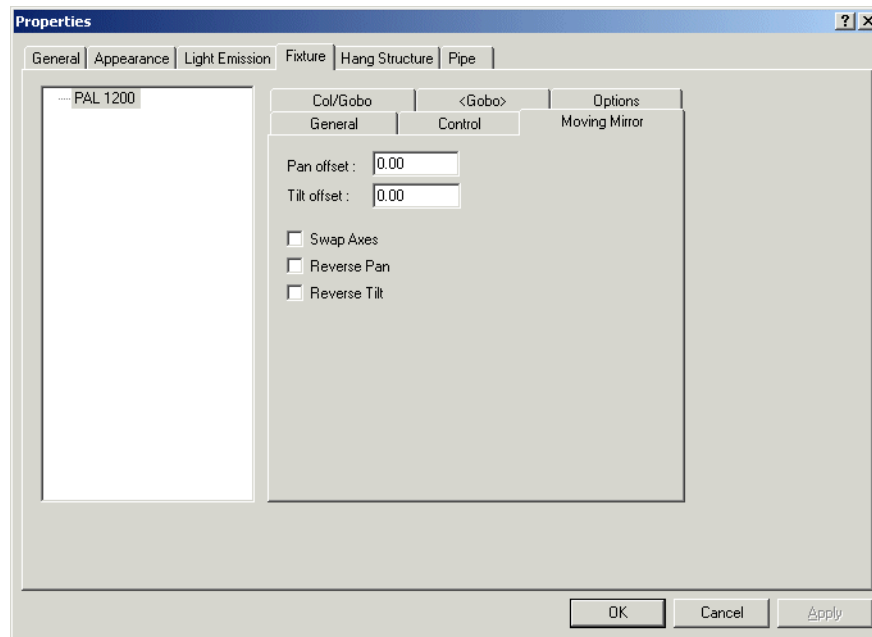


- *Control, Circuit, and Patch*: Refer to "Data fields" on page 216 for a description of these boxes.

- *Use EDMX address:* Select this check box to use the EDMX address for the patch universe. This check box is enabled if you select EDMX from the *Universe* drop-down list. EDMX is an Ethernet protocol developed by ETC.

## Moving mirror/moving head tab

Options on the *Moving Mirror* and *Moving Head* sub-tabs affect the pan and tilt values.

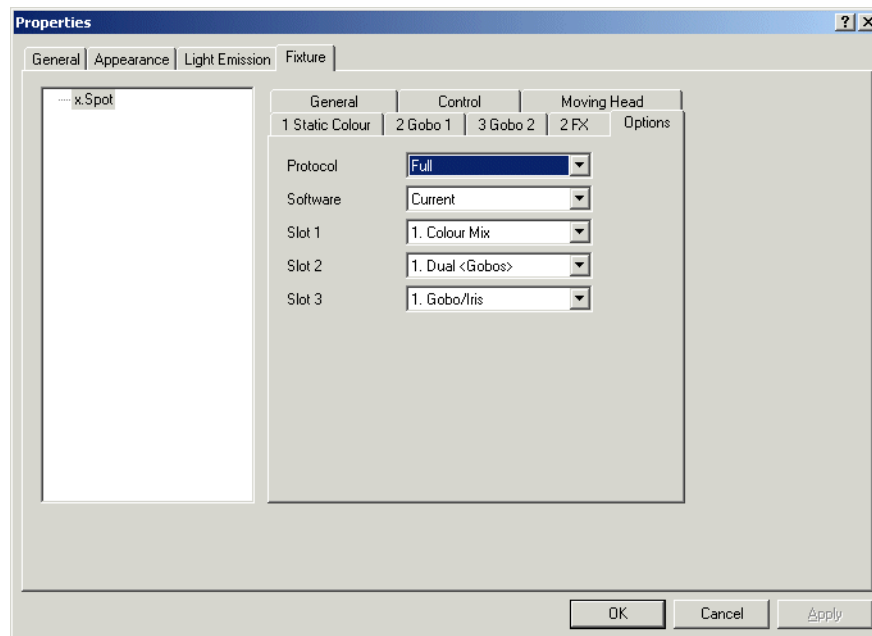


- *Pan offset:* Sets the manually adjustable pan angle.
- *Tilt offset:* Sets the manually adjustable tilt angle.
- *Reverse Pan:* Select this check box only if the real fixtures have an option to reverse the pan parameter and that option is set to true.
- *Reverse Tilt:* Select this check box only if the real fixtures have an option to reverse the tilt parameter and that option is set to true.
- *Swap Axes:* Select this check box only if the real fixtures have an option to swap the control channels for the tilt and pan and that option is set to true.
- *Pan:* (Only visible for certain fixtures.) Displays the manufacturer low, mid and high pan limit values for the fixture. To change a value, select it, click *Change*, and then type the new value.
- *Tilt:* (Only visible for certain fixtures.) Displays the manufacturer's low, mid, and high tilt limit values for the fixture. To change a value, select it, click *Change*, and then type the new value.

**Note:** The Pan and Tilt limit behavior is defined by the Mode selected on the Options tab.

## Options tab

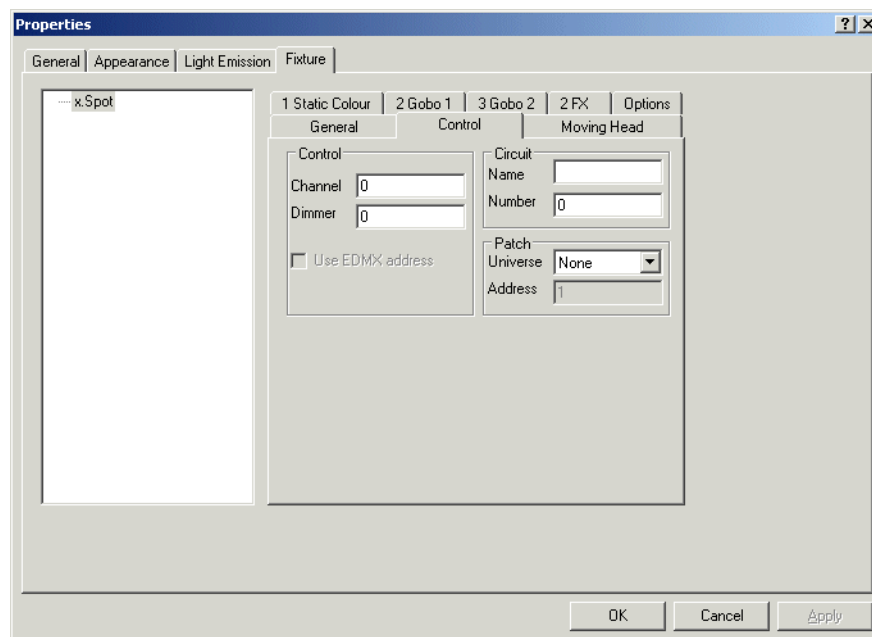
Options on this tab affect the mode selection for the fixtures. The options vary according to the fixture that you have selected.



- *Mode*: Sets the mode for the selected fixture.
- *Software*: The software version that is loaded on the selected fixture.
- *Slots*: The mechanical components that are present in the selected fixture.
- *Control*: Simulates the lamp control channel on the selected fixture. Since you can physically turn a fixture on or off, WYSIWYG enables this action in the software.

## Control tab

Options on the *Control* tab enable you to set the channel, circuit, and patch universe information for the fixture.



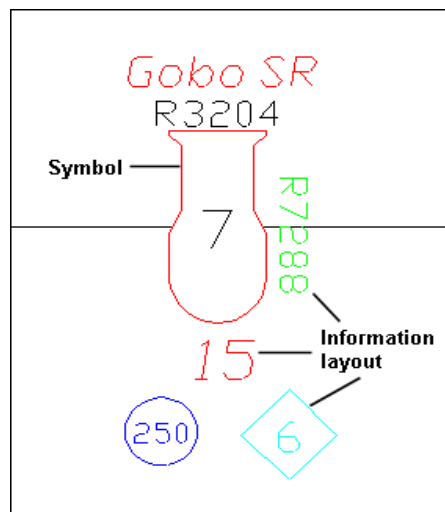
- *Channel*: Type the channel number for the selected fixture.
- *Dimmer*: The dimmer number for the selected fixture.

- *Use EDMX address:* If checked, the EDMX address is used for the patch universe. This check box is enabled if either EDMX or Conventionals (for the DMX address) is selected from the *Universe* drop-down list.
- *Name:* The circuit name for the selected fixture.
- *Number:* The circuit number for the selected fixture.
- *Universe:* Select a patch universe for the fixture.
- *Address:* The starting DMX channel number for the selected fixture.

## Fixture notation

Fixture notation affects how fixtures and their properties are displayed on your drawing and consequently on your plot in Presentation mode. As illustrated below, two components comprise fixture notation:

- symbol
- information layout



## Symbols

A symbol is a graphical representation of a fixture in a Wireframe view. In all wireframe views except isometric, symbols may be used to represent fixtures instead of three dimensional models. Fixtures are associated with specific symbols by default, but you can change the symbol to whatever you like.

### To turn fixture symbols on or off

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **User Options**.  
**Result:** The *User Options* dialog box is displayed.
- 2 Select the *Show Details* tab.
- 3 Select the *Draw Symbols* check box.
- 4 Click *OK*.

### To change the symbol for a fixture type

The following procedure changes the symbol for all instances of the selected fixture type in the document. Similar procedures change the symbol at an application level.

**Note:** For fixtures with interchangeable lenses (or lamps in the case of PARs), you must change the symbol for the lamp or lens instead of the fixture.

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Browse Library**.

**Note:** To change the symbol at an application level, you must browse the library from the WYSIWYG welcome window. The information is stored in the Default.ldb file in the WYSIWYG\Library folder. If you need to reinstall WYSIWYG, make a backup of Default.ldb and replace the installed file with the backup to ensure that your changes are not lost.

To change the symbol for the selected fixture only: select the fixture, open its properties, and then skip to step 5.

- 2 Select the Fixtures library.
- 3 Navigate through the library, and then select the fixture type for which you wish to change the symbol.
- 4 Click the *Property* tool.  
**Result:** The properties dialog for fixture type opens.
- 5 Click *Change Symbol*.  
**Result:** The symbol selection window is displayed.
- 6 Select the new symbol.
- 7 Click *Select*.
- 8 Close the fixture property box.

## Information layout

You can place the following attributes around fixture symbols in WYSIWYG: focus, lamp, lens, notes, position, purpose, spot, unit, channel, circuit, color, gobo, patch, and dimmer.

The position, visibility, color, and justification of these attributes can be set by editing the Label Layout.

Just like symbols, label layouts can be edited at an application level, document level, or selected-fixture-only level.

### To change the Label Layout

The following procedure changes the label layout for all instances of the selected fixture type in the document. Similar procedures change the symbol at an application level or selected-fixture-only level.

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Browse Library**.

**Notes:**

- To change the label layout at an application level, you must browse the library from the WYSIWYG Welcome window. The information is stored in the Default.ldb file in the WYSIWYG\Library folder. If you need to reinstall WYSIWYG, make a backup of Default.ldb and replace the installed file with the backup to ensure your changes are not lost.
- To change the label layout for the selected fixture only, select the fixture, open its properties, and then skip to step 5. If more than one fixture type is selected, the edit layout option is not available.

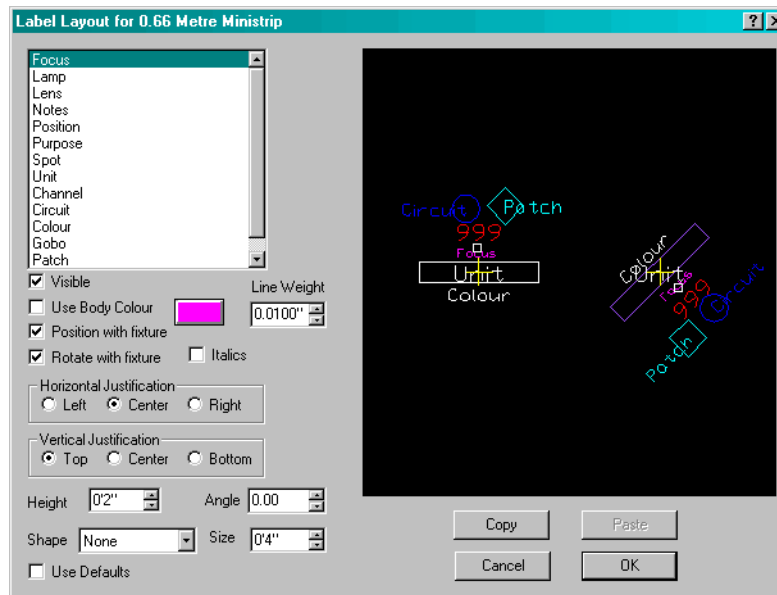
- 2 Select the Fixtures library.
- 3 Navigate through the library, and then select the fixture type for which you wish to change the label layout.

- 4 Click the *Property* tool.

**Result:** The properties dialog box for that fixture type is displayed.

- 5 Click *Edit Layout*.

**Result:** The *Label Layout* window is displayed.



- 6 From the list on the left, select the attribute that you want to edit.

**Note:** To make the controls active, you may have to deselect the *Use Defaults* check box.

- 7 Modify the individual properties.

**Note:** When you make a change to an attribute, the results are previewed in the box on the right.

- a. Select the *Visible* check box if you want the attribute to be displayed around the fixture symbol in your plot.
- b. Select the *Use Body Color* check box if you want the attribute label to use the same font color as the fixture symbol. Leave the box unchecked and choose a color to set a specific color for that attribute.
- c. Adjust the line weight to increase or decrease the density of the label font.
- d. Select the *Italics* check box to italicize the label font. Note there are no options to change the font.
- e. Select the *Position with fixture* check box if you want the attribute's label to maintain its position in relation to the fixture symbol regardless of where the fixture is focused.
- f. Select the *Rotate with fixture* check box if you want the attribute's label to maintain its alignment in relation to the fixture symbol regardless of where the fixture is focused.

**Note:** This option is only available if *Position with fixture* is selected.

- g. Set the horizontal and vertical justification for the text. This is in relation to the insertion point or shape.
- h. Increase or decrease the height to modify the font size.
- i. Set the angle to specify the label alignment in relationship to the fixture symbol.
- j. Select a shape to be associated with this attribute, if desired. You can choose from: none, circle, square, octagon, or diamond.

k. Increase or decrease the size of the shape, as desired.

- 8 Set the position of the label by clicking and dragging on the label in the preview window. To drag a label, you must click on the small square that appears in the middle of it when you select it.

**Note:** The preview window shows the fixture symbol and layout in two orientations for your reference. This is to give you a visual for the fixture in its unfocused and focused positions.

- 9 Repeat the procedure for all attributes.

**Tip:**

The copy and paste buttons allow you to apply the same label layout to other fixture types.

## Inserting symbols

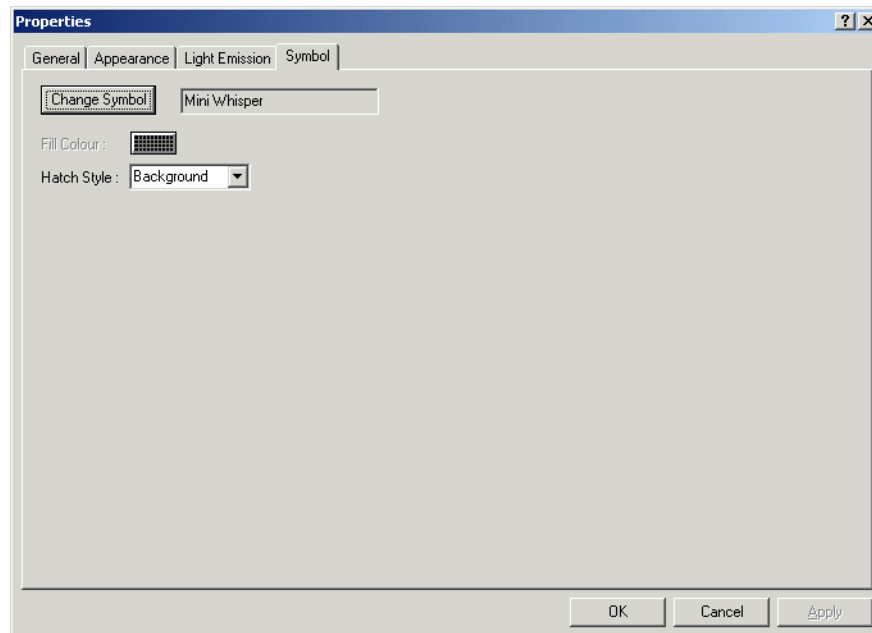
You can also insert symbols that are not associated with fixtures. This allows you to represent the fixtures when you draw a key or want to show the position of a boom in a plan view. Symbols are not fixtures and, therefore, are not counted in reports. Standard symbols, such as the United States Institute for Theatre Technology (USITT) symbols, are available from the library for your use.

### To insert symbols

Refer to “The Library Browser” on page 119. For information on inserting objects from the library, see “To insert objects from the library” on page 120.

## Symbol properties

Options on the *Symbol* tab affect the fill color and hatch style of a symbol.



- *Change Symbol:* Click to select a different symbol.
- *Hatch Style:* The style to use for the hatch. If the Hatch style is *None* the symbol is transparent. If it is *Background*, the symbol is filled with the color of the background and is not transparent.



- *Fill Color*. The color with which you want the symbol to be filled. If the hatch style is *None* or *Background*, the fill color is not enabled.



# Color, gobos, and accessories

## Introduction

You can add to fixtures accessories such as barndoors, tophats, color scrollers, dousers, and so on. Accessories have their own section in the Library Browser and can be inserted just like other objects. You must insert accessories onto existing fixtures and can only insert them onto compatible fixtures.

## Mountable yokes

Note the following before working with mountable yokes:

- While mountable yokes are considered accessories, they differ from other accessories in that you need to add them before you add the fixtures (you cannot insert a fixture, and then select *Add Accessory* to add a mountable yoke).
- You cannot use the *Add Accessory* option to add a fixture on a recently inserted mountable yoke. Instead, you must add the fixture either by using a shortcut or by selecting it from the library browser. Then you can use the *Add Accessory* option to add an accessory to the fixture.
- Once you hang a fixture on a pipe, you cannot drag it onto a mountable yoke.
- To remove a fixture from a mountable yoke, right-click the fixture, and then select *Remove Accessory*. In the resulting tree menu, you can either remove the accessory from the fixture, or remove the fixture from the mountable yoke.
- If you insert a fixture onto a yoke by using a shortcut, and then you insert another fixture onto a pipe using the same shortcut, when you right-click, the option *Finish Placing Accessories* appears (instead of *Finish Placing Fixtures*).
- When you insert a fixture on a mountable yoke in CAD mode, you can no longer focus the beam by dragging it in CAD mode. Additionally, the beam direction might not point straight down.

## To insert an accessory

- 1 Open the Library Browser.
- 2 Click on the Accessory section tool.
- 3 Find the accessory that you want to insert.
- 4 Double-click the accessory name.
- 5 Click on the fixtures to insert the accessory.

### Tips:

- To place an accessory on a selected fixture, right-click on the fixture, and then click **Add Accessory**. Use the browser to find the accessory you want to insert. Follow this procedure in Data mode and only those accessories that can be applied to the selected fixture will be available.
- To place an accessory on a group of selected fixtures, use the Accessory library. With the fixtures selected, find the accessory in the Library Browser. Right-click on the accessory name, and then click **Insert**.
- You can add the correct frame size to a fixture using Add Accessory.

## To create a new shortcut to an accessory

Refer to “To create a new shortcut” on page 54.

## Placing color and gobos

You can drop color and gobos onto fixtures by using the Library Browser or the Quick Tools method. Colors and gobos from many manufacturers are included in the library. You can preview the color or gobo by double-clicking on the name.

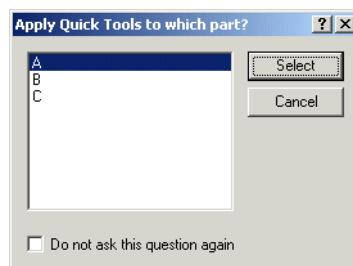
**Note:** For more information on Quick Tools, see “Quick tools” on page 191.

## To insert colors and gobos using the Library Browser

- 1 Open the Library Browser.
- 2 Click the Color or Gobo section tool.
- 3 Find the color or gobo that you want to insert.
- 4 Right-click the color/gobo name, and then click **Insert**.  
**Result:** The cursor shows a “Q”, the symbol denoting that Quick Tools have been enabled.
- 5 Click on the fixtures to which you want to add the color or gobo.
- 6 Right-click, and then select **Finish Quick Tools** to finish placing the color or gobo.

## To insert colors and gobos using the Quick Tools

- 1 Click **Tools > Quick Tools**.  
**Result:** The Quick Fixture Tool appears.
- 2 Under the Accessories heading at the bottom of the window, click the ellipsis button (...) beside the feature that you want to add (either color or gobo), and then choose the color or gobo in the resulting window.
- 3 Click *OK*.  
**Result:** The cursor shows a “Q”, the symbol denoting that Quick Tools have been enabled.
- 4 Click on the fixtures to which you want to add the color or gobo.  
**Note:** If you want to apply color to a multi-source light that has multiple circuits (such as the 528 Borderlight 6’ 4” Circuit), the following window appears, prompting you to select the circuit to which you want to apply the color:



In this case, select the circuit, and then click *Select*. To choose multiple circuits, press CTRL, and then select the desired circuits. Click *Select* when you are finished.

- 5 Right-click, and then select **Finish Quick Tools** to finish placing the color or gobo.

### To create a new shortcut to a color or gobo

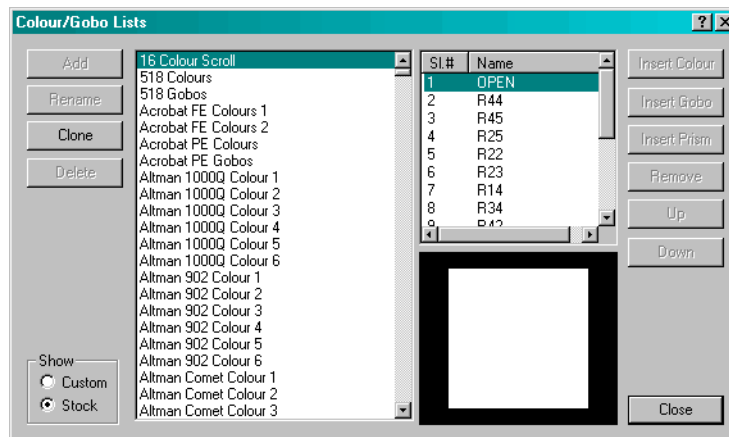
- 1 Click the *Col/Gobo* shortcut bar.
- 2 Right-click in the open space on the bar, and then choose **New Shortcut**.  
**Result:** The *Color Select or Gobo Select* dialog box is displayed.
- 3 Select a color or gobo from the tree menu on the left side.  
**Result:** The color or gobo is displayed on the right side.
- 4 Click *Select*.

## Color/gobo lists

Color and gobo lists are required for automated lighting fixtures and scrollers. By default, when inserted, automated fixtures and scrollers are set to use the manufacturer default color or gobo list. WYSIWYG contains a library of “stock” color and gobo lists provided by the fixture manufacturers. If you are using a custom set of colors or gobos, or want to generate a scroll for a color scroller, you will need to create a custom color or gobo list.

### To view an existing library list

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Edit Color/Gobo Lists**.



- 2 In the *Show* section, click *Stock*.
- 3 Scroll to find the list you want to view.
- 4 Click on the list name. A list of slots and the color or gobo for each slot is displayed in the slot window. If *OPEN* appears in the Name column for a slot, the color, gobo, or prism has not been assigned or is intentionally left *OPEN*.
- 5 Click on a slot to see the preview of that color or gobo in the box below the slot window.
- 6 Click *Close* when you are done.

### To create a custom color/gobo list

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Edit Color/Gobo Lists**.
- 2 In the *Show* section, click *Custom*.
- 3 Click *Add*.
- 4 Type the name of the new list.
- 5 Type the number of slots on the wheel or scroll.
- 6 Click *OK*.

- 7 Click on the slot you wish to edit.
- 8 Click *Insert Color*, or *Insert Gobo*, or *Insert Prism*. Make sure if you are inserting different types of media into the same list that this is actually possible for that fixture or accessory.
- 9 Click on the item you want to insert, and then click *Select*.
- 10 Repeat for the remaining slots.
- 11 To reorder the items in the slots, click on the slot, and then click *Up* or *Down* to move that item to a new position.
- 12 To erase a color or gobo selection from a slot, click *Remove*. The slot returns to the default selection of *OPEN*.
- 13 Click *Close* when you are done creating lists.

**Tip:** It is recommended to clone the stock wheel or list associated with the fixture(s) and edit the cloned list. The cloned list inherits the properties of the original list.

### To clone a stock color/gobo list

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Edit Color/Gobo Lists**.
- 2 In the *Show* section, click *Stock*.
- 3 Scroll to find the list you want to clone.
- 4 Click *Clone*.
- 5 Type a name for the cloned list, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The cloned list appears in the custom lists.

### To rename a color/gobo list

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Edit Color/Gobo Lists**.
- 2 In the *Show* section, click *Custom*.
- 3 Select the color/gobo list that you want to rename.
- 4 Click *Rename*.
- 5 Type the new name for the list, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The list is renamed.

### To delete a color/gobo list

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Edit Color/Gobo Lists**.
- 2 In the *Show* section, click *Custom*.
- 3 Select the color/gobo list that you want to remove.
- 4 Click *Delete*.

**Result:** The list is removed from the color/gobo list.

### To insert custom scrolls into scrollers

- 1 Select the fixtures with scrollers for which you want to assign a custom scroll.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Object Properties**.
- 3 Select the *Fixture* tab.
- 4 In the fixture list, highlight the scroller.
- 5 Select the *Scroll* tab.

- 6 Select the desired list from the pull-down list.  
**Note:** Only custom lists that have the appropriate number of slots and media type are available.
- 7 Click *OK*.

### To insert custom wheels into automated fixtures

- 1 Select the fixtures for which you want to assign a custom wheel.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Object Properties**.
- 3 Select the *Fixture* tab.
- 4 Select the appropriate tab (for example, Color 1, Gobo, <Gobo>).
- 5 From the drop-down list, select the desired list.  
**Note:** Only custom lists that have the appropriate number of slots and media type are available.
- 6 Click *OK*.

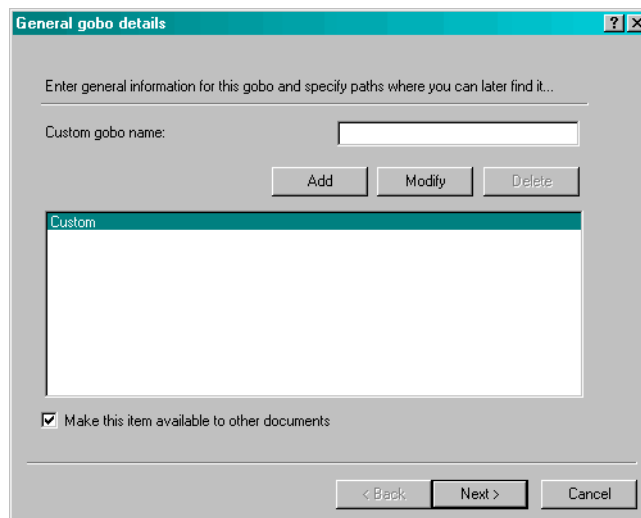
## Custom gobos

You can generate custom gobos if you have the artwork in either bitmap or jpeg format. The Gobo Wizard walks you through the steps of making a custom gobo. Custom gobos are stored in the gobo library under the Custom category.

Custom gobos require an association with an existing WYSIWYG gobo to be visible in wireframe views. The associated gobo is used in lieu of the bitmap or jpeg image. In shaded views and renderings, only the custom gobo footprint is visible. Custom gobos do not break up the cone of light.

### To create a custom gobo

- 1 From the **Library** menu, choose **Gobo Wizard**.



- 2 Type the custom gobo name.
- 3 Add or modify the path.  
**Note:** The path is the location in the library where the gobo will be stored. A gobo assigned to the path "Custom/Corporate\_Logos" would be available in the custom section of the gobo library in a sub-category named Corporate Logos.
- 4 To make this gobo available to other documents, check the appropriate box.

- 5 Click *Next*.
- 6 Type the path to the custom artwork file or use the browser [...] to open the image. The image file must be in either bitmap or jpeg format.  
**Result:** A preview of the image appears in the pane on the right and the image's attributes are recorded in the box on the left.
- 7 Click *Next*.  
**Result:** A short description of the next step appears. You will need to choose an existing library gobo to be displayed when the custom artwork cannot be displayed.
- 8 Click *Next*.
- 9 Navigate the library to find a suitable association gobo.  
**Note:** Generic association gobos are stored in the Proxy category.
- 10 Select the desired gobo.
- 11 Click *Finish*.  
**Result:** The custom gobo is placed in the gobo library as per the path specified in step 3.



# The Flight Case

## Introduction

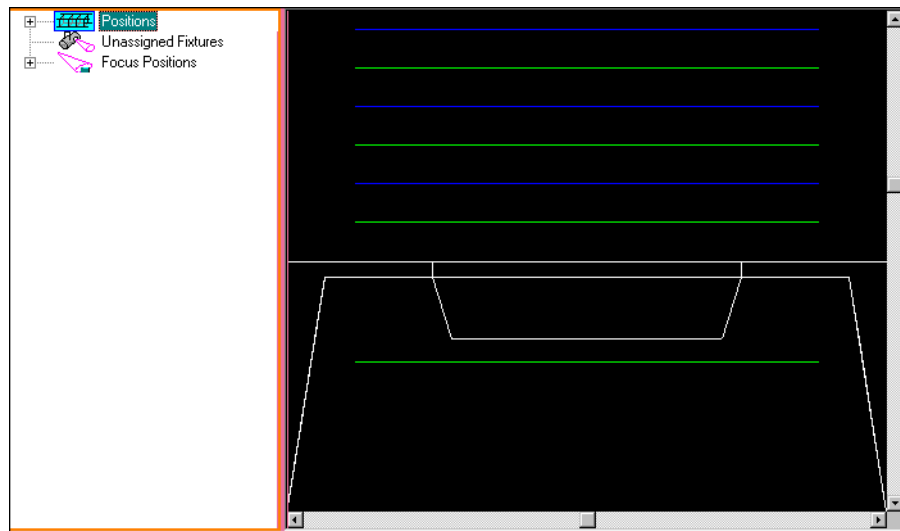
The Flight Case is a special view used to hold unhung fixtures, hang structures, and focus positions created or inserted in Data mode but not yet placed on the drawing. This is an ideal way to work from a set inventory as you can add all of your fixtures in Data mode, and then click and drag the fixtures out of the Flight Case until you have exhausted your stock.

### To open the Flight Case

- 1 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Flight Case**.

**Note:** You can open the Flight Case only in a wireframe view.

**Tip:** The Flight Case layout is preconfigured with the flight case and a wireframe view.



## How objects get into the Flight Case

As you enter fixtures in the Data mode spreadsheets, they appear in the Flight Case under the *Unassigned Fixtures* branch. When you type position names in the Position Manager, the individual positions appear under the *Position* branch. As you assign fixtures to those positions, they will move from the *Unassigned* branch to under the proper position. All fixtures that appear in the Flight Case are unhung fixtures, which means they are not in your drawing (regardless of whether they have been assigned a position or not).

If you create focus positions in the Data mode by typing labels in the focus box of the spreadsheet, those focus positions will appear under the *Focus Positions* branch of the Flight Case. Unhung fixtures assigned to those focus positions will appear under their respective Flight Case headings.

To learn more about inserting objects in Data mode, please refer to Chapter 7, "Data mode."



## Entering and modifying objects in the Flight Case

- You can insert fixtures and focus positions directly into the Flight Case using the Library, *Draw* menu, or appropriate tools on the *Draw* toolbar.
- You can change a fixture's assigned position by selecting the fixture in the Flight Case and dragging it to another position within the Flight Case.
- You can change a fixture's assigned focus position by selecting the fixture and dragging it between Focus Positions within the Flight Case.

## Transferring objects from the Flight Case to the drawing

The items that appear in the Flight Case can be transferred to your drawing by clicking and dragging.

### To hang fixtures from the Flight Case

- 1 Open the Flight Case.
- 2 Click and hold on the desired fixture.
- 3 Drag the fixture into the wireframe view and place it on a hang structure.

**Note:** If a fixture appears in the flight case under a position branch, that fixture must be hung on that position. Fixtures with no position or unassigned fixtures may be hung on any hang structure.

- 4 Release the mouse button.
- 5 Repeat for the remaining fixtures.

**Tip:** You can hang all the fixtures on one position by dragging the entire position out of the Flight Case.

Selecting a fixture in your drawing and pressing the Backspace key will return the fixture to the Flight Case. The fixture will retain the position assignment.

### To insert a hang structure from the Flight Case

If you drag a position from the Flight Case, you will create a pipe.

- 1 Expand the *Positions* branch to see all the hang structures.
- 2 Click and hold on the position that you want to insert.
- 3 Drag the pipe onto the drawing.
- 4 Release the mouse button.
- 5 Use the pop up dialog box to answer the questions about the trim height and length of the pipe, or use the *Interactive* button to draw the pipe in interactive mode.

**Result:** If you do not choose interactive mode, the pipe is inserted centered on the origin at the trim height specified.

**Note:** Multiple positions can have the same name.

For more information about inserting pipes please refer to "Drawing pipes" on page 134.

### To insert a focus position from the Flight Case

- 1 Expand the *Focus Positions* branch in the flight case to see all the Focus positions that have not yet been placed in the drawing.
- 2 Click and hold on the focus position that you want to insert into the drawing.
- 3 Drag the Focus position onto the drawing.

- 4 Release the mouse button to place the focus position.

## Flight Case properties

The Flight Case properties affect which fixture attributes are shown.

### To modify the Flight Case properties

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *View Options* tool on the *Standard* toolbar.



- 2 Click the *Show Details* tab.
- 3 Select the fixture attributes that you want displayed in the Flight Case.

**Note:** The *Unit Number* is displayed by default, however, you can select all the attributes if you want.



## Introduction

At any time in CAD mode, you can generate a rendering of your set. Note that renderings in CAD mode are primarily intended for rendering your set with environmental lighting, but without theatrical lighting. However, if there are any fixtures selected on your plot, they are displayed in your rendering.

### To render a lighting look

- 1 In the working area of the screen, display the lighting look that you want to render.
- 2 From the **Design** menu, choose **Render**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Render Wizard* tool in the *Design* toolbar.



**Result:** The Render Wizard opens and guides you through a series of options. Click *Next* and *Back* to navigate through the Render Wizard.

- 3 Click *Finish*.

**Result:** WYSIWYG generates the rendering of your lighting look or cue. If the rendering is saved internally, it is available as an image in Presentation mode.

**Note:** For more information, see “Rendering” on page 250.



# Chapter 7

---

## Data mode



Data mode enables you to view and edit the data for all your fixtures. Data mode operates like many other spreadsheet programs, so many of the concepts will be familiar to those who have used a spreadsheet program.

### In this chapter

Layout tabs	215
Spreadsheets	216
Patch	223
Errors	231





## Layout tabs

Beneath the work area in each mode is a series of layout tabs. These layouts provide various configurations of the views you are working with. To change layouts, click the tab that corresponds to the layout you wish to use. The Data mode contains the following layouts:

- Spreadsheet - The work area contains a spreadsheet of data currently in the show database.
- H Select - The work area is split horizontally, with a wireframe view above and a spreadsheet view below.
- V Select - The work area is split vertically, with a wireframe view on the left and a spreadsheet view on the right.
- Patch - The work area is split, with a wireframe view above and the patch window below.
- Errors - The work area contains a spreadsheet displaying fixtures with errors.

**Note:** The wireframe views in Data mode are used for fixture selection only. Any selections made in the spreadsheet are visible on the CAD drawing and vice versa. However, to make any drawing modifications, you must return to CAD mode.



## Introduction

The Data mode displays your fixture information in spreadsheet format. WYSIWYG compiles many spreadsheets that are accessible from the columns shortcut bar. All of these spreadsheets contain the same information, but are sorted and filtered differently. Each column in the spreadsheet represents one fixture attribute. The following information is compiled.

## Data fields

**Note:** Data fields identified with an asterisk (\*) are non-editable fields.

- **Spot** - This is an assigned identifier number usually used for automated fixtures. A spot number is required for automated fixtures when using AutoFocus.
- **Channel** - This is the assigned control channel number you will use at your control console to control the fixture. For moving lights, the channel number recorded in WYSIWYG is the starting channel number.
- **Position** - This is the hanging position for the fixture. Positions must be entered in the Position Manager.
- **Unit** - The unit number identifies the fixture's location on its respective hanging position.
- **Type** - This is the fixture name.
- **Lens** - This is the lens type.
- **\*Hookup** - This identifies the component of a multi-circuit fixture or other device, such as a scroller (for example, intensity, control).
- **Purpose** - The purpose is a custom note that is most commonly used to describe how this fixture is being used in your show. For example, "SL Side", "Diagonal Backs". Purpose is an attribute of the fixture. It is not possible to assign multiple purposes for multi-circuit fixtures.
- **Color** - This is the assigned gel color number or scroller identification.
- **Gobo** - This is the assigned gobo number.
- **Focus** - This is the fixture's focus position.
- **Patch** - This is the fixture's assigned DMX channel number. This field is mandatory for simulation activity in Live mode. One show can have multiple DMX universes. A patch entry must be notated *universe.#*, where *universe* is a letter, number, or other label identifying the universe or output and # is the DMX channel number. For example, "A.1" or "Dim.26".
- **Circuit Name** - This is an identifier note for the circuit box or multi-cable.
- **Circuit Number** - This is the assigned circuit or multi-cable tail number.
- **Dimmer** - This is the assigned dimmer number.
- **\*Offset** - This field identifies the fixture's location on the hanging structure. It is a distance measurement referencing the pipe's end or center point or another point as specified.
- **Pan** - A focus attribute measured in degrees, defining the positioning of the fixtures yoke.
- **Tilt** - A focus attribute measured in degrees, defining the positioning of the fixture within the yoke.



- **Spin** - A focus attribute measured in degrees, defining the fixture's yoke positioning in relation to the hang structure where 0 is down-hung, 90 is side-hung, and 180 is over-hung for example.
- **\*Weight** - This is the fixture's weight. A fixture's weight can only be modified through the Library Browser.
- **Lamp Type** - This is the lamp type.
- **Notes** - This is a custom notes field.
- **\*Footnotes** - This feature is currently disabled.
- **\*# of Data Channels** - This is the total number of DMX channels required by the fixture.
- **\*# of Color Frames** - This is the number of color frame slots that the fixture has.
- **\*# of Lamps** - This is the number of lamps required by the fixture.
- **\*Circuit Type** - This describes what type of device the unit should be plugged into, for example, regular dimmer, scroller power supply.
- **\*Wattage** - This is the wattage in watts of the lamp.
- **\*Model** - This is the fixture type.
- **\*Cost** - This is the fixture's cost or rental cost. This field is used to estimate a show budget. A fixture's cost can only be modified through the Library Browser. For more information on setting costs, refer to page 189.
- **\*Status** - This is the fixture's status relative to your drawing. If the fixture is HUNG it is in your drawing. If a fixture is UNHUNG, it is in the flight case. In fixture count reports, all fixtures are counted regardless of their status (unless a filter is applied).
- **\*Console** - This identifies which console is controlling the fixture. This field references the binding settings in the device manager in Live mode.
- **Layer** - This field indicates which layer the fixture is drawn on.
- **\*Tag** - This is an internal code used for importing and exporting data to/from third party programs.
- **\*Owner** - This feature is currently disabled.

## Working in the spreadsheet

Data may be entered in a number of ways within the WYSIWYG file. The plot can be created, and then edited, or the data may be entered in a spreadsheet, and then placed on the plot. Any entries or changes are reciprocated throughout the file; changes made in Data mode will be updated in CAD mode and visa versa.

### To add or modify data

Type the desired value in the appropriate cell.

**Tip:** You can add or modify chunks of information at the same time by selecting a series of cells and typing.

If you are entering sequential numerical values for a field such as patch, you can use incremental data entry to facilitate your work. WYSIWYG will calculate the next available value based on the number of required channels for the previous fixture.

### To input sequential numerical data

- 1 Type the first value in the appropriate cell.
- 2 Press and hold ALT and press the down-arrow for each incremental entry you want to make.

### To choose a new value

- 1 Select the appropriate cell.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Pick value from the list**.

**Result:** This action opens a dialog with a drop-down menu listing all of the values currently used in your file for you to choose from.

- 3 To make a new selection, click *Library* to open the appropriate library.

**Note:** This feature is only available in certain fields.


**Tip:** This feature is especially useful for fields such as color, gobo, or other parameters that reference library items for which you do not know the exact value.

## Find and replace tool

The find and replace tools are used for locating and modifying data, and are column specific. The tools only search for data in the column where the tool was activated and not throughout the entire spreadsheet.

### To use the find tool

- 1 Select a cell in the column in which you want to use the *Find* tool.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Find**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Find* tool on the *Data* toolbar. 

- 3 Type your search criteria.
  - Select the *Match whole word only* check box to search for data matching exactly what you have typed as opposed to data containing parts or all of what you have typed.
  - Select the *Match case* check box to enable a case sensitive search where uppercase and lowercase letters will affect the results.
- 4 Click *Find Next*.

**Result:** Cells that match your search criteria are highlighted with the first match active.

### To use the replace tool

- 1 Select a cell in the column in which you want to use the *Find* and *Replace* tool.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Replace**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Replace* tool on the *Data* toolbar. 

- 3 Type your search criteria. Enter a value to find and a value to replace it with.
  - Select the *Match whole word only* check box to search for data matching exactly what you have typed as opposed to data containing parts or all of what you have typed.
  - Select the *Match case* check box to enable a case sensitive search where uppercase and lowercase letters will affect the results.
- 4 Click *Find Next*, *Replace*, or *Replace All*.

**Result:**


- If you click *Find Next*, cells that match your search criteria are highlighted with the first match active.
- If you click *Replace*, cells that match your search criteria are highlighted and the first match is replaced with the value specified in step 3. You can continue clicking *Replace* to replace each match in turn.

- If you click *Replace All*, all matches are replaced with the value specified in step 3 and no cells are highlighted.

## Inserting fixtures in Data mode

Any fixtures inserted in Data mode are assigned the status “unhung” and are placed in the Flight Case. The Flight Case allows you to drag and drop “unhung” fixtures onto your drawing. For more information about the Flight Case, refer to “The Flight Case” on page 208.

### To insert fixtures in Data mode

- 1 Click the *Fixture* tool  on the *Data* toolbar.
- 2 Navigate to the desired fixture.
- 3 In the *Multiple* box, type the number of fixtures of that type required.
- 4 Click *Insert*.

**Result:** The fixtures are inserted below the last entry in the spreadsheet.

**Tip:** If you have a shortcut created for the desired fixture, you can right-click on the shortcut and choose **Insert** or **Insert Multiple**.

## Inserting focus positions in Data mode

If you type a new value into the focus field of a fixture, you are essentially creating a focus position. That focus position is now available in the Flight Case for you to drag and drop into your drawing.

For more information on the Flight Case, refer to “The Flight Case” on page 208.

## Inserting positions in Data mode

If you type a new value into the position field of a fixture, the *Pick a value from the list* dialog box is automatically displayed. This is because a position cannot exist in WYSIWYG unless it is recorded in the *Position Manager*. You can select from the list of positions that already exist or you can click *Manager* to open the *Position Manager* to create a new position.

If you are making this change to a fixture that was previously hung on a different position, that fixture will be unhung and sent to the *Flight Case* under its new position field. From there, you can drag it back onto the drawing.

If the position does not yet exist in the drawing, you must draw a hang structure and assign it the appropriate position name before you will be able to hang the fixture again. For more information on drawing hang structures, refer to “Hang structures” on page 171.

For more information on drawing items from the Flight Case, refer to “Entering and modifying objects in the Flight Case” on page 209.

## Inserting color in Data mode

### To insert color in Data mode

- 1 Click in the color field of the fixture for which you want to assign color.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Pick value from the list**.

- 3 Use the pull-down menu to select a color among those you have already used in your plot, or click *Library* to open the color library.

**Tip:** You can bypass steps 2-3 and type in the value if you already know the color that you want to assign (for example, R54, L112, and so on)

WYSIWYG accommodates multiple color entries for one fixture as follows:

- "Color1 & Color2" yields two color frames with one gel in each.
- "Color1 + Color2" yields one color frame with two gels in it.
- "Color1 / Color2" yields one color frame with one split gel in it.

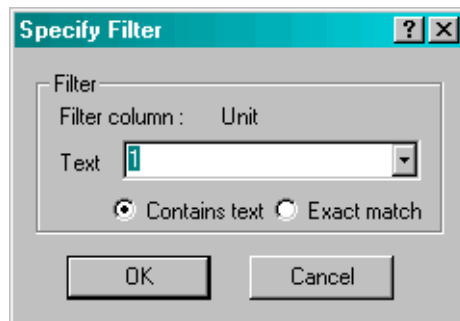
## Data filters

Data filters are used for locating or isolating selective blocks of information. When a data filter is applied to a spreadsheet, only the units that met the filter criteria are displayed. Filters are applied to columns of data.

### To apply a data filter

- 1 In the spreadsheet, right-click on the column heading you want to filter.
- 2 Choose **Add Data Filter**.

**Result:** A dialog box is displayed, showing the column name and the available filters.



- 3 Select the value that you want to filter. You can also type in a value and choose whether you want to filter that specific text, or filter for entries that contain that text.

**Result:** The spreadsheet refreshes, displaying only fixtures that meet the filter criteria.

### To remove data filters

- 1 Right-click on a column heading.
- 2 Choose **Remove Data Filter**.


**Result:** The spreadsheet returns to its unfiltered state.

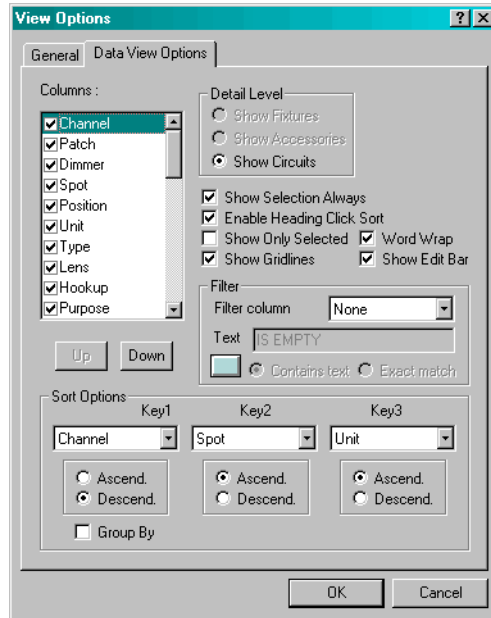
## Customizing spreadsheets

There are different ways to sort and view your data. First, consider the different spreadsheets available on the *Columns* shortcut bar.

Alternatively you can modify a spreadsheet to suit your needs. Customizing a view allows you to change how the data is displayed and sorted.

## To modify a data sheet

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.
- 2 You can also click the *View Options* tool on the *Standard* toolbar. 
- 3 Click the *Data View Options* tab.



- 4 To adjust a column's location in the spreadsheet, highlight the appropriate column heading in the *Columns* box, and then click the *Up* or *Down* button to relocate it in the data view.
- 5 To hide a column in your view, deselect the check box beside it.
- 6 To specify how entries should be sorted, choose the desired column headings in the *Key 1*, *Key 2*, and *Key 3* drop-down lists. When fixtures have the same value in the first sort key, the spreadsheet is then sorted by the values of the second sort key.
- 7 Click *Ascend* or *Descend* to sort the criteria in ascending or descending order, respectively.
- 8 Select the *Show Selection Always* check box to ensure that any fixtures selected in a plot view will automatically be selected in a data view.
- 9 Select the *Enable Heading Click Sort* check box to enable the ability to sort the spreadsheet by clicking on the column headings while working in the spreadsheet.
- 10 The *Show Only Selected* option will filter the spreadsheet to display only the fixtures that are selected in the Wireframe view.
- 11 Select the *Show Gridlines* check box to display the columns in tabular format, with lines separating the data.
- 12 Select the *Word Wrap* check box to view all the text on a line in the spreadsheet.
- 13 Select the *Show Edit Bar* check box to display the edit bar at the top of the spreadsheet.
- 14 The *Filter* section has the same functionality as the data filters discussed in "Data filters" on page 220.
- 15 Select the *Group By* check box to divide the spreadsheet into sections/pages, one section/page for each value in the Key 1 field.

## Creating a new spreadsheet

### To create a new sheet

- 1 In the shortcut bar, click the *Columns* tab.
- 2 Right-click in the shortcut bar and choose **New Spreadsheet**.
- 3 Type a name for the new spreadsheet, and then click *OK*.
- 4 Scroll to the bottom of the list of *Column* shortcuts. Your new spreadsheet name should be at the bottom of the list. Click on the shortcut to view your spreadsheet.

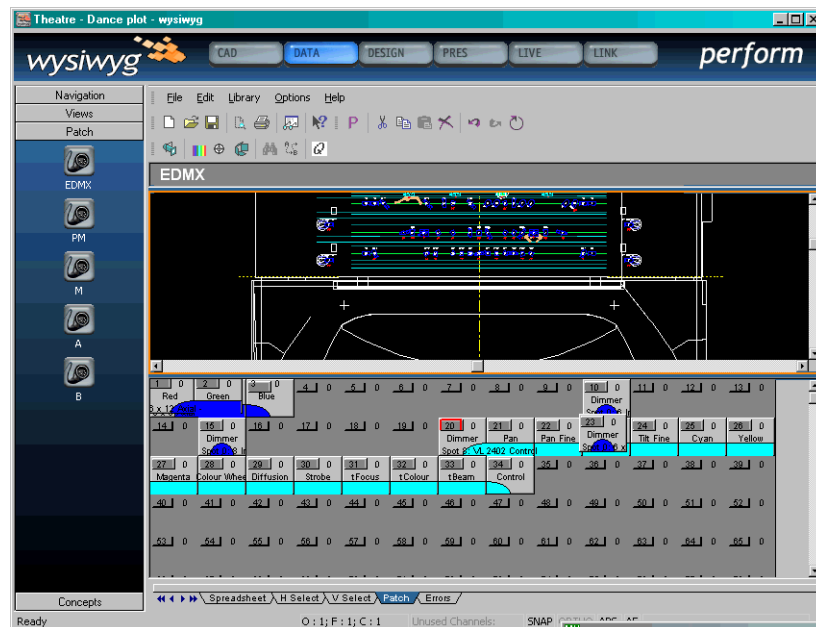
**Note:** It may be easier to clone an existing spreadsheet and modify it than to start a new one from scratch. See “To clone a shortcut” on page 55 for more details.



## Introduction

The Patch view is a graphical representation of the patch field. It is used for two purposes:

- to create and/or edit a patch for the lights, video, or moving scenery in your drawing
- to monitor incoming DMX levels when using WYSIWYG Perform for simulation



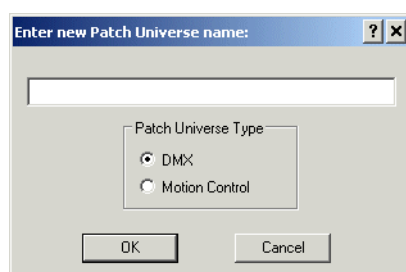
## Working in the patch view

You can view one patch universe at a time. As you add new patch universes in either a spreadsheet view or a CAD drawing (using Quick Tools), their shortcuts are created automatically. You can also create new patch universes directly from the shortcut bar.

### To create a new patch universe

- 1 Click the *Patch* layout tab.
- 2 Right-click in the patch shortcut area and choose **New Patch**.

**Result:** A dialog box is displayed, prompting for the type of universe that you want to create, and the name of the new universe.



- 3 Type the name of the patch universe. Patch universes can be named anything. For example, "A", "Dimmers", "Dim", "Movers", "Scrollers", and so on.
- 4 Select the type of patch universe based on the type of console or system that you are using, either a DMX console, or a motion control system.
- 5 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The patch shortcut appears in the Patch tab.

**Notes:**

- To change, delete, or modify a patch universe, right-click the shortcut icon for the universe that you want to change. Click on the command that you want to perform.
- To display the contents of a patch universe, click on the appropriate shortcut icon. The name of the universe is displayed at the top left corner of the Wireframe view.

### To patch fixtures in the patch view

- 1 Click and hold the desired fixture in the Wireframe view.
- 2 Drag the fixture to the desired patch location.
- 3 For re-patching, repeat the above steps, or click and drag the fixture's patch information to the new location.

### To unpatch fixtures in the patch view

- 1 Select the fixture by clicking on the first channel (start cell) for that fixture. It should become highlighted.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Unpatch**.

**Result:** The fixture is unpatched; the value in the patch field for that fixture is deleted.

### To patch the control of a video source

In WYSIWYG, you patch the *control* of a video source, not the actual video. This means that you can use the console device to control the progress of a live video stream or a video file by making the video play, pause, or rewind; you cannot use WYSIWYG to change different aspects of the video itself.

To control the video source, the DMX patch is allocated three channels. For details on controlling the video with the console device in Live mode, see "To control a DMX patched video source with a console" on page 316.

- 1 In the shortcut area, click the *Patch* tab.
- 2 Click the patch shortcut to which you have linked control of the video source.

**Result:** The video patch appears in the patch universe.

- 3 Open the console device that you have connected to the video DMX patch.
- 4 Using the console controls, set the appropriate levels for the three channels. For details, see "To control a DMX patched video source with a console" on page 316.
- 5 Save your settings.
- 6 In the Shaded tab of Live mode, you can now use the console device to control the progress of the video. For details, see "To control a DMX patched video source with a console" on page 316.



## To patch a movement axis to a DMX console device

In WYSIWYG, you can patch a movement axis to which one or more objects has been attached, and then use a console device or a motion control system to control the progress of the objects along the axis.

You have the choice of patching the axis to either a DMX patch universe or a motion control universe, based on the type of console or system you will be using to move the objects. For details on patching the axis to a motion control universe, see “To patch a movement axis to a motion control system” on page 225.

To control the object’s movement with a DMX console device, the DMX patch is allocated two channels, one each for coarse and fine movement. The DMX value represents the object’s percentage of movement. For example, if it is at 0, then the object is at 0% of its range of motion; if it is at 100, then the object has moved 100% of its range of motion. For details on controlling the object with the console device in Live mode, see “To control a DMX patched movement axis with a console” on page 317.

**Note:** Before performing the following procedure, the movement axis must already be linked to the patch universe. For details, see “To attach a movement axis to a DMX patch universe” on page 138.

- 1 In the shortcut area, click the *Patch* tab.
- 2 Click the patch shortcut to which you have linked control of the moving object.  
**Result:** The moving scenery patch appears in the patch universe.
- 3 Open the console device that you have connected to the DMX patch (for example, the Mini Console).
- 4 Using the console controls, move the slider of the first or second channel to advance the object to the desired position on the movement axis.  
**Note:** The first channel is for coarse movement and can be used to advance the object quickly to any position along the entire path, from start to finish. The second channel is for fine movement. Its movement range is very slight and depends on the position that you have set on the first channel. For details, see “To control a DMX patched movement axis with a console” on page 317.
- 5 In the Shaded tab of Live mode, you can now use the console device to control the object’s movement along the axis. For details, see “To control a DMX patched movement axis with a console” on page 317.

## To patch a movement axis to a motion control system

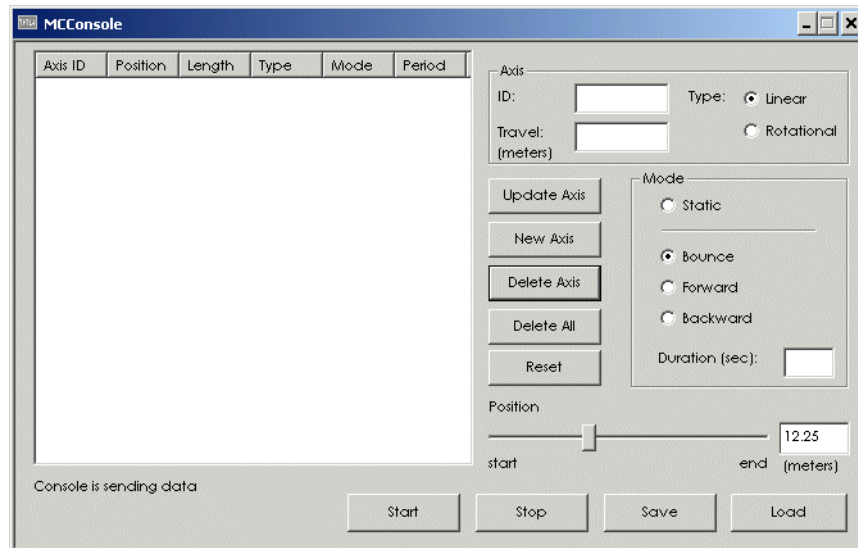
In WYSIWYG, you can patch a movement axis to which one or more objects has been attached, and then use a console device or a motion control system to control the progress of the objects along the axis.

You have the choice of patching the axis to either a DMX patch universe or a motion control universe, based on the type of console or system you will be using to move the objects. For details on patching the axis to a DMX patch universe, see “To patch a movement axis to a DMX console device” on page 225.

When controlling the object’s movement with a motion control system, the patch indicates the ID on the motion control system that corresponds to the WYSIWYG axis ID, the axis name, and the position of the object on its path. When connected to a system (or to WYSIWYG’s Motion Control Console), you can watch the object’s position change in patch view as it moves along its path.

**Note:** Before performing this procedure, the movement axis must already be linked to the patch universe. For details, see “To attach a movement axis to a motion patch universe” on page 138.

- 1 In the shortcut area, click the *Patch* tab.
- 2 Click the patch shortcut to which you have linked control of the moving object.  
**Result:** The motion control patch appears in the patch universe.
- 3 Open the console device or motion control system that you have connected to the motion control patch (for example, the Motion Control Console, shown below).



- 4 If you are using WYSIWYG'S Motion Control Console, in the *ID* box, type the motion control ID that you selected when configuring the axis.  
**Note:** If you do not know the ID, right-click on the axis, and then click **Properties**. Click the *Axis* tab. The ID appears below the *Motion Patch* option button.
- 5 In the *Travel* box, type the distance (in meters for linear axes, in degrees for rotational axes) that you want the object to travel along or around the axis. This can be the full length/angle of the axis, or only a portion of it if you do not want the object to travel along/around the full path. For linear axes, if you type a value that is longer than the actual axis, the object stops at the end of the physical axis.
- 6 Click the *Linear* or *Rotational* option button according to the type of movement axis that you are patching.
- 7 In the Mode area, select the type of movement for the object:
  - **Static** Select this option if you want to specify the precise location of a static object on the movement axis. You can then use the position slider at the bottom of the window to adjust the position and control the movement of the object manually.
  - **Bounce** Select this option if you want the object to move forward and backward in a continuous loop along the movement axis.
  - **Forward** Select this option if you want the object to move forward along the axis from start to finish, and then start over again at the beginning in a continuous forward loop.
  - **Backward** Select this option if you want the object to move backwards along the axis from finish to start, and then begin over again in a continuous backwards loop.
- 8 If you have chosen any *moving* Mode value (that is, any value *except* Static), you can specify the length of time (in seconds) over which you want the full range of motion to take place. Type this value in the *Duration* box. The larger the number you type in this box, the slower the object moves.
- 9 Click *New Axis* to add the axis information to the axis list box.

- 10 Click *Save* to save your settings.

**Note:** If you make any changes to the axis settings and save the changes, you can revert to the previous settings by clicking *Load*.

- 11 To see the object moving along the axis, you must first ensure that the Motion Control Console or the motion control system that you are using is connected and that the patched axis is bound. For details, see "To connect to a console" on page 314 and "To control a motion-control patched movement axis with a motion control system" on page 318.

## Reading the patch

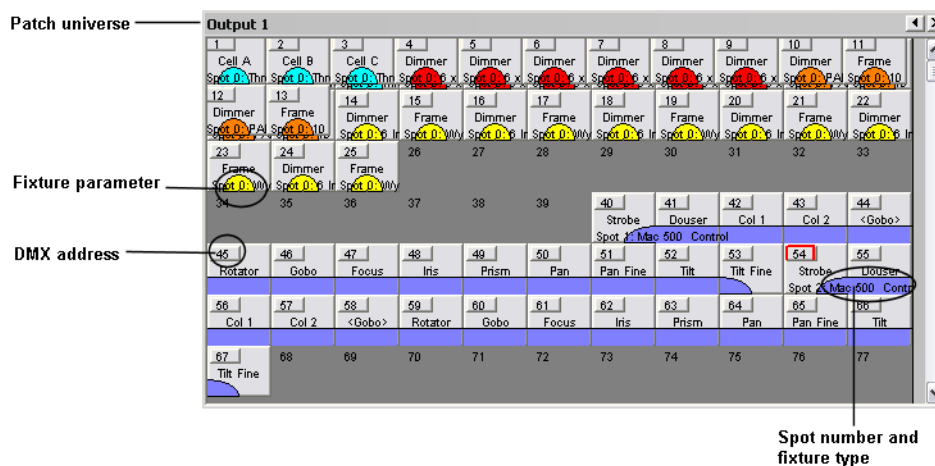
Each box in the patch universe represents one DMX channel. Fixtures are represented by colored bumps or bars that span the number of required DMX channels. The color of the bar is the same as the fixture's CAD layer.

The number in the top left corner is the DMX address.

The spot number and fixture type are identified across the bottom of the box(es).

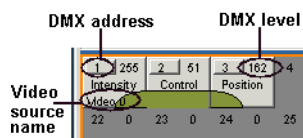
The fixture parameter controlled by each channel is identified in the center of the box.

If you are connected to a console and are receiving DMX signals, the incoming DMX levels are displayed in the top right corner of each box.



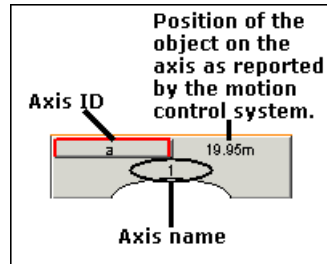
## Reading the patch for streaming video sources

If you have patched a live video source or file, the patch appears as shown below:



## Reading the patch for moving scenery

If you have patched a movement axis, the patch appears as shown below:



- For linear movement axes, the position of the object is reported in either metric or imperial units (for example, 16m).
- For rotational axes, the value is shown in degrees (for example, 42°).
- If the axis is unrecognized by the motion controller, then the object position is shown as a question mark (?).

**Note:** If the axis type is mismatched between that which you have drawn and the type that you choose in the Motion Control Console (for example, if the actual axis is linear, but you choose rotational in the Motion Control Console), then the cell in patch view turns to red.

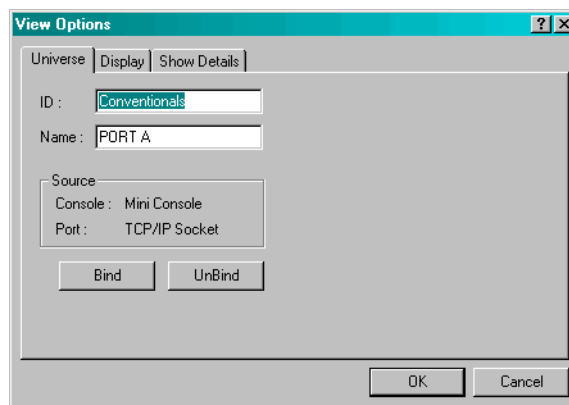
## Patch view properties

You can view and modify patch universe properties such as the name, display details, and tooltip information that is displayed in a patch universe.

### To view the properties of a patch universe

- 1 Right-click on the patch icon, and then select **View Options**.

**Result:** The *View Options* dialog box is displayed.



## Universe tab

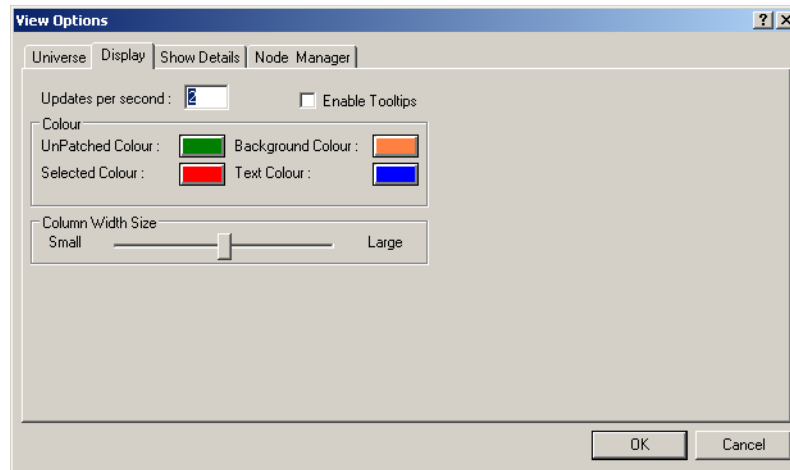
Options on the *Universe* tab affect the binding/unbinding of the patch universe to a specific console or device output.

- *ID*: The name of the patch universe shortcut.
- *Name*: The full name of the patch universe or port ID.
- *Source*: The lighting control console or device and port to which the patch universe is bound.
- *Bind*: Associates the patch universe to a console or device output. This applies only when a console or device has been inserted in the Device Manager.

- *Unbind*: Removes the association of the patch universe with the specified source.  
**Tip:** You can open the *Device Manager* without having to change to Live mode by double-clicking on the *AF* shortcut on the status bar.

## Display tab

Options on the *Display* tab set properties such as the color of a patch universe.



- *Updates per second*: The frequency of updates from the console to the patch universe.
- *Enable Tooltips*: Select this check box to display information about the patch and the fixture when you hover over the start cell.
- *UnPatched Color*: The color of a cell in the patch universe that is not patched.
- *Background Color*: The color of the background of the patch view.
- *Text Color*: The color of the text that is displayed in the patch universe.
- *Selected Color*: The highlighted color of a selected fixture in the patch universe.
- *Column Width Size*: Adjust the slider to resize the patch universe cells to the desired width.

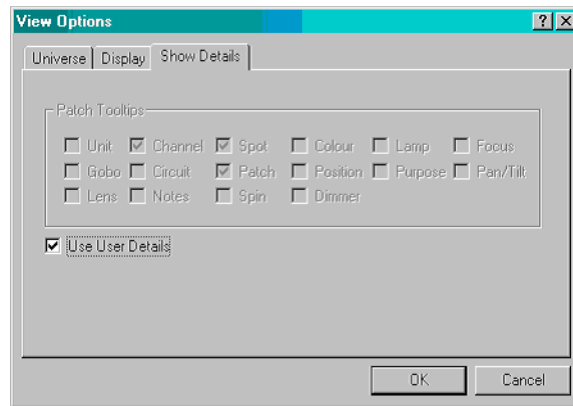
## To change the width of the patch cells

You can adjust the width of the cells in DMX and Motion Control patch universes.

- 1 Right-click anywhere in the patch universe and choose **View Options**.
- 2 Click the Display tab.
- 3 Adjust the Column Width Slider to the preferred size.
- 4 Click *OK*.

## Show Details tab

Options on the *Show Details* tab define the information to be shown in the tooltips when tooltips are enabled.



- *Use User Details:* Select this check box to reference the settings in *User Options* (under the *Options* menu). Click to clear the check box and specify the tooltips that you want displayed.



## Introduction

WYSIWYG sports an “on the fly” error checking engine. This means that as you are putting your lighting design together, WYSIWYG is continually checking for data errors such as multiple dimmers in one circuit, multiple channels in one dimmer, and various missing information.

At any time, you can view the error reports that are available on the *Errors* shortcut bar. Error reports that have errors displayed will have an exclamation mark (!) after their name. You can edit/fix these errors on the spot; editing data on the error reports works the same way as the data spreadsheets explained in the previous section. As soon as you fix an error in an error spreadsheet, the entries are disabled to show that it has been fixed.

An indicator on the status bar signals you when your document contains errors. This feature can be turned on or off. WYSIWYG is also set up to trigger an error notification when errors are detected. Error notifications can be turned on or off.

## Errors

WYSIWYG checks for the following errors:

Error	Definition
Dimmers > Circuit	Fixtures assigned to the same circuit have been assigned different dimmer numbers.
Patches > Circuit	Fixtures assigned to the same circuit have been assigned different patch addresses.
Channels > Circuit	Fixtures assigned to the same circuit have been assigned different channel numbers.
Patches > Dimmer	Fixtures assigned to the same dimmer have been assigned different patch addresses.
Channels > Dimmer	Fixtures assigned to the same dimmer have been assigned different channel numbers.
Channels > Patch	Fixtures assigned to the same patch address have been assigned different channel numbers.
Spots > Patch	Fixtures assigned to the same patch address have been assigned different spot numbers.
Missing Position	The position field is empty.
Missing Unit	The unit field is empty.
Missing Circuit Name	The circuit name field is empty.
Missing Circuit #	The circuit number field is empty.

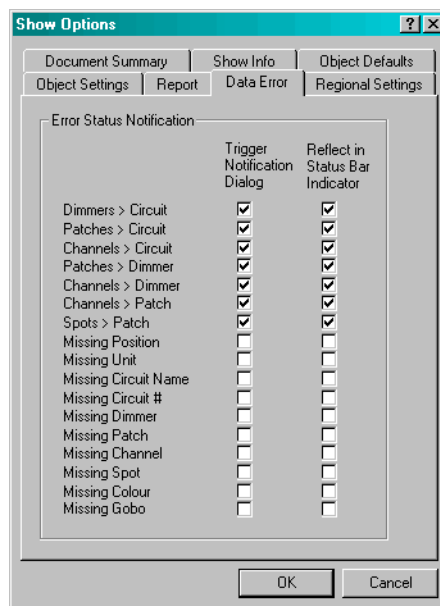
Error	Definition
Missing Dimmer	The dimmer field is empty.
Missing Patch	The patch field is empty.
Missing Channel	The channel field is empty.
Missing Spot	The spot field is empty.
Missing Color	The color field is empty.
Missing Gobo	The gobo field is empty.

## Error notifications

Error notifications occur when WYSIWYG detects an error for which an error notification trigger has been set.

### To set error triggers

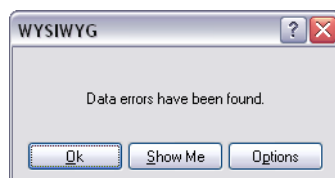
- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **Show Options**.
- 2 Click the *Data Error* tab.



- 3 Select the errors for which you want to trigger an error notification and/or signal.
- 4 Click *OK*.

### To manage error triggers

- 1 When an error notification is triggered, the following dialog box appears:



- 2 From this dialog box, you can perform one of the following actions:



- a. Acknowledge the error, and then click *OK* to close the notification.
- b. Acknowledge the error, and then click *Show Me* to open a new window that automatically navigates you to the appropriate error report.
- c. Acknowledge the error, and then click *Options* to reset the error notification triggers as described above.

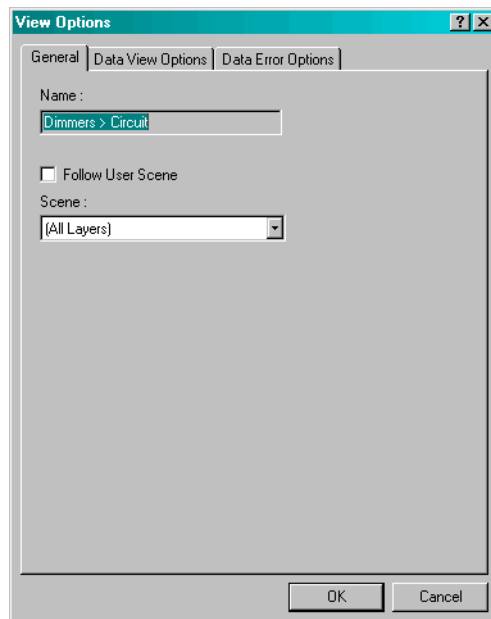
## Error spreadsheet properties

Error spreadsheets may be sorted and modified in a similar manner as other spreadsheet views.

### To modify an error sheet

- 1 Click the *Errors* layout tab.
- 2 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.

**Result:** The *View Options* dialog box is displayed.



For information on the *General* and *Data View Options* tab, refer to “Customizing spreadsheets” on page 220.

On the *Data Error Options* tab, set triggers for the error that is displayed in the *Name* box on the *General* tab. For more information on triggers, refer to “To set error triggers” on page 232.



# Chapter 8

---

## Design mode



Design mode was created to provide lighting designers with an avenue for experimentation. Use it as a troubleshooting tool or as a creative tool to help you come up with cue concepts. In Design mode, you can create static lighting looks using the design tools, and then save and render those looks to output photorealistic pictures.

### In this chapter

Layout tabs	237
Design tools	238
Concepts	244
Palettes	246
Creating looks	247
Rendering	250





## Layout tabs

### Introduction

Beneath the work area in each mode is a series of layout tabs. These layouts provide various configurations of the views you are working with. To change layouts, click the tab that corresponds to the layout you wish to use. The Design mode contains the following layout tabs:

- Wireframe - The work area displays a full-screen wireframe view.
- Quad - The work area is divided into quadrants, three of which can be modified to show plan, front, side, or isometric views. The lower-right quadrant contains a shaded view.
- Shaded - The work area displays a full-screen shaded view.

**Note:** The wireframe views in Data mode are used for fixture selection only. To make any drawing modifications, you must return to CAD mode.



## Design tools

### Introduction

The design tools are available in the Design and Live modes. You must have your venue, scenery and fixtures drawn in order to use the design tools; however, you do not need to have all the data entered for the fixtures in Design mode. Design mode is intended so you do not need channel numbers or a patch. The design tools allow you to create virtual lighting looks without an external control console. You can rough-in static looks and render them for design presentations.

Though the Design mode looks a lot like the CAD mode, you cannot draw anything within the Design mode. If you need to make changes to your drawing, you need to switch over to the CAD mode.

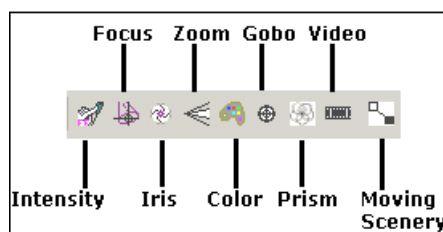
You can see the output of fixtures in the wireframe and shaded views within the Design mode. However, you can only select fixtures within the wireframe views, unless you use Concept shortcuts as discussed in the next section.

The design tools are individual toolbars that enable you to control certain parameters for selected fixtures. Currently there are nine design tools:

- Intensity
- Focus
- Iris
- Zoom
- Color
- Gobo
- Prism
- Video
- Moving Scenery

### To turn the design tools on

- 1 From the **Design** menu, choose the tool name to activate or deactivate the desired design tool.
- 2 You can also toggle the tools on the *Design* toolbar.



**Note:** Design tools have the same properties as other toolbars and can be rearranged on the screen to improve the layout of the working area. You can also resize design tools by stacking them into columns so that they take up less space on the screen.

### To rearrange and resize design tools

- 1 Open the desired design tools using the steps above.
- 2 Click and drag one tool on top of another. When you release the mouse, the selected design tool lines up under the other.
- 3 Repeat step 2 for as many tools as will fit in a column.
- 4 If you overlay tools so that they are not completely visible, click on the triangle in the tools title bar. This expands or contracts the tool's window.
- 5 If you click and drag a tool's title bar off the column, it expands into its own window.

## Using the Design tools

Begin by selecting the desired fixtures.

### To select fixtures

Select a fixture (or fixtures). You can select multiple fixtures by holding the CTRL key while clicking on the fixture symbols. You can also use concepts as described in "Concepts" on page 244.

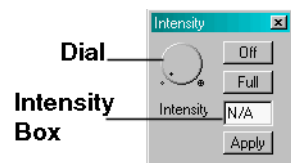
**Tip:** You can also right-click and drag a box around a section of your drawing to select fixtures. This displays a context-sensitive menu displaying all the fixture types contained within that box. You can then easily select "All Mac500," for example.

**Result:** The selected fixtures are highlighted in green.

## Intensity tool

### To use the intensity tool

The intensity tool provides many options for setting intensity levels.



Click the buttons for the extreme settings of intensity: *Full* (100%) and *Off* (0%). Use the dial to achieve any of the settings in between. To use the dial, click and hold the dial while you move the mouse up or down. The chosen intensity level is displayed in the *Intensity* box as you move the mouse.

Alternatively, you can enter a specific percentage by typing the number in the *Intensity* box, and then clicking *Apply*. If multiple fixtures are selected, the intensity level entered is assigned to all fixtures. If you select multiple fixtures that have varying intensity levels, "N/A" appears in the *Intensity* box.

## Zoom and iris tools

### To use the zoom and iris tools

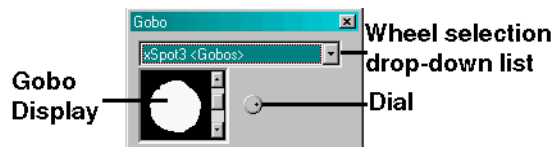
The zoom and iris design tools both work the same way. Use the buttons for the extreme settings of tight or wide. Use the dial to achieve any of the settings in between. To use the dial, click and hold the dial while you move the mouse up or down.



## Gobo and prism tools

### To use the gobo and prism tools

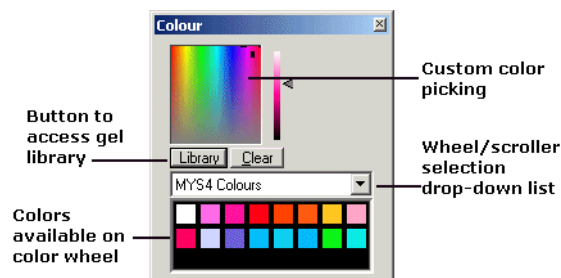
The gobo and prism tools work the same way. Specify the fixture type (if you have more than one selected), or the specific wheel to control (if that fixture type has multiple wheels) using the drop-down menu. Note that only fixtures with gobo or prism parameters appear on the list. Use the gobo/prism wheel scroll arrows to select the desired gobo/prism from the wheel. If no gobo/prism is desired, leave the wheel in the open slot. The dial will rotate this gobo if a rotating gobo is selected.



## Color tool

### To use the color tool

The color tool offers many options for color selection.



Click the custom color box or use the greyscale arrow to adjust your selection. The fixture's output depends on its capabilities. If the fixture has CMY or color mixing capabilities, the output is the exact color you selected. If the fixture is only equipped with a color wheel or a non-mixing scroller, the fixture will output the closest color to that selected, based on the available colors on the wheel.

The same principal works if you select a color from the library by clicking the *Library* button. The wheel/scroller selection drop-down list is as discussed for the gobo wheel. All of the available colors are displayed in the order in which they appear on the wheel or scroll.



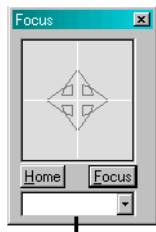
## Focus tool

The focus tool works with fixtures that have variable pan and tilt parameters. You must focus conventional fixtures in CAD mode.

### To use the focus tool

In the focus trackpad, click, hold, and drag the mouse to control the position of the light beam. The *Home* button resets the fixture to pan = 50% and tilt = 50%.

To send the fixture's beam to a specific location, click the *Focus* button, and then click in your wireframe drawing. Use the focus position drop-down list to focus the beams of light toward one of the focus positions that you created in CAD mode.



**Focus position  
drop-down list**

**Note:** The Focus tool does not take into account the current viewing position or fixture settings. In one orientation, dragging to the right on the trackpad results in the beam moving left, but rotating the fixture 180 degrees and dragging to the right should cause the beam to move to the right. This effect occurs with both moving mirror and moving head fixtures.

## Video tool

Streaming video enables you to bring a live or pre-recorded video stream into WYSIWYG and play it back while you set looks in Design mode and while you precue in Live mode. To do so, you must first use CAD mode to draw the screen upon which the video will play.

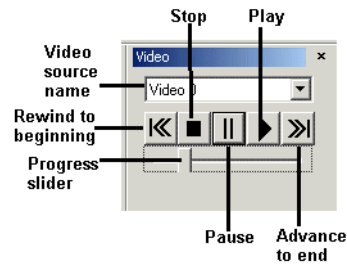
**Note:** You can only incorporate live video if you have WYSIWYG Perform; you cannot select a video from a live capture device if you have WYSIWYG Design.

After you draw the screen and attach the video source, you use the Video designer tool in Design mode to start the playback or stream. You can view the video in any of the shaded views, using the controls on the Video designer tool to pause, fast forward, rewind, or stop the video.

### To use the Video tool

Once you have the video source attached to the screen, you must use the Video designer tool to control it. For more information on attaching the video source to the screen, see "To draw a screen" on page 135 and "To configure a new video source for streaming video" on page 135.

**Note:** If the video control is patched and DMX connected in Live Mode, then you will not be able to control the video using any of the Video designer tool commands in Design mode. Video sources can only be controlled by a designer tool when the DMX source is disconnected; therefore, you must first disconnect the applicable console device from within Live Mode before using any of the Video Designer Tool commands.



- 1 Click the Shaded tab to view the video screen(s) that you have drawn.
- 2 Click the Video designer tool icon to open the tool window.
- 3 From the drop-down list, select the video source.
- 4 Use the controls shown in the graphic above to play, pause, or stop the video. You can also use the slider to manually advance or rewind the video at your desired speed.

**Note:** When you press the Pause button, the frame of the video that is playing at the time is held on the video screen; when you press the Stop button, the video stops playing and the screen goes blank.

## Moving Scenery tool

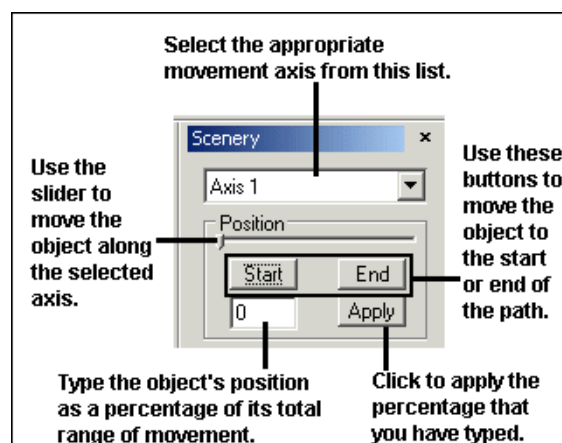
After drawing movement axes and attaching objects to them, you can use the Moving Scenery Designer tool to make the object “move” along each axis.


You can simulate moving scenery by setting up looks containing movement axes in Design mode. Once you create the look and specify its fade time, use the Moving Scenery Designer tool to customize the look by selecting the appropriate movement axis and the object’s starting position on it. Then create a second look, repeating the same procedure to set the object’s starting position on either the same axis, or a different one (if there is more than one axis attached together).

When you switch from one look to the next, you can see the object move from the starting point of the first look, to the starting point of the second look within the time period that you define as the “fade time.”

### To use the Moving Scenery tool

After drawing movement axes and attaching objects to them, you can use the Moving Scenery Designer tool to make the object “move” along each axis. For details on drawing axes, see “Drawing movement axes” on page 136. For information on attaching objects, see “To attach an object to a movement axis” on page 138.



- 1 In Design mode, click the Moving Scenery Designer tool icon to open the tool.   
**Note:** You can also open the tool by clicking **Design > Moving Scenery tool**.
- 2 From the drop-down list, select the appropriate movement axis.
- 3 To move the object on the axis, you have three choices:
  - Use the slider to move the object back and forth along the axis.
  - Click *Start* or *End* to move the object immediately to either the start or end of the movement axis.
  - For very precise positioning, in the box provided, type the object's position as a percentage of its total range of movement. For example, if you want to see the object at the exact half-way mark, type 50 in this box, and then click *Apply*.



## Introduction

Concepts are custom groups of fixtures. You can create concepts in CAD, Data, Design, or Live mode in any view that allows fixture selection.

## Creating concepts

Creating a concept allows you to select a group of fixtures at the same time.

Concept shortcuts also enhance working with design tools in shaded views. Since design tools work with the current fixture selection, opening multiple concept shortcuts allow you to change different groups of fixtures, rather than having to select them individually in the Wireframe view.

**Note:** Concepts are saved on the *Concept* shortcut bar.

### To create a new concept

- 1 Select the fixtures that you want to group. If you are unfamiliar with selecting objects, refer to “Selecting” on page 142.
- 2 Click the Concepts shortcut bar.
- 3 Right-click on the Concept shortcut bar, and then choose **New Concept**.
- 4 Type the name of the concept, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The concept is saved on the Concept shortcut bar.

## Updating concepts

You can modify a Concept shortcut by adding or removing fixtures as required.

### To update concepts

- 1 Select the set of fixtures that you want to include in the concept.
- 2 Right-click on the *Concept* shortcut that you want to update, and then choose **Update**.

**Result:** The *Concept* shortcut is modified to include only the fixtures that you selected.

## Working with concepts

When you select a Concept shortcut, any currently selected objects are deselected, and the Concept set is selected instead.

If you press the CTRL key while selecting concepts, the concept is added to the current selection set.

If you press the CTRL and SHIFT keys while selecting concepts, the concept is removed from the current selection set.

**Notes:**

1. In a Concept shortcut, multi-cell fixtures, such as cyc lights, can be selected either by cell or fixture. If the concept was created in Design mode using cells, the entire fixture is selected in the other modes. If the concept was created using fixtures, all cells are selected when in Design mode.
2. When you replace a multi-cell fixture that is selected by circuit with a different multi-cell fixture that has a different number of circuits, the replacement fixture is selected by fixture and not by circuit.
3. When you delete a fixture, the fixture is removed from all concepts that include that fixture.
4. When you replace a fixture using the **Replace Fixtures** menu option, any concepts referring to that fixture are updated to refer to the fixture replacement.
5. Any fixture added to a document will not initially be part of any concept.



## Introduction

You can create palettes of color to facilitate color selection. A palette is a reference to a specific color and can be used on all color-changing fixtures and scrollers.

## Creating palettes

Creating a Palette shortcut is helpful if you want to save your favourite CMY color mixes for later use.

**Note:** You can create palettes in Design mode only.

### To create a palette

- 1 Select the fixture from which you want to capture the color.  
**Note:** You can create a palette from only one fixture.
- 2 Right-click on the *Palette* shortcut bar, and then choose **New Palette**.
- 3 Type the name of the palette, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The CMY value is saved as a palette in the Palette shortcut bar. This value can be a CMY mix, a color from the color wheel or scroll, or a combination of color sources.

## Updating palettes

You can modify a Palette shortcut by modifying or replacing colors as required.

### To update a palette

- 1 Select the fixtures from which you would like to record the palette.
- 2 Right-click on the *Palette* shortcut that you want to modify, and then choose **Update**.  
**Result:** The Palette shortcut is updated with the new CMY values.

### To apply a palette

Applying a color palette is the equivalent of setting up color parameters for the selected fixtures, except it is much faster.

- 1 Select the fixtures for which you want to assign the specific color value.
- 2 Click on the desired palette shortcut.

**Result:** The fixtures are assigned the recorded copy value. If the fixture has CMY or color mixing capabilities, the output is the exact color that you selected. If the fixture is only equipped with a color wheel or a non-mixing scroller, the fixture outputs the closest color to that selected, based on the available colors on the wheel.



## Creating looks

### Saving lighting looks

Changes that you make with the design tools update the currently selected look. The name of the currently selected look is displayed at the top of the working area. Before making changes, always check that the currently selected look is the one that you want to modify.

#### To create a new lighting look

- 1 In the shortcuts bar, click *Looks*.
- 2 In the Looks shortcut area, right-click, and then select **New Look**.
- 3 In the *Name* box, type the name of the new look.
- 4 In the *Fade time* box, type the fade time in seconds for this look. This is the amount of time that it takes to “fade” to this look when you click on it from another look in the shortcut bar. For more information, see “Cross-fading between lighting looks” below.
- 5 Click *OK*.
- 6 Scroll to the bottom of the *Looks* shortcuts list.
- 7 Click on the shortcut for your new look.
- 8 Use the design tools to create your new lighting look.

**Tip:** To build on an existing look without losing it, clone the look shortcut and work from the copy of the shortcut. For more information on cloning shortcuts, refer to “To clone a shortcut” on page 55.


### Cross-fading between lighting looks

You can use the Looks shortcut bar to quickly set up and run timed transitions between lighting looks without the need of a lighting console. When you create a lighting look, you can specify its fade time in seconds. This is the amount of time that it takes to “fade” to this look when you click on it from another look in the shortcut bar. You can create multiple looks and specify different fade times for each of them.

Once you create the look and specify the fade time, you can use the design tools to customize the look. For example, you can add color, gobos, and intensity to lighting, and set the position of moving lights. When you switch from one look to the next, you can see the movement of the lights from one position to the next, along with any changes you have made between looks, such as color, intensity, and so on.

#### To cross-fade between looks

- 1 In Design mode, in the shortcuts bar, click *Looks*.
- 2 In the Looks shortcut area, right-click, and then select **New Look**.
- 3 In the *Name* box, type the name of the new look.
- 4 In the *Fade time* box, type the fade time in seconds for this look.
- 5 Click *OK*.
- 6 Scroll to the bottom of the *Looks* shortcuts list.

- 7 Click on the shortcut for your new look.
- 8 Use the design tools to create your new lighting look. You can set the color, intensity, zoom, iris, and add gobos. If you are using moving lights, you can also set the position of the lights.
- 9 To create the next look, in the Looks shortcut area, right-click, and then select **New Look**.
- 10 In the *Name* box, type the name of the new look.
- 11 In the *Fade time* box, type the fade time in seconds for this look.
- 12 Click *OK*.
- 13 Scroll to the bottom of the *Looks* shortcuts list.
- 14 Click on the shortcut for your new look.
- 15 Use the design tools to create your new lighting look. You can set the color, intensity, zoom, iris, and add gobos. If you are using moving lights, you can also set the position of the lights.
- 16 Ensure that the *Fade looks* button is enabled so the look fades instead of jumping directly to the next look. 

**Tip:** If the button is not enabled, then you can “jump” from one look to the next by clicking the look shortcuts in the shortcut bar. Even if the button is enabled, you can always jump to the next look by right-clicking the look shortcut, and selecting **Jump to**.
- 17 To watch the “fade” from the first look to the second look, click the shortcut for the second look. The image fades over the period of time that you specified for the second look.
 

**Tips:**

  - For a more realistic view of the fading between looks, click the *Shaded* tab.
  - To jump directly to a specific look, right-click the look, and then select **Jump to**.

## Viewing moving scenery

You can use the Looks shortcut bar to quickly set up and run timed transitions between looks to simulate moving scenery.

When you create a look, you can specify its fade time in seconds. This is the amount of time that it takes to “fade” to this look when you click on it from another look in the shortcut bar. You can create multiple looks and specify different fade times for each of them.

Just as you can specify the fade time to watch the transition between lighting looks, so too can you use the fade time to simulate moving scenery. In the latter case, however, your Look must contain at least one movement axis with at least one object attached to it.

**Note:** You can also combine Looks to simulate both moving lights and moving scenery in one “fade”.


Once you create the look and specify its fade time, use the Moving Scenery Designer tool to customize the look by selecting the appropriate movement axis and the object's starting position on it. Then create a second look, repeating the same procedure to set the object's starting position on either the same axis, or a different one (if there is more than one axis attached together).

When you switch from one look to the next, you can see the object move from the starting point of the first look, to the starting point of the second look.




## To view moving scenery

**Note:** Before you perform this procedure, you must have drawn at least one movement axis and attached at least one object to it. For details, see “Drawing movement axes” on page 136.

- 1 In Design mode, in the shortcuts bar, click *Looks*.
- 2 In the Looks shortcut area, right-click, and then select **New Look**.
- 3 In the *Name* box, type the name of the new look.
- 4 In the *Fade time* box, type the fade time in seconds for this look.
- 5 Click *OK*.
- 6 Scroll to the bottom of the *Looks* shortcuts list.
- 7 Click on the shortcut for your new look.
- 8 Click the Moving Scenery Designer Tool icon ()
- 9 From the drop-down list in the Scenery window, select the appropriate movement axis.
- 10 Click the slider to advance the object to the position where you want it to start on the selected axis.

**Note:** You can also use the *Start* box to type the object's position as a percentage of its full range of movement. For example, to show the object at the exact half-way mark on the movement axis, type 50.

- 11 To create the next look, in the Looks shortcut area, right-click, and then select **New Look**.
- 12 In the *Name* box, type the name of the new look.
- 13 In the *Fade time* box, type the fade time in seconds for this look.
- 14 Click *OK*.
- 15 Scroll to the bottom of the *Looks* shortcuts list.
- 16 Click on the shortcut for your new look.
- 17 From the drop-down list in the Scenery window, select the appropriate movement axis.
- 18 Click the slider to advance the object to the position where you want it to start on the selected axis.
- 19 Ensure that the *Fade looks* button is enabled so the look fades instead of jumping directly to the next look. 

**Tip:** If the button is not enabled, then you can “jump” from one look to the next by clicking the look shortcuts in the shortcut bar. Even if the button is enabled, you can always jump to the next look by right-clicking the look shortcut, and selecting **Jump to**.

- 20 To watch the “fade” from the first look to the second look, click the shortcut for the second look. The object moves from the starting point of the first look to the starting point of the second look over the period of time that you specified as the fade time for the second look.

### Tips:

- For a more realistic view of the fading between looks, click the *Shaded* tab.
- To jump directly to a specific look, right-click the look, and then select **Jump to**.
- For details on controlling the object's movement with a console device, such as the Mini Console, see “To control a DMX patched movement axis with a console” on page 317.



## Introduction

In WYSIWYG, you can render lighting looks to produce high quality images of your set and lighting. Rendering uses a full range of effects, including depth of field, motion blur, soft shadows, and antialiasing settings to produce a photorealistic image. An easy-to-use Render Wizard provides interactive editing and advanced visual effects.

### To render a lighting look

- 1 In the working area of the screen, display the lighting look that you want to render.
- 2 From the **Design** menu, choose **Render**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Render Wizard* tool in the *Design* toolbar.



**Result:** The Render Wizard opens and guides you through a series of options. Click *Next* and *Back* to navigate through the Render Wizard.

- 3 Click *Finish*.

**Result:** WYSIWYG generates the rendering of your lighting look or cue. If the rendering is saved internally, it is available as an image in Presentation mode.

Each of the steps prompts you to set a number of related options. When you are finished setting the options on one page, click *Next* to proceed to the next step. Click *Finish* to complete the rendering.

**Note:** If you click *Back* to change an option in a previous step, you can click *Finish* without having to go through each of the steps again.

During any step (up to step 6), you can click on the image and change the perspective (using the arrow, CTRL, and PAGE UP/PAGE DOWN keys or the mouse). The Render Wizard calculates the rendering based on the state of the image composition and light settings at the moment when you click *Finish*.

## Saving render settings

You can save the options that you set in the Render Wizard as a shortcut for quick access to these settings at a future time. There are two ways of saving a Render shortcut:

- from the Render Wizard
- from the Render shortcut bar, in a similar manner as other shortcuts

The Render shortcut bar is prepopulated with two shortcuts: Quick Render and Full Render. Quick Render shortcuts provide settings for a small, lower-quality render, while Full Render shortcuts provide settings for a larger, high-quality rendering.

### To create a shortcut from the Render Wizard

- 1 From the **Design** menu, choose **Render**.
- 2 While working through the steps in the Render Wizard, you can, at any time, click *Add Shortcut* to save the current settings as a shortcut.
- 3 Type a name for the shortcut.

- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The shortcut is added to the Render shortcut bar.

### To create a shortcut from the Render shortcut bar

- 1 Right-click in the open space on the Render shortcut bar, and then choose **New Render**.
- 2 Type a name for the new render.
- 3 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The Render shortcut is saved on the Render shortcut bar. The shortcut is preconfigured with the default values for each of the eight steps. These defaults are the same values that are used when you choose **Render** from the menu bar or the toolbar.

### To modify a Render shortcut

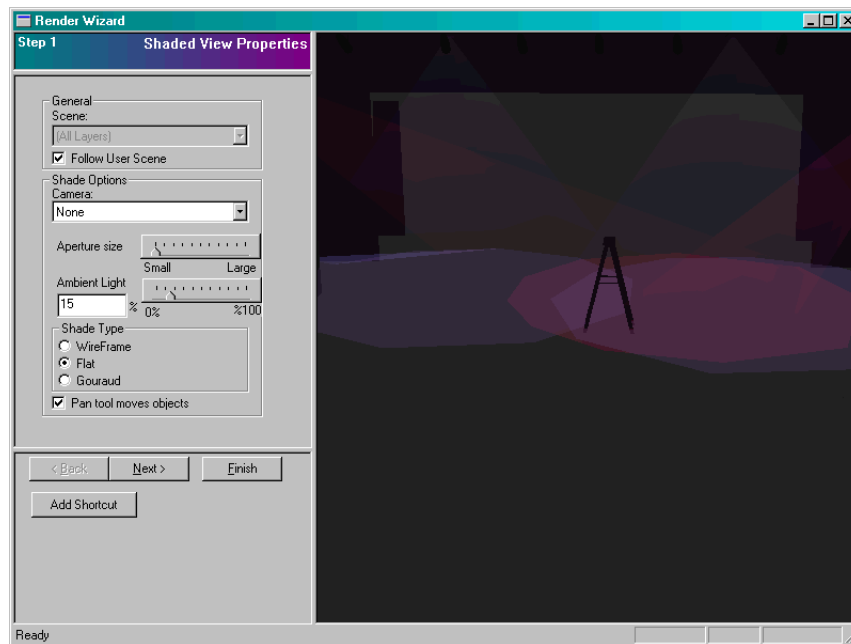
- 1 Double-click on the Render shortcut that you want to modify.

**Result:** The Render Wizard opens, with the values that are saved in the shortcut.

- 2 Modify the options as required.

**Result:** The settings are recorded in the shortcut and are available the next time that you select the shortcut.

#### Step 1 - Shaded View Properties



Options in Step 1 affect the composition of your image.

- a. *Scene*: Select a scene for the rendering. Scenes are groupings of layers used to organize a plot. For more information on scenes, refer to “Scenes” on page 160.

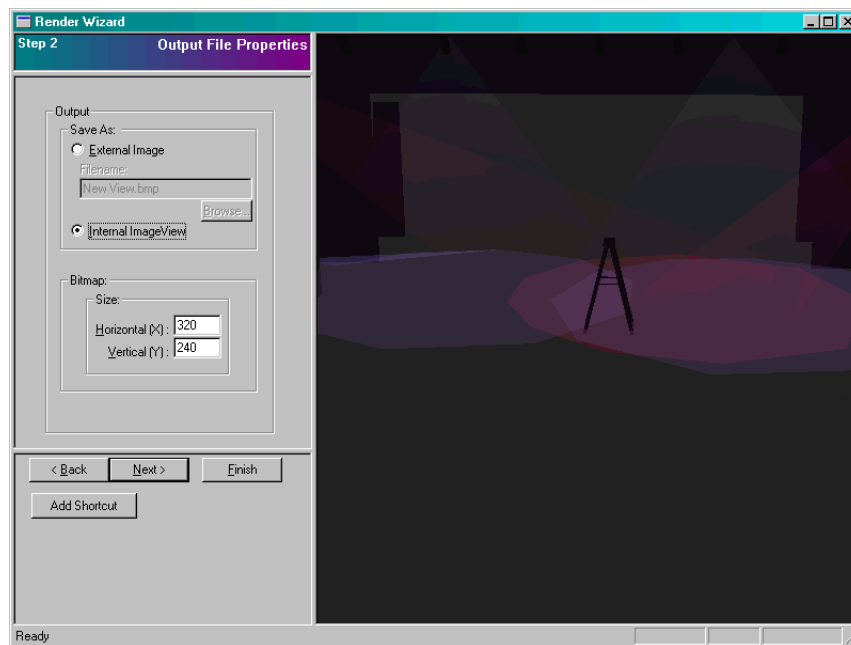
- b. *Camera*: Select the camera for the rendering. Cameras are set up in CAD mode. For more information on cameras, refer to “Drawing cameras” on page 139.

If you select a camera, you can adjust its aperture. This adjustment changes the depth of field of the final image. The larger the aperture, the “fuzzier” the rendering. The focus point is always the target of the camera.

*Camera target*: By default, the target is visible. This is to aid in the composition of the image. It will not, however, be visible in your final rendering. To turn the target off (that is, set to not visible), right-click in the preview pane, and then choose *View Options*. For more information on shaded views, refer to “Modifying shaded views” on page 71.

- c. *Ambient Light*: Use the slider to set the ambient light level. This adjusts the overall light level, where 0% is complete black and 100% is a bright room. This does not affect the intensity of the fixtures in your lighting look.
- d. *Shade Type*: Shade type does not affect the outcome of your rendering. Rather, it allows you to set your beam quality preference as you work through the Render Wizard.
- e. *Pan tool moves objects*: The Pan tool does not affect the outcome of your rendering. Rather the tool rotates the model on the target (if checked) or rotates the camera around the target (if unchecked). Both settings help you to compose your image.

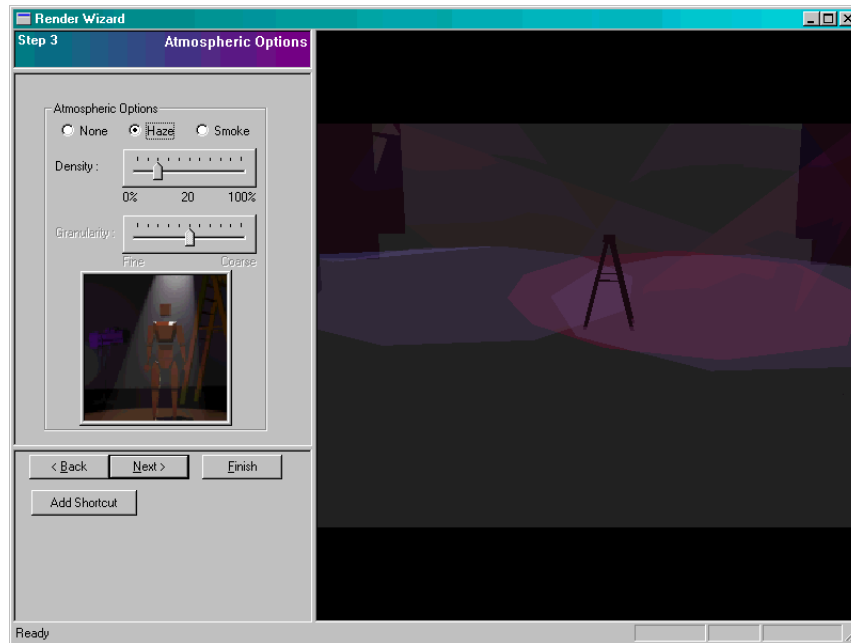
## Step 2 - Output File Properties



Options in Step 2 affect where your final rendering is stored.

- a. *Save as*: Saves the final rendering as an external or an internal image. If saved as an external image, the result is stored on a drive as a bitmap (.bmp), jpeg (.jpg), or Targa file. Click *Browse* to specify the file name and format. If saved as an internal image, the result is stored as an image in Presentation mode.
- b. *Bitmap*: Type a value in pixels for the horizontal and vertical dimensions of the final image.

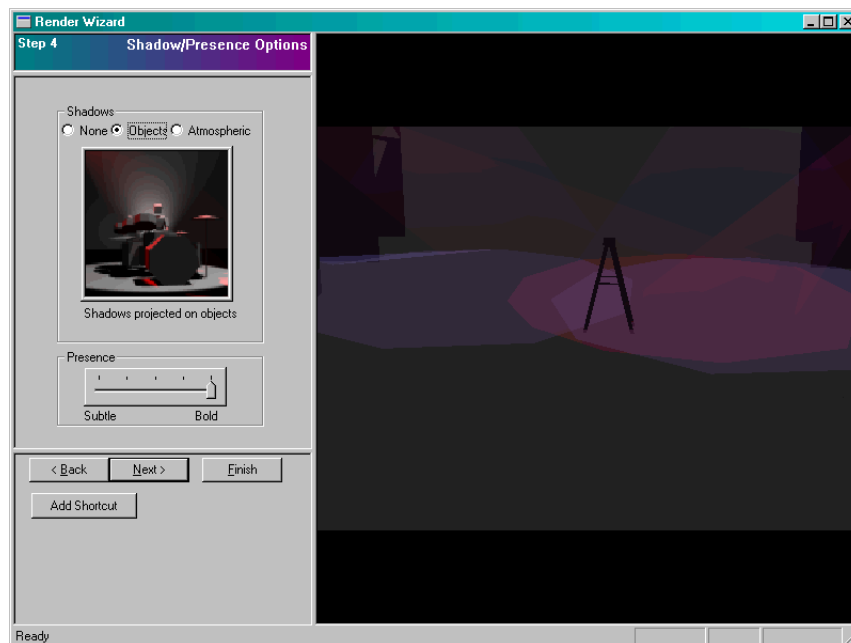
### Step 3 - Atmospheric Options



Options in Step 3 affect the atmospheric conditions in your rendering.

- a. *Atmospheric Options*: The options that you set here affect the atmospheric conditions that are visible in your final rendering. To simulate atmospheric dust or fog, select *Haze*. For additional opacity, select *Smoke*.
- b. *Density*: Use the slider to set the visibility of the haze particles. A setting of 0% indicates that the particles cannot be seen.
- c. *Granularity*: Use the slider to set the granularity of the smoke. This setting affects how fine smoke particles are. This option is available only if you choose *Smoke* under Atmospheric Options.

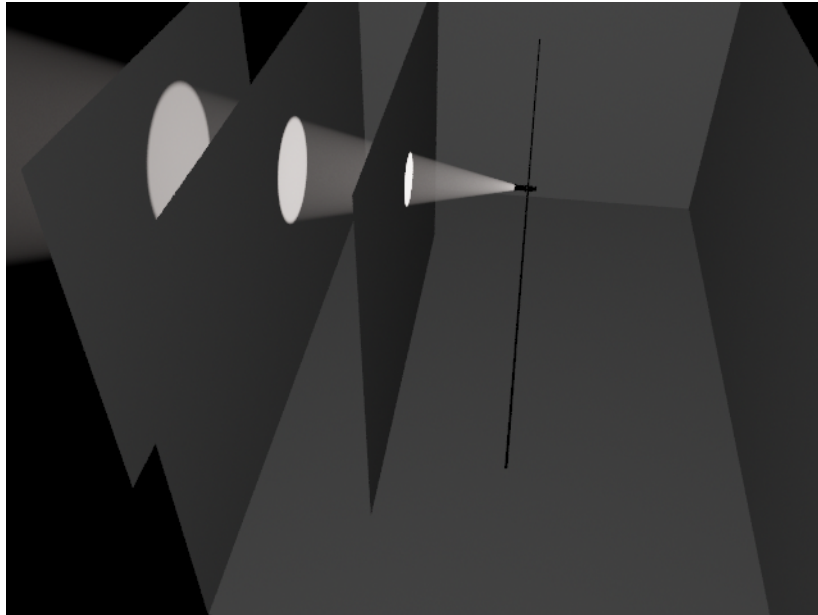
### Step 4 - Shadow/Presence Options



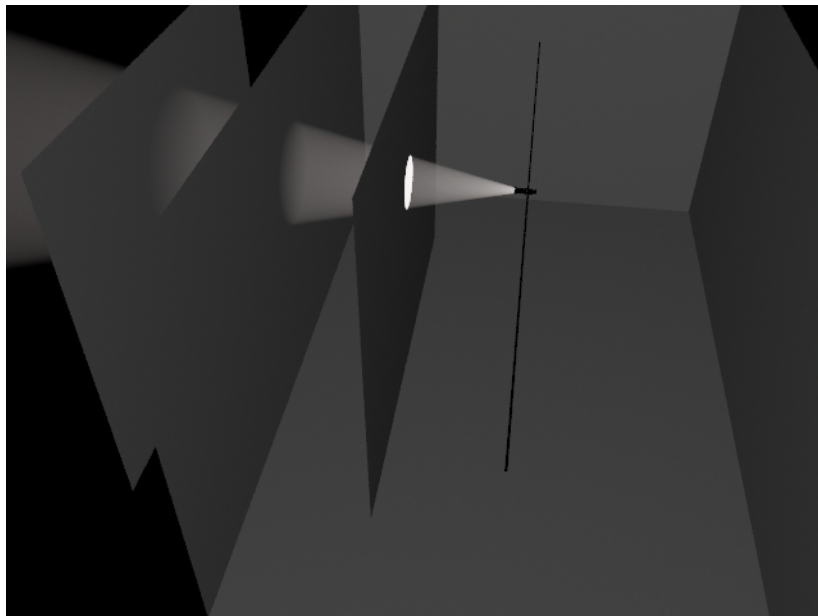
Options in Step 4 affect the projection of shadows in your rendering.

- a. *Shadows*: Select how you want shadows to be projected in the final rendering. If you choose *None*, then no shadows are calculated by WYSIWYG; that is,

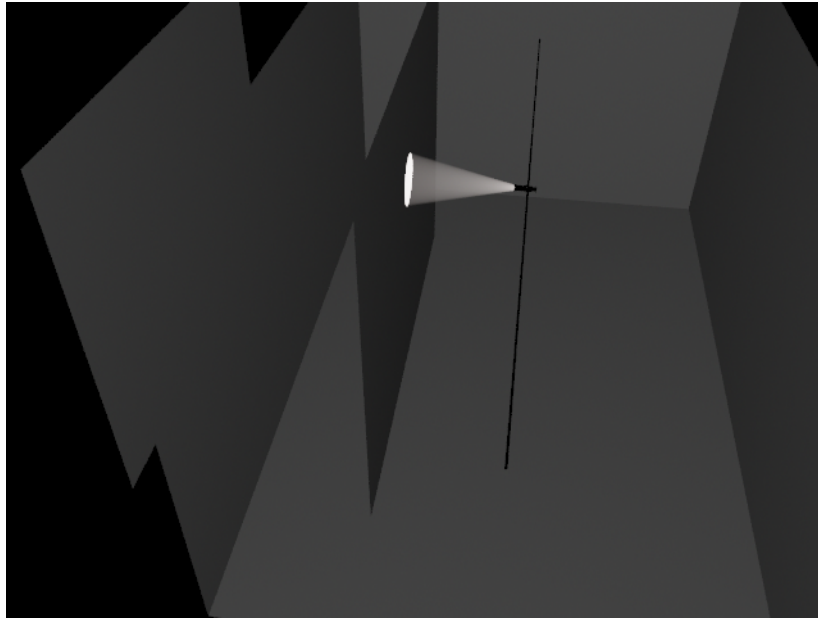
objects in the path of the light beam do not create shadows. Instead, all objects in the path of the virtual beam are illuminated, even if an object would normally block the beam from reaching another. As illustrated in the rendering below, all three surfaces are illuminated and the beam continues into infinity.



To calculate which objects the beam of light will hit and which objects it will not hit, select *Objects*. Objects in the path of the virtual beam will not be illuminated by the beam if the beam has already been blocked by another object. However, WYSIWYG still does not calculate where the beam stops. As illustrated in the rendering below, the first surface is illuminated, but the beam is still continuing into infinity.

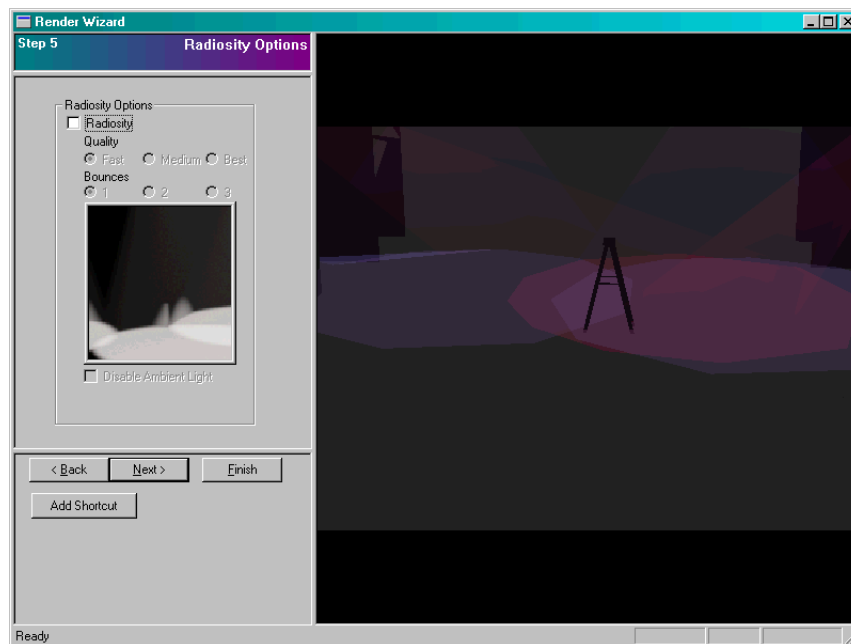


Select *Atmospheric* to calculate which objects the beam of light will hit and where the beam of light will end. This is a true representation of how light behaves. As illustrated in the rendering below, the first surface is illuminated and the beam also stops there.



- b. *Presence*: Use the Presence slider to change the relative brightness of fixture beams. When set to *Subtle*, WYSIWYG accounts for all variations in lamp output, including gel transmission, color temperature, fixture efficiency, and lamp. When set to *Bold*, all fixture beams are rendered at the same general intensity.

### Step 5 - Radiosity Options

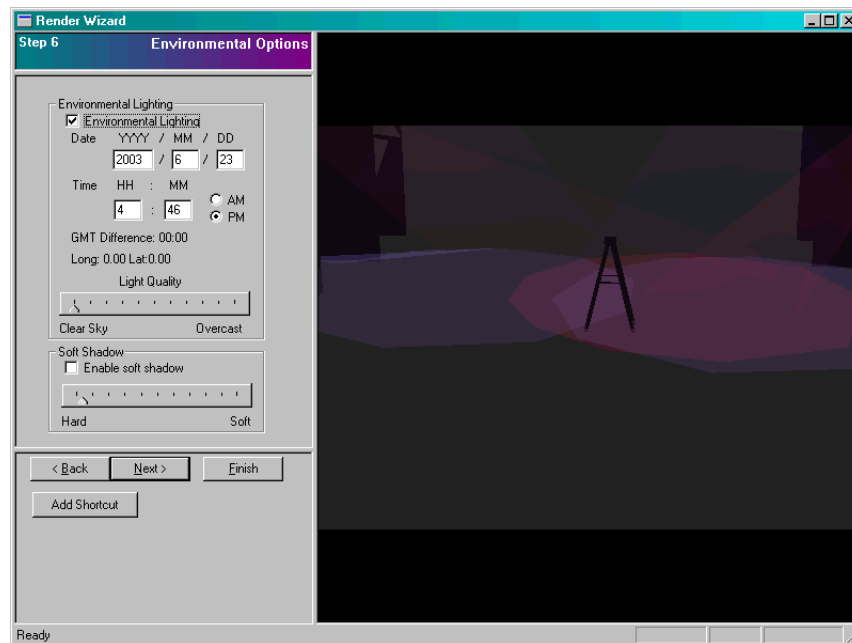


Options in Step 5 affect the radiosity level. Radiosity is defined as the combined processes of emission, transmission, and absorption of rays or reflecting beams of light. When using Radiosity, it is not necessary to use ambient lighting.

- a. *Radiosity*. To generate a rendering that uses radiosity, select the *Radiosity* check box, and then choose from the available radiosity options. *Fast* radiosity results in a rendering with constant, flat lighting. Each subsequent option shows more calculated lighting. The number of bounces determines how many levels of reflection are permitted.

- b. *Disable Ambient Light*: Select the *Disable Ambient Light* check box to ignore the ambient light settings from step 1.

## Step 6 - Environmental Options



Options in Step 6 affect the presence and quality of environmental or outdoor lighting. Note that for environmental lighting to have an effect, your show must not be contained within a venue.

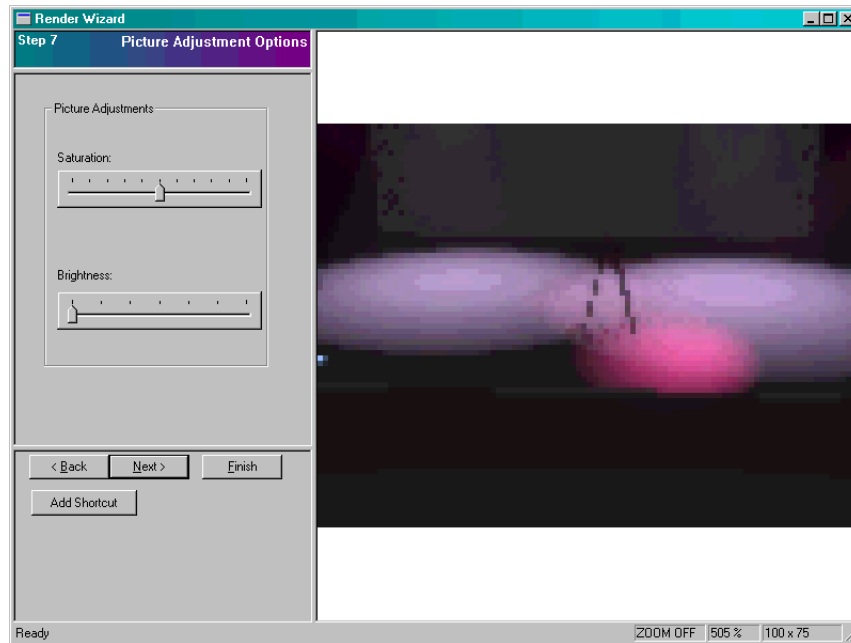
- a. *Environmental Lighting*: To generate a rendering that considers outdoor lighting conditions, select the *Environmental Lighting* check box.
- b. *Date and Time*: The date and time of the rendering determines the position of the sun and/or moon and the resulting amount of light available. The position of the sun is also determined by the geographic settings that are configured in Show Options and the north direction that is set in CAD mode. For more information on regional settings, refer to "Regional settings tab" on page 92. For more information on setting the direction that is north, refer to "Drawing a compass" on page 140.
- c. *Light Quality*: The amount of light available determines the brightness of the resulting rendering. Use the *Light Quality* slider to adjust the quality of light.
- d. *Soft Shadow*: Click the *Enable soft shadow* check box, and then use the slider to set the softness of shadows that are created by sunlight. The softer the shadow, the less sharp the resulting shadow.

## PREVIEW

When you click *Next* in Step 6, the Render Wizard calculates a small preview of the rendering and shows it in the right-hand view. It will always zoom to fit the full size of the rendered view first, but you can click in the view and zoom in and out using the PAGE UP/PAGE DOWN keys. Use the preview to fix any glaring errors in your rendering before you continue on to the final rendering.



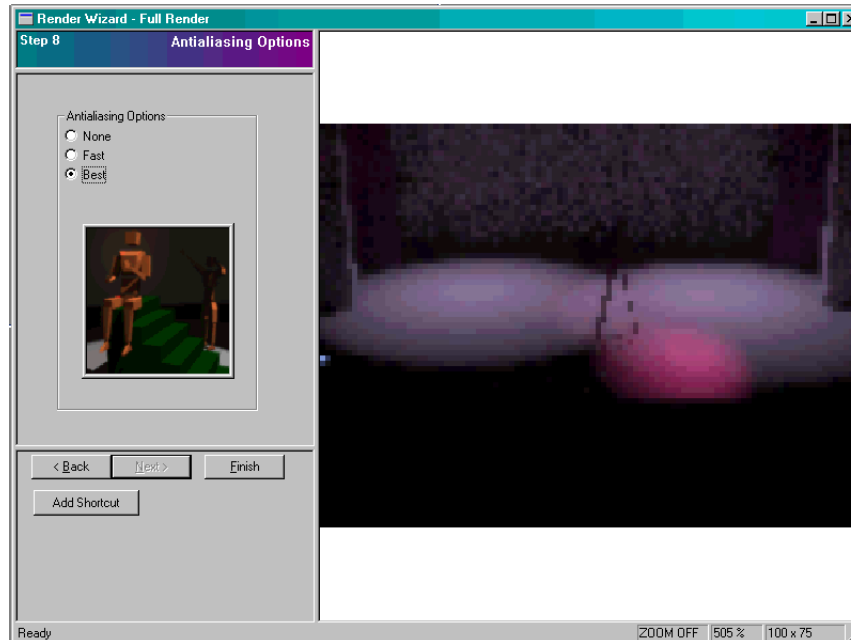
## Step 7 - Picture Adjustment Options



Options in Step 7 affect the quality of your final image.

- a. *Saturation*: This is comparable to the exposure on a camera; it determines which pixels are represented as pure white.
- b. *Brightness*: This slider adjusts all pixels equally.

## Step 8- Antialiasing Options



Options in Step 8 affect the antialiasing settings. Antialiasing is a method of smoothing out and sharpening rough or jagged edges of images to produce a more polished result. This method subsamples the pixel area and averages the results of neighboring samples to reduce the areas of high contrast (edges).

- a. *Antialiasing Options*: Choose how you want edges to appear in your final rendering. The *Fast* method samples the pixels quickly, but does not produce the highest quality.

When you click *Finish*, the real rendering takes place. Based on the options that you selected and the complexity of the scenery and lighting, it may take some time to compute. You can minimize the window and continue working on other parts of your document as it renders. You can use the arrow keys, PAGE UP/PAGE DOWN, mouse or scroll bars to explore the picture as it is being produced. The final image is saved to the destination you specified in step 2. A sample of a final rendered image is shown below.

**Tips:**

- Set up your shot accurately using a camera.
- You can always click and drag in the right-hand view to adjust your shot before you render.
- Make sure you use the appropriate aspect ratio (height vs. width) for the output device that you will be using to present the pictures. For example, TV is 4x3 (normally 640x480), HDTV is 16x9.

# Chapter 9

---

## Presentation mode



Presentation (Pres) mode contains all the necessary tools for creating professional printouts of your show document, including reports, plots, and images.

### In this chapter

Layout tabs	261
Reports	262
New Plots	268
Layouts	284
Images	307
Worksheets	308
Pipe tapes	309





# Layout tabs

## Introduction

Beneath the work area in each mode is a series of layout tabs. These tabs provide various configurations of the views that you are working with. To change layouts, click the tab that corresponds to the layout that you want to use. Presentation mode contains the following layout tabs:

- Reports - The work area displays reports formatted for printing.
- New Plots - The work area displays plots
- Layouts - The work area displays layouts formatted for printing.
- Images - The work area displays bitmap or jpeg images that are stored with the show file.
- Worksheet - The work area contains spreadsheets that the user can edit.



## Introduction

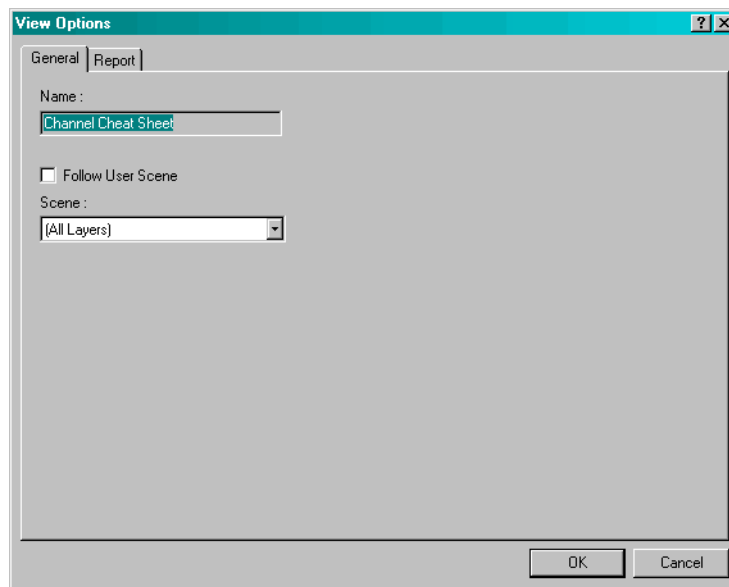
The Reports layout tab opens a series of pre-formatted reports that are generated by WYSIWYG, containing all data entered in CAD and Data modes. These reports are available for you to use as is, or to modify to suit your needs. Unlike the spreadsheets in Data mode, you cannot edit fixture data here. Reports are designed to be printed documents. You can, however, modify their setup and layout.

## Working with reports

### To modify a report

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.

**Result:** The *View Options* window is displayed.



**Tip:** You can use the *View Options* tool on the *Standard* toolbar.



- 2 Modify options as desired.
- 3 Click *OK*.

### General tab

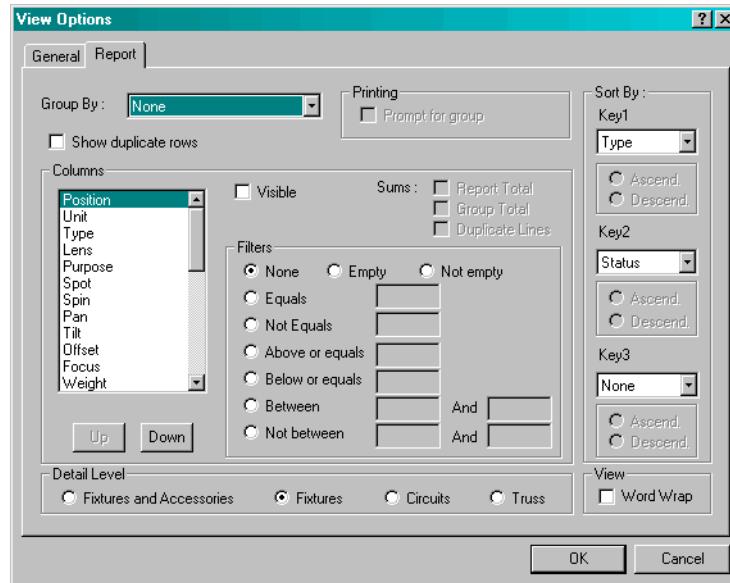
Options on the *General* tab affect the scene that is displayed in the report.

- **Follow User Scene:** Select this check box to filter the report according to the current scene. The current scene is displayed in the drop-down list on the *Scene* toolbar and in the *Scene Database* dialog box (from the **File** menu, choose **Scenes**). To filter your show information based on the scene selected, click to clear the check box, and then select the desired scene from the *Scene* drop-down list. Only fixtures on the active layers (or layers in the scene) are displayed in the report.

**Tip:** You can change the current scene at any time by using either the *Scene* toolbar or the *Scene Database* dialog box. For more information on scenes, refer to "Scenes" on page 160.

## Report tab

Options on the *Report* tab affect the appearance of the report.



- **Group By:** Select a data field for grouping the data. These groups appear as separate tabs/pages at the bottom of a report. In the case of an Instrument Schedule, fixtures are grouped by hanging position. Each position appears on a separate page.
- **Columns:** Displays the columns available for inclusion or exclusion in a report. You can display the columns in any order by arranging the order in this list. The top of the list represents the left-hand column on the page and the bottom of the list represents the right-hand column. To move a column up or down in the list, click its name, and then use the *Up* and *Down* buttons.
 

**Note:** There is a special column in the *Columns* list called *Count*. The *Count* column displays the total of all fixtures that meet the unique requirements of all the filters applied to all columns.
- **Filters:** Contains settings for the column that you selected from the *Columns* list. You can use filters to extract specific information from reports. For example, you can create a report that displays all the fixtures that have notes. To do so, select the *Notes* column and the *Visible* check box, and then select the filter *Not Empty*. You will also have to make *Position*, *Unit*, and *Channel* visible so that you know which fixtures have these notes.
- **Sums:** After you select either the *Count* or *Status* column from the list, select one of the following types of sums to be displayed on the report:
  - **Report Total:** Select if you want to include the total for the report.
  - **Group Total:** Select if you want to report totals for all groups.
  - **Duplicate Lines:** (Only available if you have selected the *Status* column.) Select if you want to report the total of all duplicate lines.
- **Sort By:** Contains the settings for how the report will be sorted. The keys sort fixtures in alphabetical or numeric order. When fixtures have the same value in the first sort key, the report is then sorted by the values of the second sort key, and so on for the third sort key. For example, the standard Instrument Schedule sorts fixtures by position as *Key 1*, and unit number as *Key 2*. When a column is selected as a key, the visible option will be checked and greyed out. Columns that are sort keys must be visible.
- **Detail Level:** Specify how many rows each fixture spans. For example, if you select *Fixtures*, a three-cell cyc light will take up one row. If you select *Circuits*, that same fixture will take up three rows, one for each cell/circuit. To issue a report for truss, select *Truss* in the *Detail Level* box.

- **Word Wrap:** Select if you want to see all the text on a line.

### To create a new report

- 1 Click the *Reports* shortcut tab.
- 2 Right-click in the reports shortcut area, and then choose **New Report**.
- 3 Type the name of your new report.
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** Your report shortcut is placed at the bottom of the list.

**Tip:** It is recommended that you clone an existing report and modify it rather than creating a new report.

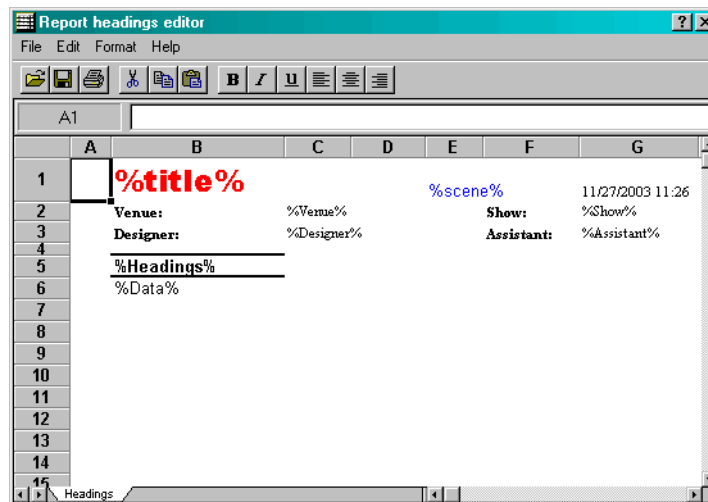
## Redesigning headings

You can customize the fonts, styles, and layouts used in the headings and text of your reports. These settings can be applied to the headings of all reports in your document as desired.

### To change the heading format

- 1 Right-click the report and choose **Redesign headings**.

**Result:** The *Report headings editor* dialog box is displayed, showing the headings, variables, and a new menu and toolbar for formatting text.



- 2 From the **Format** menu, use the alignment, font, border, edit, and color controls to customize the heading text.
- 3 Modify or add variables as required.
- 4 Save your changes and close the window.

**Result:** You are prompted to apply the headings to all the reports in the document.

- 5 Click *Yes* to indicate that all reports will be modified. Click *No* to change only the chosen report.



## Using variables in reports

Variables can be used in reports and worksheets to ensure that the same type of information is displayed in each report. These variables are found in the report headings of each report and can be globally shared among all the reports in your document.

The variables you can use and the information they store are described in the following table.

Variable	Definition	Source
%Title%	The name of the report.	The name of the report as defined in the shortcut bar (for example, <i>Instrument Count</i> ).
%Venue%	The venue for the show.	The venue defined on the <i>Show Info</i> tab in <i>Show Options</i> . For more information on this tab, refer to "Show information" on page 267.
%Designer%	The lighting designer for the show.	The designer defined on the <i>Show Info</i> tab in <i>Show Options</i> . For more information on this tab, refer to "Show information" on page 267.
%Show%	The name of the show.	The show defined on the <i>Show Info</i> tab in <i>Show Options</i> . For more information on this tab, refer to "Show information" on page 267.
%Assistant%	The assistant lighting designer for the show.	The assistant defined on the <i>Show Info</i> tab in <i>Show Options</i> . For more information on this tab, refer to "Show information" on page 267.
%Headings%	The column headings that comprise the report.	The columns defined on the <i>Report</i> tab in <i>View Options</i> . For more information on choosing these columns, refer to "Report tab" on page 263.
%Data%	The data that comprises the report.	Information that is available in Data mode.
%Scene%	The scene chosen for the report.	The Scene defined on the <i>General</i> tab in <i>View Options</i> .
%Group%	The name of the group.	The <i>Group By</i> parameter chosen on the <i>Report</i> tab in <i>View Options</i> . For more information on this option, refer to "Report tab" on page 263.  You should include this variable when <i>Group By</i> has been enabled for a report so that the group name is displayed on the report pages.

Variable	Definition	Source
%File%	The name of your WYSIWYG file.	The name you chose when saving your document using either the <b>Save</b> or <b>Save As</b> command from the <b>File</b> menu. The name of your WYSIWYG file is displayed at the top left of the WYSIWYG window. For more information on setting the name of your file, refer to "File menu" on page 77.
=NOW()	The current date and time.	System settings in Windows.

**Note:** If you will be applying the report heading globally, it is important that you include the Group variable in the heading. This ensures that the page numbers are not lost in those reports in which *Group By* has been enabled. Those reports that are not "grouped by" will be unaffected and will display a blank cell.

## Saving heading files

Heading files are separate from the reports themselves and can be saved outside of the show document in Excel format. This saved heading file can in turn be applied globally to all reports. This is a great tool for using the same header across multiple documents.

### To save a heading file

- 1 Redesign the headings of the selected report as described above.
- 2 Before closing the *Report Headings Editor*, from the **File** menu choose **Save as**.
- 3 In the *File Name* box, type a name for the Excel format heading file.
- 4 Click *Save*.
- 5 Close the *Report Headings Editor*.  
**Result:** The heading file is saved in the WYSIWYG library folder unless otherwise specified.
- 6 You are prompted to load the new heading file name. Click *Yes*.
- 7 You are prompted to apply the headings to all the reports in the document. Click *Yes* to indicate that all reports will be modified. Click *No* to change only the chosen report.

**Note:** Since these files are saved outside of the show document, they can be applied to reports in any WYSIWYG show files.

### To apply a heading file

- 1 Select the report for which you want to apply the heading file.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Redesign headings**.  
**Result:** The *Report Headings Editor* opens.
- 3 From the **File** menu, choose **Open**.  
**Result:** You are prompted to save changes.
- 4 Click *No*.  
**Result:** The *Load heading file* dialog box is displayed.
- 5 Browse to find the heading file that you want to apply.

- 6 Click *Open*.  
**Result:** The saved heading file is applied.
- 7 Save and close the *Report Headings Editor*.
- 8 You are prompted to load the new heading file name. Click *Yes*.
- 9 You are prompted to apply the headings to all the reports in the document. Click *Yes* to apply the change to all reports. Click *No* to change only the chosen report.

## Column widths

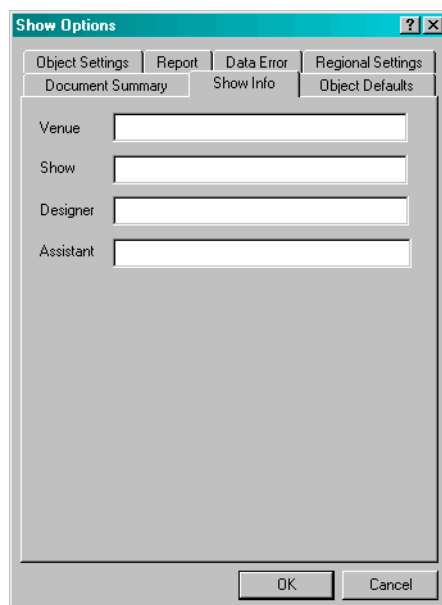
You can change the column widths in the report. A double-headed arrow appears when you float the cursor between the column separations at the top of the report. Double-click the column headings to have the column resize to fit (auto-fit) the contents.

## Show information

The edit fields in the show info window are venue, show, designer, and assistant. The entries in these fields appear in the headings of all reports and in the WYSIWYG default title block (for plots).

### To input show info

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **Show Options**.
- 2 Click the *Show Info* tab.



- 3 Type all the pertinent information in the boxes.
- 4 Click *OK*.  
**Result:** All reports are updated.



## New Plots

### Introduction

New Plots views were introduced so that you could more effectively manipulate a drawing developed in CAD mode to create a lighting plot or “schematic” for printing.

In the New Plots view you can:

- manipulate the objects in a plot without affecting the objects in the original CAD drawing/model.
- notate your plot using objects such as circles, lines, and text labels.
- rotate the position of vertical hang structures to better illustrate mounted fixtures.
- move, rotate, or manipulate the layout of fixture attributes easily and quickly.

### Working in the New Plots view

Working in a New Plots view is similar in some respects to working with a drawing in a CAD wireframe view. You can use your keyboard and mouse to navigate around the plot easily and quickly. A command line interface is available to help you when entering coordinates.

**Note:** Changes made to a drawing in CAD mode are not automatically reflected in the New Plots view. You must update plots manually to see the changes. For details, see “Updating plots” on page 269.

#### Keyboard and mouse control

Navigating in a New Plots view is similar to navigating in CAD mode. The arrow keys are available to help you move in the direction that is noted on the key. As well, scroll bars along the side and bottom of the window will move you horizontally and vertically along the window.

For a complete list of the navigation tools that are available, refer to “Keyboard and mouse control” on page 66.

#### Command line

The ComEdit toolbar is available to help you enter coordinates when placing objects such as lines in a New Plots view. For more information on command line, refer to “Command line” on page 105.

### Creating a new plot

Plots are 2D schematics of your CAD model for printout. You can generate as many plots as you like. Once generated, the “view type” of the New Plot or schematic is set and cannot be changed. There are five plot types available.

Plot Type	Description
Plan Plot	Generates the schematic from above looking down.

Plot Type	Description
Left Section Plot	Generates the schematic looking from the left side through the venue.
Right Section Plot	Generates the schematic looking from the right side through the venue.
Front Elevation Plot	Generates the schematic looking from the front side through the venue.
Back Elevation Plot	Generates the schematic looking from the back side through the venue.

### To create a new plot type

- 1 Click the *New Plots* shortcut tab.
- 2 Right-click in the *New Plots* shortcut area and choose the type of plot that you want to create.
- 3 Type the name of the plot.
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The type of plot that you chose is created and a shortcut to your new plot is added to the New Plots shortcut bar. For information on working with shortcuts, refer to “Working with shortcuts” on page 54.

**Note:** The plot is created with a specific set of default properties, but you can modify these settings as required. For more information on the settings, refer to “Modifying the properties of a plot” below.

## Updating plots

Changes made to a drawing in CAD mode are not automatically reflected in the New Plots view. You must update plots manually.

### To update a plot

- 1 Select the plot that you want to update.
- 2 From the **Options** menu, choose **Update New Plot**.

**Note:** If the New Plots view already reflects the current CAD drawing, the option is disabled.

## Modifying the properties of a plot

You can modify the border thickness, paper size, or scaling of a plot.

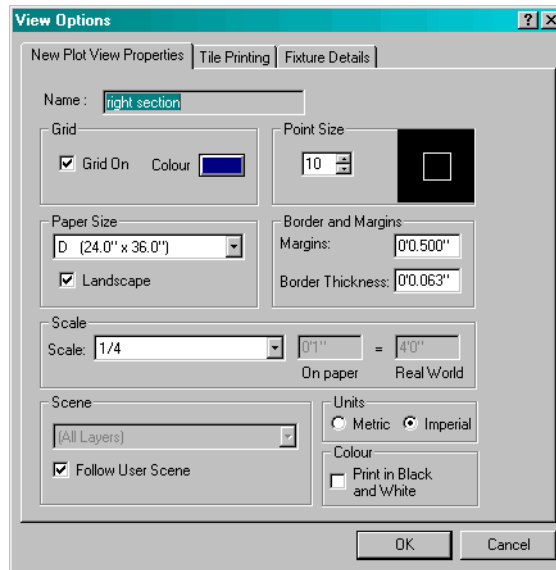
## To modify plot properties

- 1 Select the plot for which you want to modify the settings.
- 2 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *View Options* tool on the *Standard* toolbar.



**Result:** The *View Options* dialog box appears.



### New Plot View Properties tab

Options on the *New Plot View Properties* tab affect the appearance of the plot.

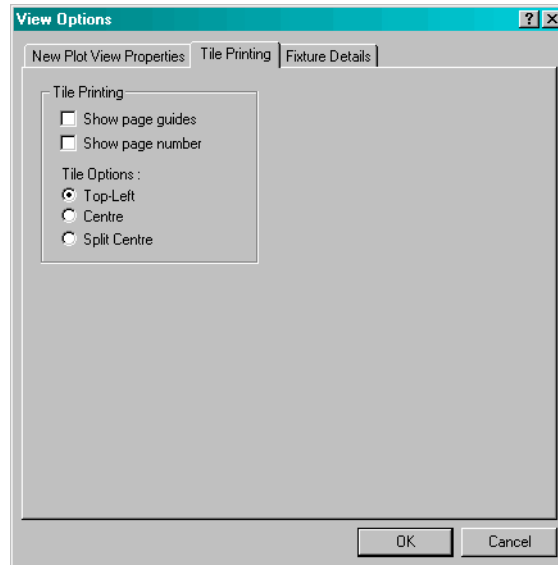
- **Name:** The name of the plot.
- **Grid On:** Select this check box if you want gridlines to appear on the plot view. Gridlines are for reference only; they assist with the layout of plot items on the page. Gridlines do not appear in the printed output.
- **Point Size:** The size at which points are printed.
- **Paper Size:** Choose the desired paper size from the drop-down menu. If you do not find the size you want, choose *Custom*, and then specify the width and height as desired. The default values are 24.0" X 36.0" (imperial measurement) or A1 (metric measurement).
- **Landscape:** Select this check box if you want the page to be set up in landscape format.
- **Margins:** The margins for the plot. The default values are 1/2" (imperial measurement) or 1cm (metric measurement).
- **Border Thickness:** The thickness of the plot's border. The border is drawn at the margins defined above. The default values are 1/16" (imperial measurement) or 1mm (metric measurement).
- **Scale:** The scale at which the plot is drawn. If the scale you want to use for printing is not displayed, select *Custom*. The default values are 1/4"=1'0" (imperial measurement) or 1:50 (metric measurement).
- **On paper:** The scale ratio that you want to use on a paper copy of the plot view.
- **Real World:** The "real" measurement for the scale ratio that you specify in the *On paper* box. For example, you may want to use a scaling of one inch in a paper copy of your plot. This one-inch measurement translates to a "realistic" measurement (for example, 3 feet).
- **Follow User Scene:** Select this check box to use the scene that is displayed in the drop-down list on the *Scene* toolbar. Click to clear the check box, and then select

the desired scene from the *Scene* drop-down list. For more information on scenes, refer to “Scenes” on page 160.

- *Units*: The units of measurement for the plot. The coordinates at the bottom of the plot change according to the selection. This setting does not affect the printed output.
- *Print in Black and White*: Select this check box if you want the plot to be displayed and printed in black and white.

## Tile Printing tab

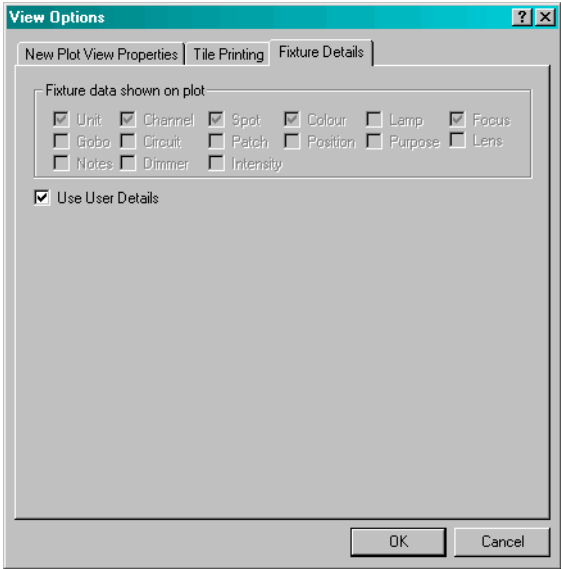
Options on the *Tile Printing* tab affect the printout of the plot.



- *Show page guides*: Select this check box if you want the printable outlines to be displayed on each sheet of paper that comprises the plot. The solid outline is the chosen printer's paper size and orientation.
- *Show page number*: Select this check box if you want the page numbers of the plot to be displayed in the center of each page. The page numbers are for reference only and do not appear in the printed output.
- *Tile options*: Click the appropriate option button to enable one of the following:
  - *Top-Left* Click to place the top-left corner of the plot in the top-left corner of the first page, and then arrange the remaining pages accordingly.
  - *Center* Click to place the center of the plot at the center of a page, and then arrange the remaining pages accordingly.
  - *Split Center* Click to place the center of the plot at the corner of four pages, and then arrange the remaining pages accordingly.

Fixture Details tab

Options on the *Fixture Details* tab affect the fixture data that is displayed on the plot.



- *Use User Details*: Click to clear this check box if you do not want the currently selected fixture data displayed on the plot. The default fixture data is defined on the *Show Details* tab in *User Options*. For more information on this option, refer to “Show Details tab” on page 70.

Moving the page

You can move the page around to capture the parts of the schematic that you want plotted or printed.

To move the page

- 1 Select the plot that you want to adjust.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Move Page**.  
**Result:** A hand similar to the Pan tool is displayed.
- 3 Hold down the left mouse button and drag to move the page until the area of the schematic that you want on the page is contained within.
- 4 When you are finished, right-click and select **Finish Move Page**.

Objects in New Plots

Objects that are contained in the drawing in CAD mode are transposed to the New Plot representation. This representation is a 2D presentation of the drawing, and as such, certain objects are displayed differently than they are in the 3D CAD mode drawing.

A specific number of objects are used to represent the objects in the CAD drawing. These objects are listed in the following table.

Object in CAD mode	Resulting object in New Plots
Fixtures	Representative symbols
Accessories	Representative symbols
Riser	Riser



Object in CAD mode	Resulting object in New Plots
Text	Text
Arc	Arc
Ellipse	Ellipse
Circle	Circle

**Notes:**

- Beams are not represented in the New Plots view.
- Some objects may not be visible if they are on a layer that is not in the current scene.

## Relationship between objects in CAD mode and New Plots

Objects are transposed to a New Plots view from CAD mode and can be manipulated independently of the original object in CAD. This means that in a New Plots view, objects can be deleted, copied, moved, and have their properties modified without affecting the original object in CAD mode. For example, moving a pipe does not cause the same pipe to also move in CAD mode. You can easily create your lighting plot in a New Plots view independently of the drawing or “model” in CAD mode.

In contrast, changes made to the original “model” in CAD mode *are* reflected in all New Plots views. Objects that are deleted in CAD mode are also deleted from all New Plots views. Similarly, objects added in CAD mode are also added to all New Plots views, provided the layer they are on is visible. The same logic applies to objects that are moved in CAD mode: moving an object causes the object to also move in all New Plots views as long as the relationship between the object in CAD mode and New Plots is intact.

To achieve a relationship between objects in CAD mode and objects in New Plots views, various types of links are available. These links track the position and properties of the original CAD object in New Plots, and are referred to as the positional and properties links, respectively. For more information on these links and how they work, refer to “Links” on page 273.

## Relationship between objects in Data mode and New Plots

You cannot modify data, such as fixture attributes, directly in a New Plots view; instead, you must edit this data in Data mode. Data that is modified in the spreadsheet view in Data mode is also updated in CAD mode and in all New Plots views.

## Links

There are three types of links in the New Plots view: positional, properties, and attributes.

The position link tracks the movement of objects that are brought in from the original CAD drawing. By default, this link is in place until one of the objects from the original CAD drawing is moved relative to its origin.

The properties link tracks the changes to properties for objects that are brought in from the original CAD drawing. These properties include the layer line color and line thickness of an object. By default, this link is in place until you modify one or more of these properties.

The attribute link tracks the changes to the attribute layout of fixtures. By default, this link is in place until you move, rotate, or otherwise manipulate the layout of a fixture attribute. For more information on attribute layout, refer to “Attribute layout” on page 275.

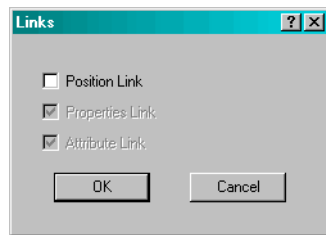
When a link to an object is broken, all subsequent changes that are made to that object in CAD or Data mode will not be reflected in a New Plots view. You must reestablish the relationship or link to ensure that changes made in CAD or Data mode are reflected in a New Plots view.

Reestablishing the link returns the object to its original state before the link was broken. For example, reestablishing the link of a fixture that has been moved off a pipe moves the fixture back to its original position on the pipe.

### To reestablish links

- 1 Select the object for which you want to reestablish a link.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Restore Links**.

**Result:** The *Links* dialog box is displayed.



**Note:** The *Position Link* check box is deselected. This means that an action occurred that broke that link.

- 3 To reestablish the link, select the *Position Link* check box.
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The positional link is reestablished.

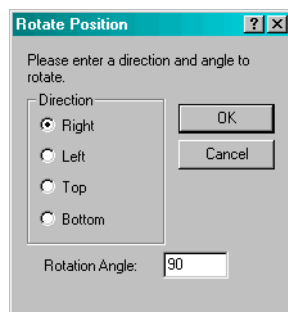
## Vertical hang structures

In the New Plots view, non-horizontal hang structures, such as booms and ladders can be rotated around their base to show all mounted fixtures. The rotation can be top, bottom, left, or right.

### To rotate the position of a vertical hang structure

- 1 Select the hang structures that you wish to rotate.
- 2 Right-click and choose **Rotate Position**.

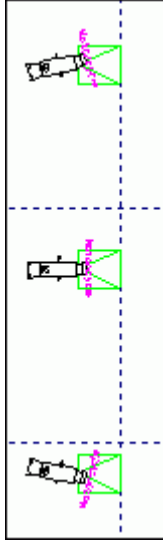
**Result:** The *Rotate Position* dialog box is displayed.



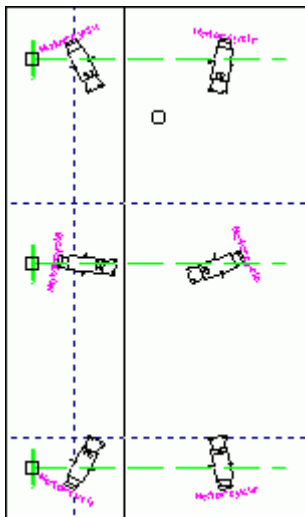
- 3 Select the direction in which you want to rotate the hang structure.
- 4 In the *Rotation Angle* box, type the angle by which you want to rotate the hang structure.
- 5 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The hang structure is rotated on the plot.

As an example, you may have three booms on your plot that you want to rotate.



After you rotate the hang structures 90 degrees to the right, the following is displayed.



## Attribute layout

You can easily modify the layout of fixture attributes in a New Plots view by simply moving, rotating, or otherwise manipulating the appearance of the attribute. In a New Plots view, you can only manipulate the layout; you cannot modify the data contained within the attribute. To modify the data, you will need to go to CAD or Data mode and make the modifications.

Fixture attribute values that are changed in CAD or Data mode are reflected in all New Plots views.

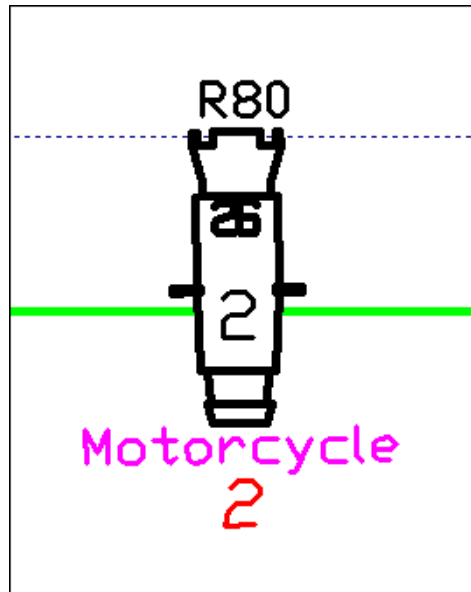
The attributes that are displayed in a New Plots view are determined by the options you set on the *Fixture Details* tab. For more information, refer to “Fixture Details tab” on page 272.

### To manipulate the attribute layout for an individual symbol

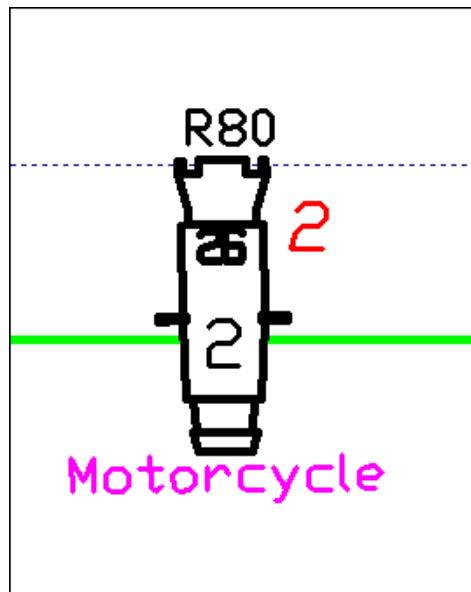
- 1 Select the attribute whose layout you want to manipulate.
- 2 Drag the attribute to the desired location on the page, and then release the mouse button.

**Note:** This action breaks the attribute link.

As an example, you may wish to move the channel attribute (the red “2”) shown on the plot below.




After you select and drag the attribute to the desired location, the following is displayed.



## Drawing objects


You can add objects to the plot for notation. Objects that you can draw include lines, arcs, circles, and text labels. You can also insert symbols from the Library Browser.

### Drawing circles

Drawing circles in a New Plots view is similar to drawing circles in CAD mode. You can access the Circle tool from the **Draw** menu or from the *New Plot Options* toolbar . For more information on drawing circles, refer to “Drawing circles” on page 129.

**Note:** When you add objects such as circles to your plot, they are not added to your drawing in CAD mode.

### Drawing arcs

Drawing arcs in a New Plots view is similar to drawing arcs in CAD mode. You can access the Arc tool from the **Draw** menu or from the *New Plot Options* toolbar . For more information, refer to “Drawing arcs” on page 129.

After you have drawn an arc, you can choose to add arrows to one or both ends of the arc. The default is none. For more information on adding arrows, refer to page 283.

### Drawing lines

Drawing lines in a New Plots view is similar to drawing lines in CAD mode. For more information, refer to “Drawing lines” on page 128.

You can also use the appropriate line tool from the **Draw** menu or the *New Plot Options* toolbar. The available line tools are as follows:


-  Solid
-  Dot
-  Center
-  Dash

You can create a double line from a single line by modifying the properties of a line. For more information on creating double lines, refer to page 282.

After you have drawn a line, you can choose to add arrows to one or both ends of the line. The default is none. For more information on adding arrows, refer to page 283.

**Note:** When you add objects such as lines to your plot, they are not added to your drawing in CAD mode.


### Drawing text

Drawing text in a New Plots view is similar to drawing text in CAD mode. You can access the Text tool from the **Draw** menu or on the *New Plot Options* toolbar . For more information, refer to “Drawing text labels” on page 130.

#### Notes:

- When you add an object such as text to your plot, it is not added to your drawing in CAD mode.
- True type fonts are not supported in New Plots.

## Inserting symbols

You can insert symbols that are not associated with any object in CAD mode. This allows you to represent the fixtures when you draw a key or want to show the position of a boom in a plan view, for example. You can access the Symbol tool from the **Draw** menu or from the *New Plot Options* toolbar .

To learn how to insert symbols, see “To insert objects from the library” on page 120. In the New Plots view, the Library Browser contains only the Symbol library.

## Editing objects

A number of tools are available in the New Plots view to help you manipulate objects.

**Note:** Orthographic mode is available in New Plots from the **Edit** menu and also from the *New Plots Options* toolbar. When ortho mode is active, you can manipulate objects either vertically or horizontally. For more information on this mode, refer to “Ortho” on page 107.

### Selecting objects

Objects are transposed from CAD mode and can, therefore, be selected independently of that mode (for example, moving a pipe in New Plots will not cause it to also move in CAD mode).

Fixture symbols are grouped with the hang structure to which they are mounted. Selecting and moving the hang structure will also move the mounted fixture symbols. Similarly, accessories are grouped with the fixture symbols to which they are attached and will also move with the fixture symbols. You can also select an individual fixture symbol separately from the hang structure if you want to move or modify it independently.

The methods for selecting an object are similar to those for selecting an object in CAD mode. For more information on these methods, refer to “Selecting” on page 142.

### Copy

When you copy and paste an object in a New Plots view, a second representation of that same object is created. If you subsequently update the data for this object in either CAD or Data mode (for example, gel color or channel number), all representations of that object in all New Plots views are updated.

Copied objects are not added to the drawing in CAD mode nor to the spreadsheet in Data mode.

You can copy and paste objects between New Plots views.

### To copy an object

- 1 Select the object to be copied.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Copy**.
- 3 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Paste**.
- 4 Click in the plot where you want to place the object.

### Cut

When you cut an object in a New Plots view it is not removed from CAD mode. However, cutting an object in CAD mode removes it from all New Plots views.

Cutting an object adds it to the clipboard. You can subsequently paste the object into a New Plots view.

You can cut and paste objects between New Plots views.

### To cut an object

- 1 Select the object to be cut.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Cut**.
- 3 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Paste**.
- 4 Click in the plot where you want to place the object.

### Delete

Deleting an object in a New Plots view does not delete the original object in CAD mode. However, deleting an object in CAD mode does delete the representation of that object in all New Plots views.

### To delete an object

- 1 Select the object to be deleted.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Delete**.

**Result:** The object is removed from all New Plots views.

**Note:** If you accidentally deleted an object, you can recover it by choosing **Undo Delete** from the **Edit** menu.

### Move

The Move command in the New Plots view supports both absolute and relative moves in a manner similar to CAD mode. For more information on this command, refer to “Moving” on page 143.

When you move a pipe, you also move all its attached fixtures and accessories. You also break the positional link between the pipe in CAD mode and the pipe in the New Plots view. All fixtures and accessories that are attached to that pipe still maintain their link to the original objects in CAD mode, even though they have also moved.

When you move a fixture off of a hang structure, you fix its location in relation to the hang structure. For example, if you move a fixture off a pipe, and then move the pipe 10 feet, the fixture also moves with the pipe. This action breaks the positional link of the fixture to the hang structure.

**Note:** You can “nudge” objects up, down, left, or right a certain distance by using specific key combinations. Use the ALT+arrow keys to “nudge” an object a specific distance; use the ALT+SHIFT+arrow keys to “nudge” an object a tenth of that distance.

### Rotate

The Rotate command in a New Plots view works in a similar manner as it does in CAD mode. For more information on this command, refer to “Rotating” on page 144.

**Note:** Rotating an object breaks its positional link.

### Fillet

The Fillet command in a New Plots view works in a similar manner as it does in CAD mode. For more information on this command, refer to “Fillet” on page 168.

## Object properties

In a New Plots view, object properties are inherited from the original object in CAD mode but can be manipulated independently of that mode. For example, manipulating the properties of an object that is brought into a New Plots view does not affect the object's properties in CAD mode. It does however, break the properties link for the modified object.

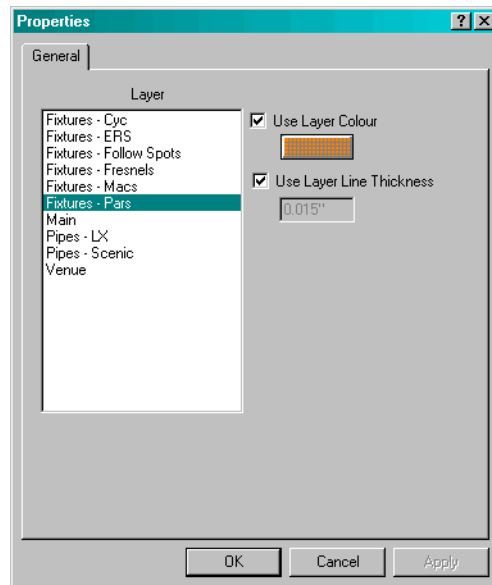
Objects can also be drawn in a New Plots view. These objects inherit the properties of the layer on which they are drawn. You can modify these properties as required. Since these objects are not added to the drawing in any other mode, modifying the properties in a New Plots view has no external affect.

## Objects that are brought into New Plots from CAD mode

There are general properties for each object that is brought into a New Plots view from CAD mode. You can modify these general properties as required.

### General tab

Options on the *General* tab affect the selected object's color and line thickness properties.



- **Layer:** A list of the layers in your document is displayed. Click on a list item to change the layer on which the object will be drawn.
- **Use Layer Color:** Select this check box to set the object's color for wireframe views to be the same as the properties of the layer on which the object resides. For more information, refer to "Layer properties" on page 158.

Click to clear the check box, and then use the color button to set a specific color for the object.

- **Use Layer Line Thickness:** Select this check box to set the object's line thickness to be the same as the properties of the layer on which the object resides. For more information, refer to "Layer properties" on page 158.

Click to clear the check box, and then type a thickness in the box below to set a specific line thickness for the object. The line weight is used to determine how thick the pen should be when printing a copy of the document. The applied line thickness is only visible in Print Preview mode and when printed.



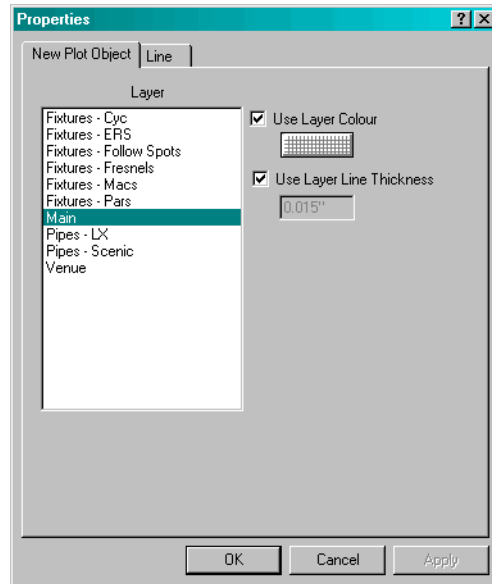
## Objects that are drawn in New Plots

Objects such as lines, arcs, symbols, circles, and text that are drawn in a New Plots view have general properties that are inherited from the layer on which they are drawn. Along with the general properties, a tab appears in the properties dialog box for each type of object that is selected. When you select multiple objects of different types, tabs appear for each type of object selected.

For more information, refer to “Drawing objects” on page 123.

### New Plot Object tab

Options on the *New Plot Object* tab affect the selected object’s color and line thickness properties.



For a detailed description of the options available on this dialog box, refer to the “General tab” on page 280.

## Object-specific properties

Similar to objects in CAD mode, objects that are drawn in a New Plots view have properties that are specific to that object.

- **Text label** - For a description of text label properties, refer to the “Text label tab” on page 152.
- **Symbol** - For a description of symbol properties, refer to “Symbol properties” on page 200.
- **Line** - Options on the *Line* tab affect how the line is drawn.

The Properties dialog box for a Line object has a title bar with a question mark and close button. It contains two tabs: 'New Plot Object' and 'Line'. The 'Line' tab is active. Inside the 'Line' tab, there is a 'Line Pattern' section with four radio buttons: 'Solid', 'Center' (selected), 'Dashed', and 'Dot'. Below this is a 'Scale' text box containing '3'3''5/16'. There is an 'Arrows' section with 'Located at:' and two checkboxes: 'Start' (unchecked) and 'End' (unchecked). Below this is an 'Arrow Size' section with 'H:' and 'V:' text boxes, both containing '1'31''7/1'. There is a 'Double Line' section with a 'Double Line' checkbox (unchecked) and a 'Distance' text box containing '6'6''11/16'. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

- **Line Pattern:** Choose a pattern for the selected line. Refer to “Drawing lines” on page 128 for an illustration of each type.
- **Scale:** Type a value in this box to change the length and spacing of dots and dashes for the selected line. This value is applicable to center, dashed, or dotted lines only.
- **Arrows:** Select where you would like to add arrows on the line. You can specify a width and length for the arrows by entering values in the *H* and *V* boxes, respectively.
- **Double Line:** Select this check box to change the selected line to a double line. Indicate how far apart you want the double lines to be by entering a value in the *Distance* box.

**Circle** - The properties are the same as when the object was originally drawn. For more information, refer to “Drawing circles” on page 129.

**Arc** - The radius and angle properties are the same as when the object was originally drawn. The only property that is different is the addition of arrows to either side of the selected arc.

The Properties dialog box for an Arc object has a title bar with a question mark and close button. It contains two tabs: 'New Plot Object' and 'Arc'. The 'Arc' tab is active. Inside the 'Arc' tab, there are three text boxes: 'Radius' containing '4'0"', 'Start Angle' containing '0.00', and 'End Angle' containing '180.00'. There is an 'Arrows' section with 'Located at:' and two checkboxes: 'Start' (checked) and 'End' (unchecked). Below this is an 'Arrow Size' section with 'H:' and 'V:' text boxes, both containing '1'31''7/1'. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply' buttons.

- *Arrows:* Select where on the arc you would like to add arrows. You can specify a width and length for the arrows by entering values in the *H* and *V* boxes, respectively.

## Inserting New Plots into layouts

Once you create your New Plot, you can insert it into the Layouts view. For example, you might want to insert it into a Layouts view so that you can add a legend, key, or report to your plot.

For more information on inserting a New Plot, see “To insert New Plot items onto the layout” on page 290.

## Printing New Plots

If you have a large plot you can “tile print” the plot across multiple smaller sheets of paper. To set up how you want the plot arranged on the sheets of paper, refer to the “Tile Printing tab” on page 271.

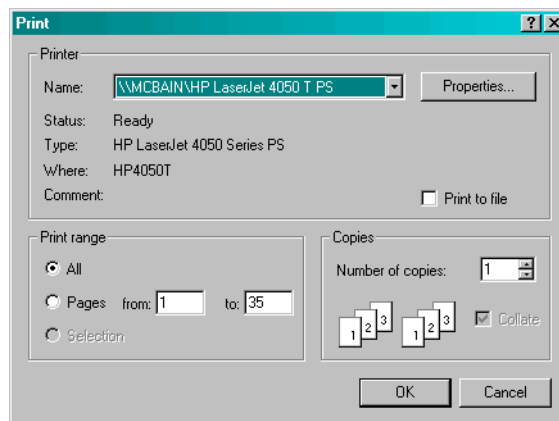
You can print your complete plot or specific pages of your plot based on the settings that you choose.

**Note:** Objects outside the border are not printed, even if they are within the margins of the page. To adjust the margins, refer to “Modifying the properties of a plot” on page 269.

### To print your plot

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Print**.

**Result:** The *Print* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 From the *Name* drop-down list, choose the printer (or plotter) that you want to use. WYSIWYG records the name that you choose for future reference and displays it as the default printer for plots.
- 3 To print all pages of a plot, select *All*.
- 4 To print select pages of a plot, select *Pages*, and then enter the range in the *from* and *to* boxes.
- 5 To print multiple copies of the pages, select the value from the *Number of copies* list box.
- 6 Click *OK*.



## Introduction

The Layouts tab opens the layout design and storage area. Layouts are created by arranging various CAD, report, image, and other items on a defined paper size.

There are two default layouts included in the layouts shortcuts. The Micro Layouts, which is designed to print on an 8.5" x 11" piece of paper, and the Big Layouts, which is designed to be plotted on a 36" x 48" sheet of paper. You can use either of these layouts as is, modify them to suit your needs, or create new layouts from scratch.

## Creating a new layout

### To create a new layout

- 1 Click the *Layouts* shortcut tab.
- 2 Right-click in the *Layouts* shortcut area, and then choose **New Layout**.
- 3 Type the name of the new layout.
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Result:** An empty layout is created. A shortcut to your new layout is added to the Layouts shortcut bar.

**Note:** By default, empty layouts are set up to use 8.5" x 11" sheets of paper.

## Working with layouts

### To modify layout settings

- 1 Select the layout for which you want to modify the settings.
- 2 From the **Options** menu, choose **View Options**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *View Options* tool on the *Standard* toolbar.



**Result:** The *View Options* dialog box is displayed.



### Presentation tab

Options on the *Presentation* tab affect the appearance and printout of the layout.

- *Name:* The name of the layout.
- *Background Color:* Sets the background color of the layout view. This does not affect your printed copy.
- *Grid On:* Select this check box if you want gridlines to appear on the layout. Gridlines are for reference only; they assist with the design of items on the page. Gridlines do not appear in the printed output.
- *Color:* Sets the color of the gridlines.
- *Show placeholders only:* Select this check box to display only the placeholders for the various items in the layout. If unchecked, both the placeholders and contents of the items in the layout are displayed. This is to facilitate the layout setup and does not affect the printout.
- *Snap:* Select this check box to snap the items in the layout to the gridlines.
- *Interval:* Specify the interval between the points on the grid.
- *Units:* The units of measurement for the layout. The coordinates at the bottom of the layout change according to the selection. This does not affect the printed output.
- *Paper Size:* Choose the desired paper size from the drop-down menu. If you do not find the size you want, choose *Custom*, and then specify the width and height as desired.
- *Landscape:* Select this check box if you want the page to be set up in landscape format.

- *Show page guides:* Select this check box if you want the printable outline to be displayed on each sheet of paper that comprises the layout. The solid outline is the chosen printer's paper size and orientation.
- *Show page number:* Select this check box if you want the page numbers of the layout to be displayed in the center of each page. The page numbers are for reference only and do not appear in the printed output.
- *Tile options:* Select one of the following option buttons:
  - *Top-Left* Places the top-left corner of the layout in the top-left corner of the first page, and then arranges the remaining pages accordingly.
  - *Center* Places the center of the layout at the center of a page, and then arranges the remaining pages accordingly.
  - *Split Center* Places the center of the layout at the corner of four pages, and then arranges the remaining pages accordingly.

## Arranging items on layouts

Objects can be inserted from the following categories:

- basic shapes (lines, rectangles, ellipses, polygons, and text)
- images (bitmap and jpeg)
- CAD items
- data items
- report items
- worksheet items (includes the default Title Block)
- legend items
- key items
- new plot items

### To insert a line onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Line**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Line* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar.



- 2 Click on the page where you want to start drawing the line and, holding the mouse button down, drag it to the end point of the line. Release the mouse button when you have the desired shape.

- 3 Click anywhere in the drawing to finish placing the line.

**Result:** The line is placed on the layout.

### To insert a rectangle onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Rectangle**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Rectangle* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar.



- 2 Click on the page at the starting point of the rectangle and, holding the mouse button down, drag out the shape of the rectangle. Release the mouse button when you have the desired shape.

- 3 Click anywhere in the drawing to finish placing the rectangle.

**Result:** The rectangle is placed on the layout.

### To insert a rounded rectangle onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Round Rectangle**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Round Rectangle* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 


- 2 Click on the page at the starting point of the rectangle and, holding the mouse button down, drag out the shape of the rectangle. Release the mouse button when you have the desired shape.
- 3 Click anywhere in the drawing to finish placing the rectangle.

**Result:** The round rectangle is placed on the layout.

**Note:** You can only see the rounded corners of the rectangle if you zoom in on the drawing.

### To insert an ellipse onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Ellipse**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Ellipse* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 

- 2 Click on the page at the starting point of the ellipse and, holding the mouse button down, drag out the shape of the ellipse. Release the mouse button when you have the desired shape.
- 3 Click anywhere in the drawing to finish placing the ellipse.

**Result:** The ellipse is placed on the layout.

### To insert a polygon onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Polygon**.


**Tip:** You can also use the *Polygon* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 

- 2 Click on the page at the starting point of the polygon and, holding the mouse button down, drag out the shape of the polygon. Release the mouse button when you have the desired shape.
- 3 Click anywhere in the drawing to finish placing the polygon.

**Result:** The polygon is placed on the layout.

### To insert text onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Text**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Text* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 

- 2 Click on the page at the starting point of the text box and, holding the mouse button down, drag out the shape of the box. Release the mouse button when you have the desired shape.
- 3 Click anywhere in the drawing to finish placing the box.  
**Result:** The text box is placed on the layout.
- 4 To type text in the new box, double-click the box, and then delete the default text.
- 5 Type your custom text.
- 6 Click anywhere in the drawing to finish adding the text.

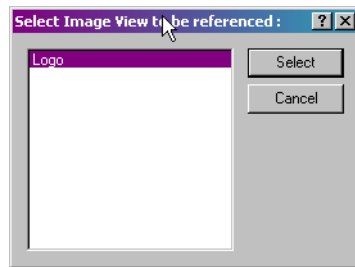
### To insert image items onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Image**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Image* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 

- 2 Click and drag a window (placeholder) on the page where you want the item to appear.

**Result:** The *Select Image View to be referenced* dialog box appears.



- 3 Select the image that you want to add to the layout, and then click *Select*.

**Result:** The image appears within the placeholder as drawn.

### To insert CAD items onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **CAD**.


**Tip:** You can also use the *CAD item* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 

- 2 Click and drag a window (placeholder) on the "page" where you want the item to appear.

**Result:** The CAD item, which is referenced from CAD mode, appears within the placeholder as drawn. By default, CAD items appear in plan view and at a scale of 1/16"=1'.

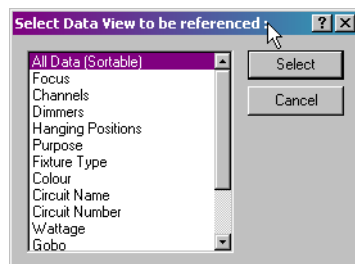
### To insert data items onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Data**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Data* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 

- 2 Click and drag a window (placeholder) on the "page" where you want the item to appear.

**Result:** The *Select Data View to be referenced* dialog box appears.



- 3 Select the data item that you want to add to the layout, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The selected data sheet (referenced from Data mode) appears within the placeholder as drawn.

### To insert report items onto the layout

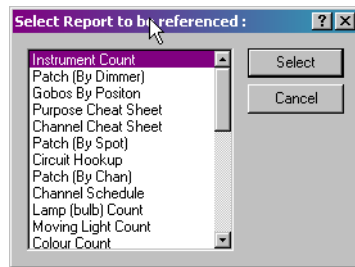
- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Report**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Report* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 



- 2 Click and drag a window (placeholder) on the “page” where you want the item to appear.

**Result:** The *Select Report to be referenced* dialog box appears.




- 3 Select the report item that you want to add to the layout, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The selected report (referenced from Pres mode) appears within the placeholder as drawn.

**Note:** If the *Group By* option has been set for a report, the report cannot be added to a layout. Setting the *Group By* option creates page breaks within the report and layouts do not support reports with page breaks. For more information on this option, refer to “Report tab” on page 263.

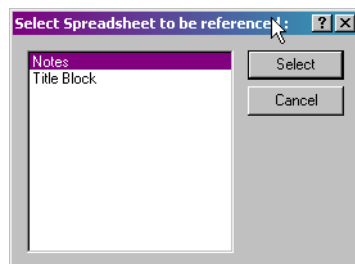
### To insert worksheet items onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Worksheet**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Worksheet* tool from the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 

- 2 Click and drag a window (placeholder) on the “page” where you want the item to appear.

**Result:** The *Select Spreadsheet to be referenced* dialog box appears.



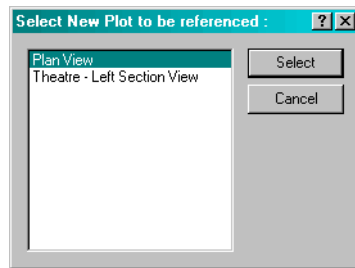
- 3 Select the worksheet that you want to add to the layout, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The selected worksheet (referenced from Pres mode) appears within the placeholder as drawn.

## To insert New Plot items onto the layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **New Plot**.
- 2 Click and drag a window (placeholder) on the “page” where you want the item to appear.

**Result:** The *Select New Plot to be referenced* dialog box appears.



- 3 Select the New Plot item that you want to add to the layout, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The selected New Plot item (referenced from Pres mode) appears within the placeholder as drawn. To adjust the contents that are displayed within the placeholder, refer to “Adjusting the contents” on page 294 for further details.

## Content and Item properties

As with all objects in WYSIWYG, the objects that you have placed on your page have unique properties. There are two types of properties:

- Content Properties
- Item Properties

### Content Properties

Content Properties affect the content of the presentation item. When you open these properties, you open a similar or identical dialog box to the *View Options* dialog box that appears when you are working on the original item in CAD, Data, or Pres mode. In this dialog, you can modify the information to be displayed and control how it is displayed.

## To modify content properties

- 1 Select the presentation item that you want to modify.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Content Properties**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Content Properties* tool on the *Edit* toolbar. 

**Result:** The *View Options* dialog box is displayed.

**Note:** Content properties for CAD items are discussed in “CAD items” on page 291.

### Item Properties

Item Properties affect the placeholders and the scaling of the contents. Options here include the outline’s weight and color, and various printing options for the contents, such as scale.

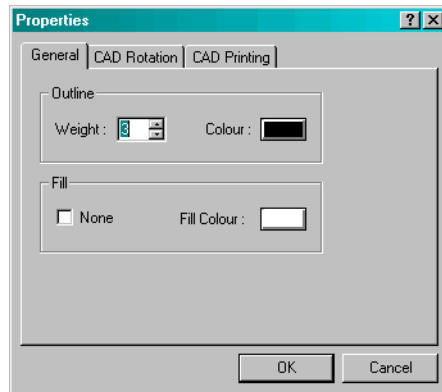
## To modify item properties

- 1 Select the presentation item you want to modify.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Item Properties**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Item Properties* tool on the *Edit* toolbar.



**Result:** The *Properties* dialog box is displayed.



**Note:** The first page of the properties dialog is identical regardless of the type of presentation item. Options here affect the outline and fill color of the placeholder.

## CAD items

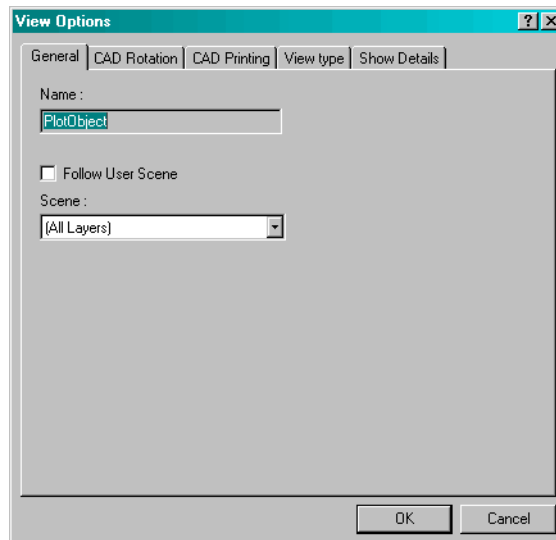
You can modify or edit CAD items to meet printing requirements. Their content properties are detailed below.

## To modify content properties of CAD items

- 1 Select the CAD item, right-click, and then choose **Content Properties** or click the appropriate tool on the *Layout Edit* toolbar.



**Result:** The *View Options* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Modify options as desired.
- 3 When finished, click *OK*.

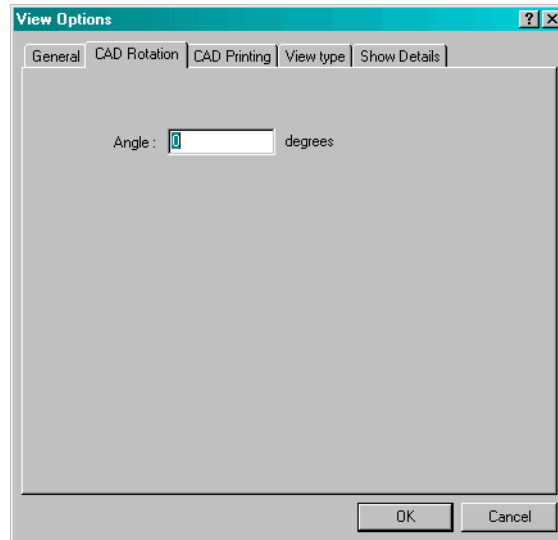
## General tab

Options on the *General* tab affect the scene that is displayed in the CAD item. Only fixtures and objects on the active layers are displayed in the layout.

- *Follow User Scene*: Select this check box to use the scene that is displayed in the drop-down list on the Scene toolbar. Click to clear the check box, and then select the desired scene from the Scene drop-down list. For more information on scenes, refer to “Scenes” on page 160.

## CAD Rotation tab

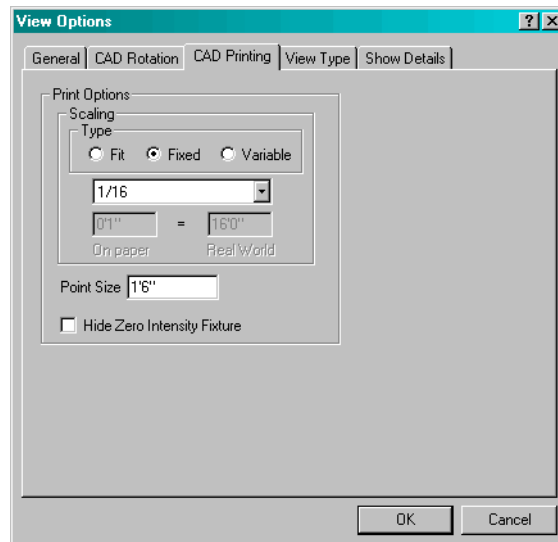
Options on the *CAD Rotation* tab affect the angle at which the CAD item is printed.



- *Angle*: Type an angle value in degrees if you want the drawing in the CAD item to be printed on an angle. This feature is helpful for printing booms.

## CAD Printing tab

Options on the *CAD Printing* tab affect the scale for the drawing.



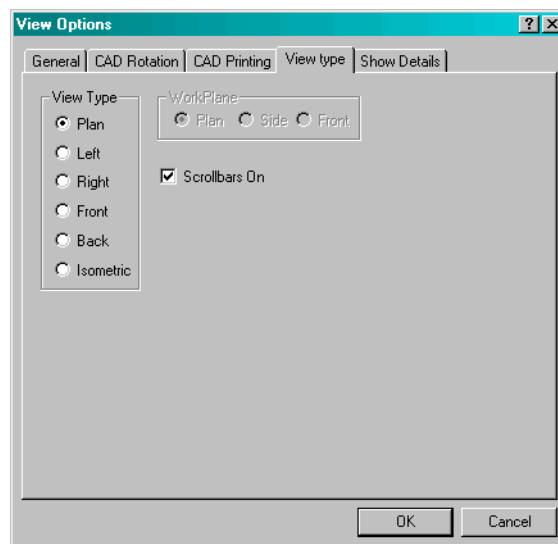
- *Fit*: If you select this option, the entire CAD drawing is scaled to fit inside the placeholder.
- *Fixed*: If you select this option, the CAD item is printed at the specified scale. To determine which portion of the CAD item is displayed inside the placeholder, choose **Open Contents**. Inside this view, you can move around a white rectangle

that represents the placeholder. See “Adjusting the contents” on page 294 for details on the functionality available with Open Contents.

- *Variable*: If you select this option, when you “open contents” you will be able to change the size of the white rectangle without affecting the original placeholder. The portion of the drawing contained within the white rectangle is scaled to fit in the placeholder. See “Adjusting the contents” on page 294 for details on the functionality available with Open Contents.
- *On paper*: The scale ratio that you want to use on a paper copy of the layout.
- *Real World*: The “real” measurement for the scale ratio that you specify in the *On paper* box. For example, you may want to use a scaling of one inch in a paper copy of your layout. This one-inch measurement translates to a “realistic” measurement (for example, 3 feet).
- *Point Size*: The size at which points are printed.
- *Hide Zero Intensity Fixture*: Select this check box to hide any fixtures with an Intensity set to zero so they do not print.

### View type tab

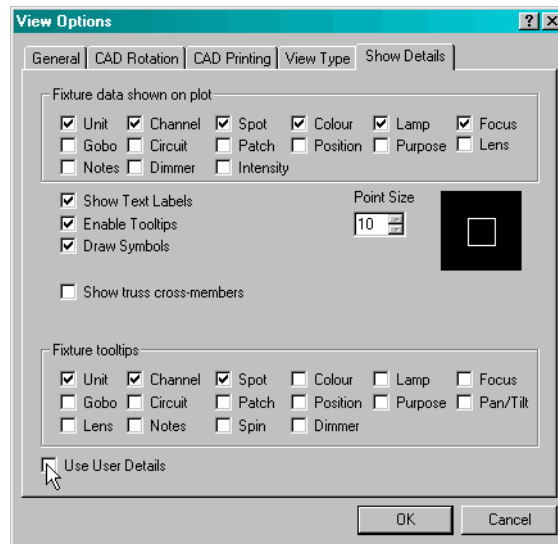
Options on the *View type* tab affect the view type of the CAD item.



- *View Type*: The view types available are those discussed in “Plot types” on page 106.
- *WorkPlane*: The workplanes available are those discussed in “Plot types” on page 106.
- *Scrollbars*: Select this check box to display the scrollbars on the bottom and left side edges of the layout. Click to clear this check box to turn the scrollbars off.

### Show Details tab

Options on the *Show Details* tab affect the amount of fixture information that is shown in the CAD item.




- *Fixture data shown on plot:* Select the attributes that you want displayed around the fixture symbols in the CAD item. To modify how the attributes are laid out, refer to Fixture Notation and Information Layout in “Fixture notation” on page 197.
- *Show Text Labels:* Select this check box to display text labels.
- *Tooltips:* Displays tooltips on the CAD item. Tooltips are the pop-up messages that display specific information about a fixture when you hover over it. Choose the information that you want to display in a tooltip by selecting the appropriate check boxes in the *Fixture tooltips* group box. Tooltips are often helpful when trying to locate a specific fixture in a plot.
- *Draw Symbols:* Select this check box to draw fixtures as symbols instead of 3D objects. For more information on symbols, refer to “Symbols” on page 197.
- *Show truss cross members:* Deselect this check box to hide truss cross members in the CAD item to reduce the clutter or increase the speed of the display. Select this check box to see the cross members.
- *Point size:* Set the default size for all points. You can view a sample of the chosen size in the box to the right.

## Adjusting the contents

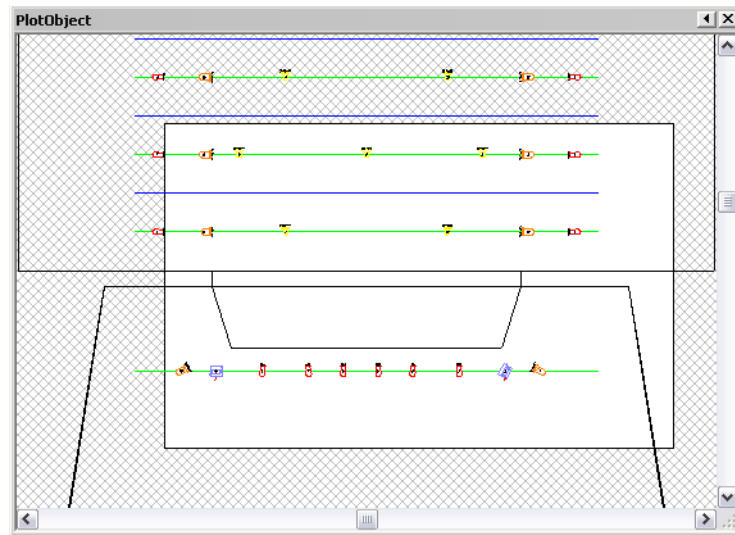
If you chose fixed or variable scaling on the *CAD Printing* tab or if you inserted a New Plots item, you can further set up how the item will appear within the placeholder by modifying the open contents.

## To adjust the contents

- 1 With the item selected, from the **Edit** menu, choose **Open Contents**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Open Contents* tool on the *Layout Pres Edit* toolbar. 

**Result:** A new window opens, displaying your drawing and the item placeholder.



- 2 Adjust the positioning of the placeholder as desired.
- 3 Close the window.

## New Plot items

New Plot items are inserted into your layout using the options specified when you created the item. You might want to modify these options if you wish to display or print the New Plot item in black and white, for example.

## To modify content properties of New Plot items

- 1 Select the New Plot item on the layout.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Content Properties**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Content Properties* tool on the *Layout Pres Edit* toolbar. 

**Result:** The *View Options* dialog box is displayed.

For an explanation of the options that are available, refer to "Modifying the properties of a plot" on page 269.

**Note:** Any options that you modify here are also updated in the New Plots view that you inserted.

## Image items

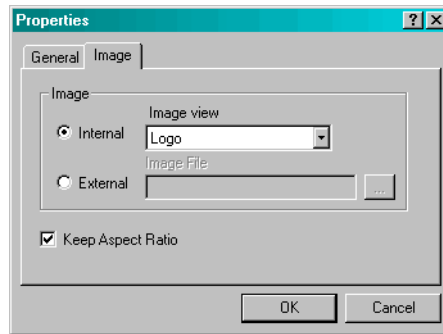
Special considerations should be given to printing images on layouts. To maintain the integrity of the image, WYSIWYG can maintain the aspect ratio of the image so as not to distort it.

## To maintain aspect ratio

- 1 Select the image item on the layout.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Item Properties**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Item Properties* tool on the *Layout Pres Edit* toolbar. 

- 3 Click the *Image* tab.



- 4 Select the *Keep Aspect Ratio* check box.

**Result:** When this box is checked, the height versus width relationship of the original image is maintained regardless of how you resize the placeholder.

## Worksheet, Report, and Spreadsheet items

Worksheet, Report, and Spreadsheet items are inserted into your layout at a set scale (100%) regardless of the paper size. For readability purposes, you can readjust this value.

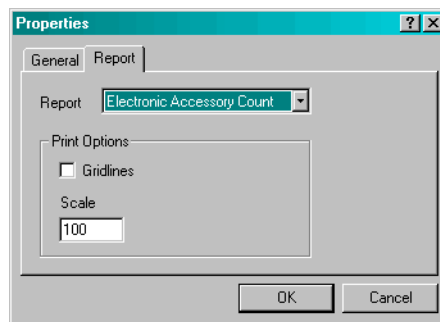
### To adjust the scale of Worksheet, Report, and Spreadsheet items

- 1 Select the worksheet, report, or spreadsheet item on the layout.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Item Properties**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Item Properties* tool on the *Layout Pres Edit* toolbar.



- 3 Click the *Worksheet*, *Report*, or *Spreadsheet* tab as appropriate.



- 4 In the *Scale* box, type a percentage value to increase or decrease the size of the contents.

## Legends

You may want to add a legend to your layout to provide a definition of the symbols used in the layout. To add a legend to a layout, you must first use the Legend Wizard to create the legend. The legend that you create can consist of the symbol name, wattage, count, and any other special notes. You can create multiple legends per layout.

### To create legend items

- 1 Right-click in the *Wizards* shortcut bar, and then select *New Legend*.

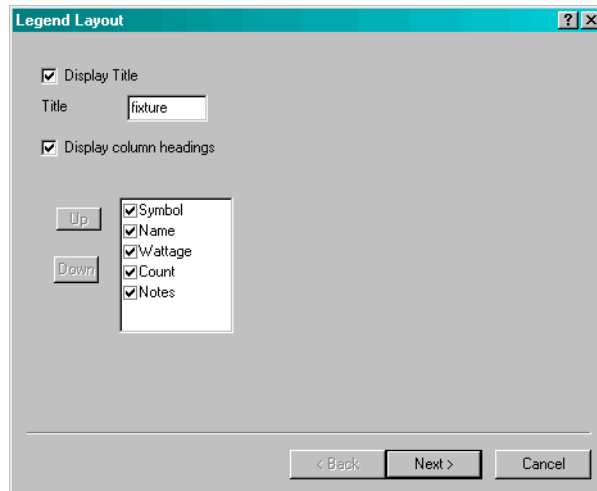
**Result:** The *Enter new Legend name* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Type a name for the legend, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The legend shortcut is stored in the shortcut bar and the Legend Wizard opens.

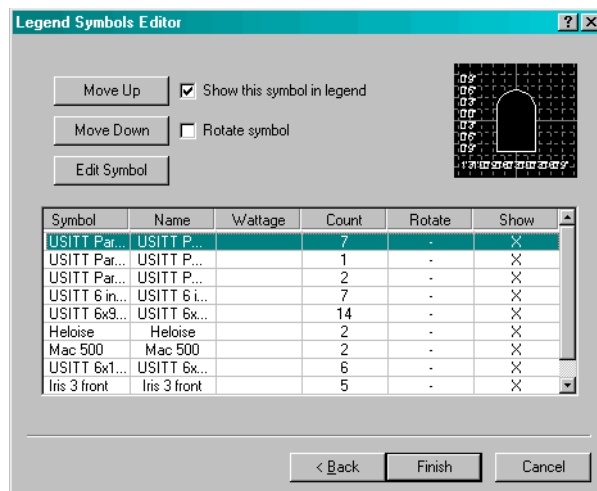
### Step 1 - Legend Layout



Options in Step 1 affect the layout of your legend.

- a. *Title:* Select the *Display Title* check box if you want to display the name of the legend. Type a title in the *Title* box if you want a title other than the default name to be displayed.
- b. *Columns:* Select the *Display column headings* check box if you want columns to be displayed in the legend. Choose the columns that you want displayed by selecting the appropriate columns from the list. The *Symbol* and *Name* columns are displayed by default. Order the display of columns by clicking the *Up* and *Down* buttons.

### Step 2 - Legend Symbols Editor



Each symbol type that exists in your CAD drawing is displayed for possible inclusion in the legend. The counts of each symbol type are updated automatically as fixtures with the same symbol type are added or deleted from the CAD drawing.

Options in Step 2 affect the symbol information that is displayed in the legend.

- a. *Show this symbol in legend:* By default all symbols are displayed in the legend. Click to deselect this check box if you do not want the highlighted symbol in the table to be displayed in the legend.

Order the display of symbols by clicking the *Move Up* and *Move Down* buttons.

- b. *Rotate symbol*: Select this check box if you want the symbol to be rotated in the legend. The symbol will be rotated 90 degrees.
- c. *Edit Symbol*: Click if you want to make modifications to the symbol information that is displayed (name, wattage, count, or notes). Follow the steps in “Editing Symbols” to perform the modifications.

## Editing symbols

When you click *Edit Symbol*, the following dialog box appears:

- a. *Use custom name*: By default, the name displayed in the *Symbol Name* box is used, unless otherwise modified. To enter an alternative name, select the *Use custom name* check box, and then type the name.
  - b. *Wattage*: The wattage in volts for the lamp.
  - c. *Use custom count*: By default, the value displayed in the *Count* box is used, unless otherwise modified. This value includes only hung fixtures in your show file. To enter an alternate count, select the *Use custom count* check box, and then type the value.
  - d. *Notes*: Type any pertinent notes for the symbol.
- 3 When you are finished editing the symbol information, click *OK*.  
**Result:** The *Legend Symbols Editor* dialog box is redisplayed.
  - 4 Finish entering all relevant information, and then click *Finish*.  
**Result:** The Wizard shortcut is stored in the shortcut bar with the name you specified in the *Title* box.

## Editing a legend

To make changes to the information that is displayed in the legend, open the Legend Wizard by double-clicking on the legend shortcut, and then make any necessary modifications.

Once a legend has been defined, it does not change until you make modifications to its settings. If any new fixtures with different symbol types are added to the file since you last made changes, these additions will be available in Step 2 of the Wizard, but will remain deselected until you specify whether they should be displayed in the legend. The counts of symbol types that were already in the legend are updated (unless you opted to use a custom count).


To rename, delete, or clone the shortcut, follow the steps defined in “Working with shortcuts” on page 54.

## Inserting a legend onto the layout

Once the legend has been created using the Legend Wizard, you can place it onto the layout.

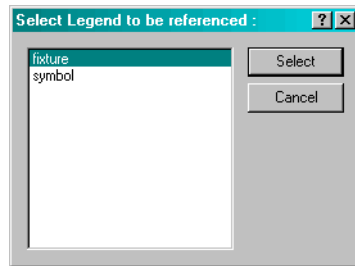
### To insert a legend onto a layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Legend**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Legend* tool in the *Layout Pres Insert* toolbar. 

- 2 Click and drag a window (placeholder) on the page where you want the item to appear.

**Result:** The *Select Legend to be referenced* dialog box is displayed.



- 3 Select the legend that you want to add to the page, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The legend is added to the page at the position where you inserted the placeholder.

## Modifying the properties of a legend

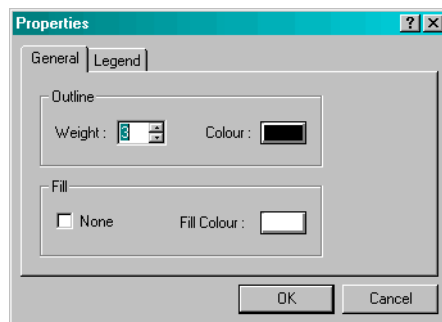
### To modify the properties of a legend

- 1 On the layout, select the legend that you want to modify.

- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Item Properties**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Item Properties* tool on the *Layout Pres Edit* toolbar. 

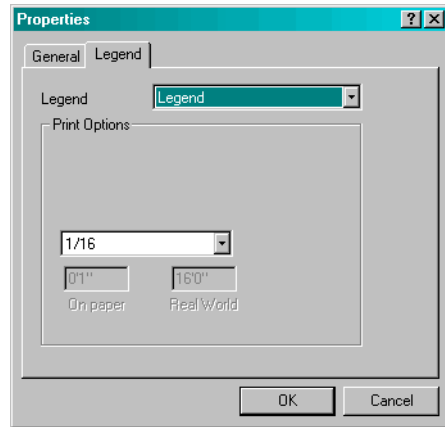
**Result:** The *Properties* dialog box is displayed.



The *General* tab is similar for all items. For more information on this tab, see "To modify item properties" on page 291.

### Legend tab

Options on the *Legend* tab affect the scaling and content of the placeholder.



- **Legend:** Select the legend that you want to be displayed on the layout. A list of all the legends you have created is displayed in the drop-down list.
- **Print Options:** The scale ratio in inches and feet at which the legend should be printed. If the scale that you want to use for printing is not displayed, select *Custom*.
- **On paper:** The scale ratio that you want to use on a paper copy of the layout.
- **Real World:** The "real" measurement for the scale ratio that you specify in the *On paper* box. For example, you might want to use a scaling of one inch in a paper copy of your layout. However, this one-inch measurement translates to a more "realistic" measurement (for example, 3 feet).

## Keys

You may want to add a key to your layout to provide a definition for the fixture notation used in the layout. To add a key to a layout, you must first use the Key Wizard to create the key. The key you create consists of the symbol of one given fixture and identifiers for the various attributes notated around the symbol. You can create multiple keys per layout.

### To create key items

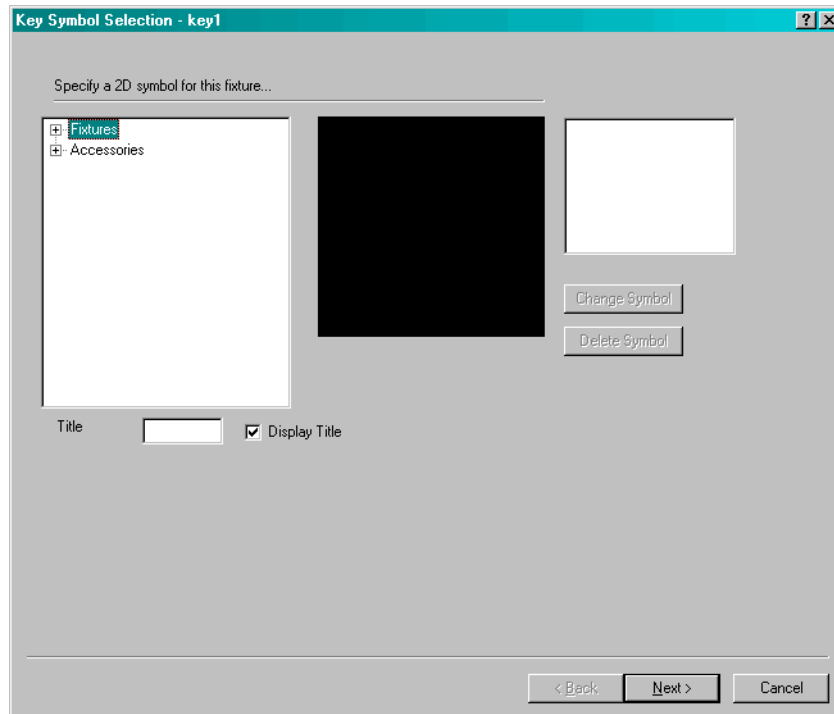
- 1 Right-click in the *Wizards* shortcut bar, and then select *New Key*.

**Result:** The *Enter new Key name* dialog box is displayed.

- 2 Type a name for the key, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** The key shortcut is stored in the shortcut bar and the Key Wizard opens.

## Step 1 - Key Symbol Selection

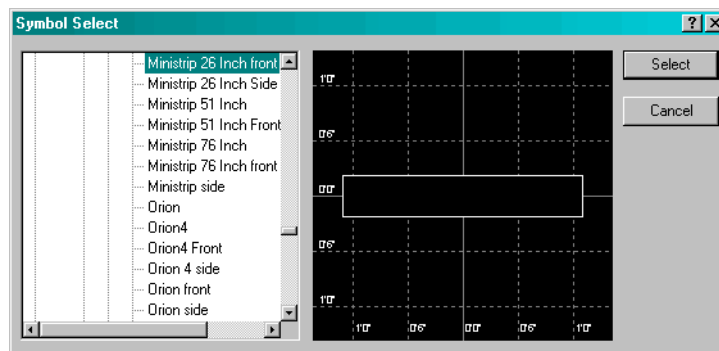


Options in Step 1 allow you to choose the symbol that will represent the fixture or accessory in the key.

- *List of symbols:* Select the symbols you want to use. You can choose up to one fixture symbol and one accessories symbol. The symbols available in this list are the default WYSIWYG symbols for each fixture or accessory type. When you selecting a symbol, it appears in the preview window to the right.
- *Title:* Select the *Display Title* check box if you want the name of the symbol to be displayed in the key. Type a title in the *Title* box if you want a title other than the default name to be displayed.
- *Change Symbol:* Enables you to choose a different symbol from the more extensive symbols library which includes the USITT standards, among others. Follow the steps in "Changing Symbols" to perform the modifications.
- *Delete Symbol:* Click this button to remove the selected symbol from the preview window.

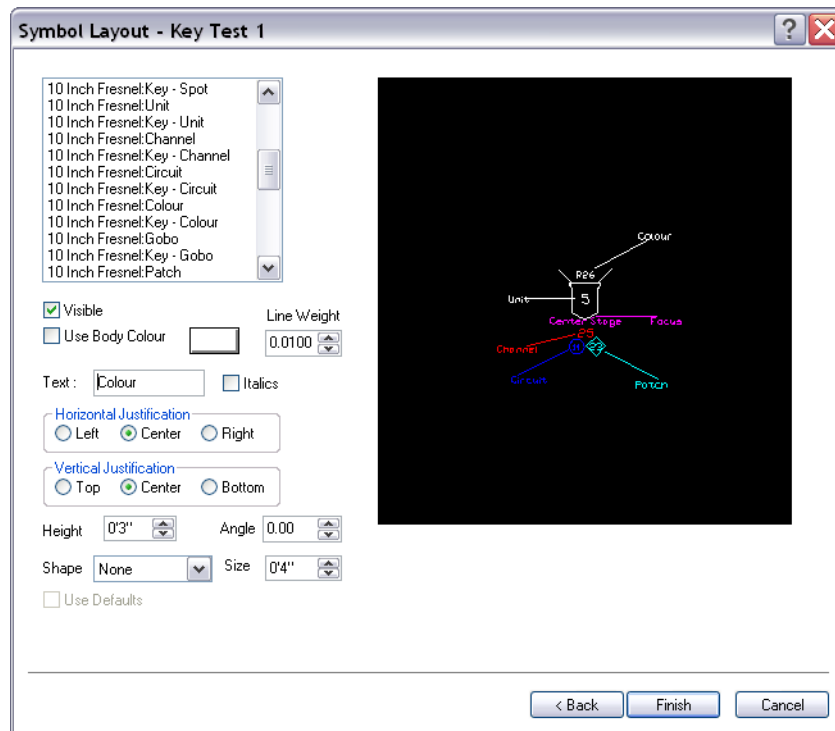
### Changing symbols

From the list of items in the window to the right of the preview window, select the symbol. To change the symbol, click the *Change Symbol* button. The following dialog box appears:



From the list on the left side, choose the new symbol. When you are finished making your choice, click *Select*.

## Step 2 - Symbol Layout



For each attribute there are two entries in the list box. One is for the attribute itself; the other is to label the attribute. The label is distinguishable by the qualifier "Key" (for example, the attribute *Focus* and the label *Key - Focus*). An extension line is drawn between the label and the attribute. For each attribute and its label you must decide whether you want to display it in the key. If yes, you can further specify how it will be displayed using the various formatting options (including text size and color, shape size and color, and justification).

You can also edit all the text, choose to give examples of attribute values, and provide custom definitions for the labels.

Options in Step 2 allow you to choose the attributes and notation to be displayed around the chosen symbols.

**Note:** To make the controls active, you may have to click to clear the *Use Defaults* check box.

- *Visible:* Select this check box if you want the attribute or label to be displayed around the symbol in your key.
- *Use Body Color:* Select this check box if you want the attribute or label to use the same font color as the symbol. To set a specific color for the attribute or label, leave the box unchecked and click the color box to choose a custom color.
- *Line weight:* Adjust this value to increase or decrease the density of the label or attribute font.
- *Text:* Type the text that you want displayed for the attribute or label.
- *Italics:* Select this check box to italicize the attribute or label font. Note there are no options to change the font.
- *Horizontal and vertical justification:* Choose the justification for the text. This is in relation to the insertion point or shape.
- *Height:* Increase or decrease to modify the font size.
- *Angle:* Specifies the attribute or label alignment in relation to the fixture symbol.
- *Shape:* Associate a shape with the label or attribute, if desired. You can choose from: none, circle, square, octagon, or diamond.
- *Size:* Increase or decrease the size of the shape as desired.

- 3 Set the position of the attribute or label by clicking and dragging on the label or attribute in the preview window. You can also select an attribute by clicking on it in the preview window.
- 4 The key as it will be drawn on the layout is displayed in the preview window. Once all the attributes are set as desired, click *Finish*.

**Result:** The Wizard shortcut is stored in the shortcut bar with the name you specified in the *Title* box.

## Editing a key

To make changes to the information that is displayed in the key, open the Key Wizard by double-clicking on the key shortcut, and then make any necessary modifications. Once a key has been defined, it does not change until you make modifications to its settings.


To rename, delete, or clone the shortcut, follow the steps defined in “Working with shortcuts” on page 54.

## Inserting a key into a layout

Once the key has been created using the Key Wizard, you can place it on the page.

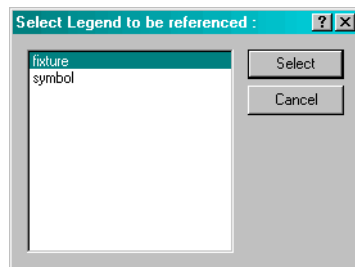
### To insert a key into a layout

- 1 From the **Insert** menu, choose **Key item**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Key* tool in the *Pres Layout Insert* toolbar. 

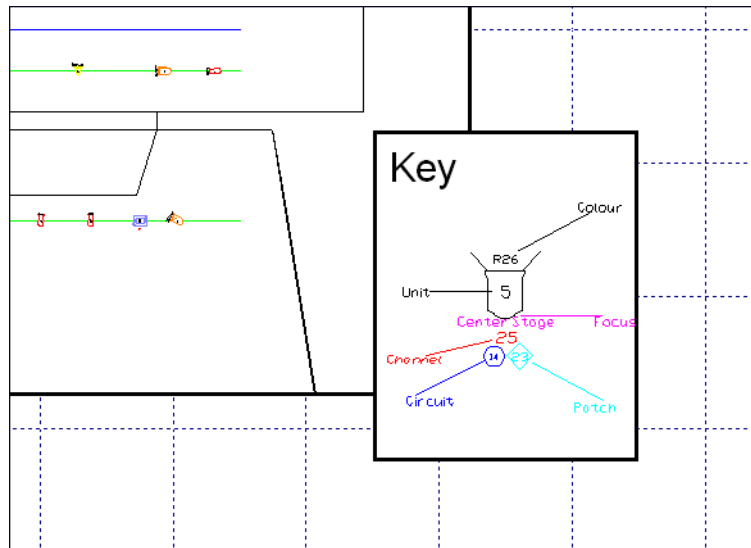
- 2 Click and drag a window (placeholder) on the “page” where you want the item to appear.

**Result:** The *Select Key to be referenced* dialog box is displayed.



- 3 Select the key that you want to add to the layout, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** Your key appears within the placeholder as drawn. By default key items are set to a scale of  $1/16'' = 1'$ .



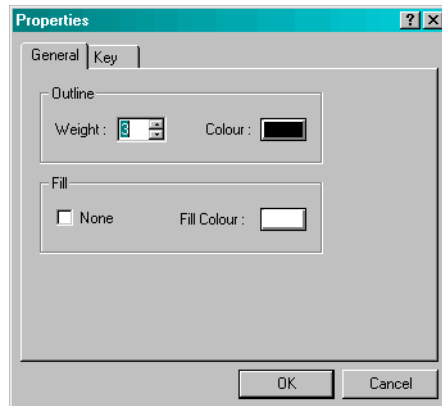
## Modifying the properties of a key

### To modify the properties of a key

- 1 On the layout, select the key that you want to modify.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Item Properties**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Item Properties* tool on the *Pres Layout Edit* toolbar. P

**Result:** The *Properties* dialog box is displayed.

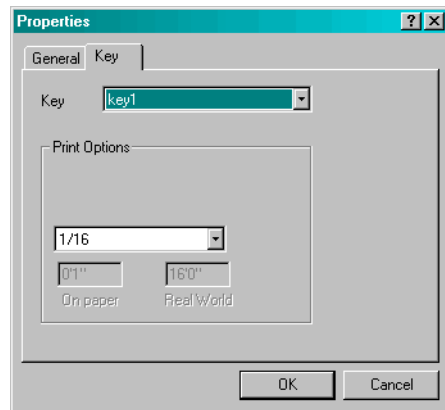


The *General* tab is similar for all items. For more information on this tab, see "To modify item properties" on page 291.

### Key tab

Options on the *Key* tab affect the scaling and content of the placeholder.





- **Key:** Select the key that you want to be displayed on the layout. A list of all the keys that you have created is displayed in the drop-down list.
- **Scale:** The scale ratio in inches and feet at which the key should be printed. If the scale that you want to use for printing is not displayed, select *Custom*.
- **On paper:** The scale ratio that you want to use on a paper copy of the layout.
- **Real World:** The “real” measurement for the scale ratio that you specify in the *On paper* box. For example, you might want to use a scaling of one inch in a paper copy of your layout. However, this one-inch measurement translates to a “realistic” measurement (for example, 3 feet).

## Layout Tools

### Placeholders

You can move and resize placeholders at any time.

#### To resize a placeholder

- 1 Click to select the presentation item.
  - 2 Click and drag the marker points of the placeholder to resize it.
- Note:** Resizing a placeholder affects the content that is displayed. You might have to edit the scale of the contents or revisit open contents.

#### To move a placeholder

- 1 Click to select the presentation item.
  - 2 When a small grey rectangle appears on your cursor, click and hold the left mouse button and drag the placeholder to the desired location.
  - 3 Release the mouse button.
- Tip:** Use the gridlines of the presentation view to line up placeholders.

#### To copy a placeholder and its contents

- 1 Click to select the presentation item.
- 2 When a small grey rectangle appears on your cursor, press and hold the CTRL key.
- 3 Click and hold the left mouse button and drag the copied item to the desired location.
- 4 Release the mouse button.

## Ordering

To facilitate overlaying and underlaying placeholders, use the *Bring to Front* and *Send to Back* tools. Think of placeholders as being piled on top of each other. *Bring to Front* moves the selected placeholder and its contents to the top of the pile. *Send to Back* moves the selected placeholder and its contents behind all of the others.

### To overlay a placeholder

- 1 Click to select the presentation item.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Bring to Front**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Bring to Front* tool on the *Pres Layout Edit* toolbar



### To underlay a placeholder

- 1 Click to select the presentation item.
- 2 From the **Edit** menu, choose **Send to Back**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Send to Back* tool on the *Pres Layout Edit* toolbar.



## Printing layouts

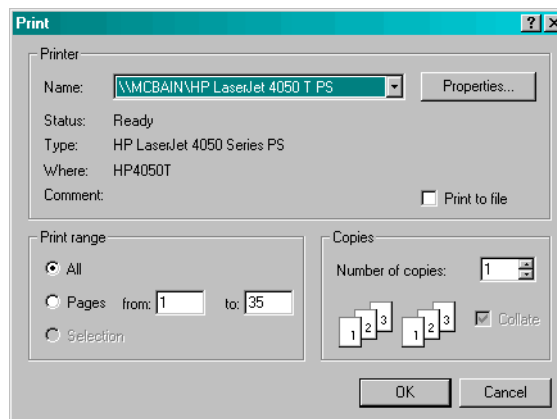
If you have a large layout you can “tile print” the layout across multiple smaller sheets of paper. To set up how you want the layout arranged on the sheets of paper, see “Working with layouts” on page 285.

You can print a complete layout or specific pages of a layout based on the settings that you choose when printing.

### To print a layout

- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Print**.

**Result:** The *Print* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 From the *Name* drop-down list, choose the printer (or plotter) that you want to use. WYSIWYG records the name that you choose for future reference and thereafter displays it as the default printer for layouts.
- 3 To print all pages of a layout, select *All*.
- 4 To print select pages of a layout, click *Pages*, and then enter the range in the *from* and *to* boxes.
- 5 If you want to print multiple copies of the pages, select the value from the *Number of copies* list box.
- 6 Click *OK*.



## Introduction

Images such as renderings and logos are stored in the *Images* tab of Presentation mode. Renderings are automatically saved here when you select “internal” in the Output Properties/Step 2 of the Render Wizard. Any other image files (bitmap or jpeg format) may be imported.

### To import a bitmap or a jpeg

- 1 Right-click on the *Images* shortcut tab, and then choose **New Image**.
- 2 Type the name of your image.
- 3 Click *OK*.
- 4 Click on the shortcut for your new image. The text “No Image Available” appears in the working area of the screen.
- 5 From the **File** menu, choose **Import**.
- 6 Use the browser to find the image file that you want to import.
- 7 Click *Open*.

### To export a bitmap or a jpeg

- 1 Select the image that you want to export.
- 2 From the **File** menu, choose **Export**.
- 3 Use the browser to select a destination and a name for the image file that you want to export. Ensure that either bitmap (.bmp) or jpeg (.jpg) is selected in the *Save As Type* box.
- 4 Click *Save*.



## Introduction

The Worksheet tab contains a spreadsheet much like many other spreadsheet programs. You can enter data and create mathematical functions here, as well as import and export data to other spreadsheet programs. This functionality is useful when you are creating spreadsheets for crew requirements, schedules, budgets, or any other show-specific data.

For more information on using variables in worksheets, refer to “Using variables in reports” on page 265.

### To import data

- 1 Right-click on the *Worksheets* shortcut tab, and then choose **New Worksheet**.
- 2 Type the name of your worksheet.
- 3 Click *OK*.
- 4 From the **File** menu, choose **Import**.
- 5 Use the browser to find the file containing the data that you want to import.
- 6 Click *Open*.

### To export data

- 1 Select the worksheet that you want to export.
- 2 From the **File** menu, choose **Export**.
- 3 Use the browser to select a destination and a name for the worksheet file that you want to export. Ensure that the desired export file type is selected in the *Save As Type* box.
- 4 Click *Save*.



## Introduction

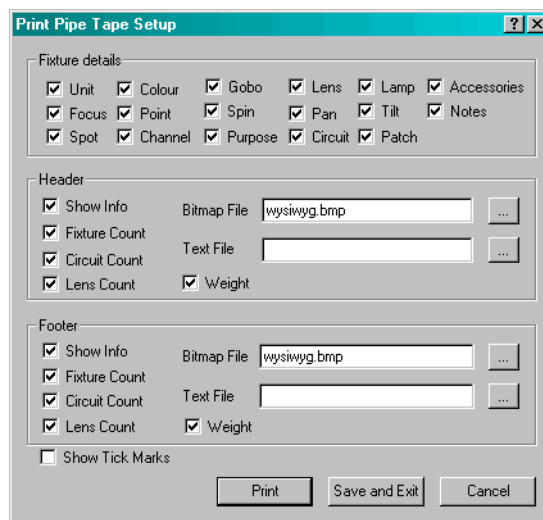
WYSIWYG enable you to make “Pipe Tapes,” which are attached to a pipe at the beginning of a hang. The pipe tape indicates to the electricians where to hang the fixtures and displays pertinent information about the fixtures, such as circuit number, dimmer number, gel color, and so on, as specified by the user. This tool significantly increases the accuracy between the WYSIWYG plot and the real installation.

**Note:** Pipe tape printers are sold separately and are available through Cast Group.

### To print a pipe tape

- 1 Connect the pipe tape printer to your computer through the serial port.
- 2 In CAD mode, select the pipe for which you want to generate a pipe tape.
- 3 From the **Tools** menu, choose **Print Pipe Tape**.

**Result:** The *Print Pipe Tape Setup* dialog box is displayed.



- 4 In the *Fixture details* group box, select the data fields that you want printed on the pipe tape for each fixture.
- 5 To print show information such as venue, lighting designer, and show name, select the *Show Info* check box. Show information is entered in Show options, as described in “Show information” on page 267.
- 6 To display a graphic in the header and/or footer, type a file name in the *Bitmap File* box or use the file browser to locate the file. To display correctly, the graphics selected must be monochrome bitmaps.
- 7 To print a total count of the fixtures on the selected pipe, select the *Fixture Count* check box. The total count is broken down by fixture type.
- 8 To print a total count of the circuits used by the fixtures, select the *Circuit Count* check box.
- 9 To display text in the footer and/or header of the pipe tape, type a text file name in the *Text File* box.

- 10** To print a total count of the number of lenses mounted in the fixtures, select the *Lens Count* check box. The total count is broken down by fixture type.
- 11** To print the weight of the fixtures on the pipe, select the *Weight* check box.
- 12** To display tick marks on the pipe tape, select the *Show Tick Marks* check box. Tick marks are placed every foot or half meter, based on the unit of measurement (imperial or metric). The tick marks are for reference purposes only.
- 13** When you have finished making your selections, click *Print* to send the print job to the pipe tape printer.
- 14** Click *Save and Exit* if you want to save the settings but do not want to print the pipe tape at this time.

# Chapter 10

---

## Live mode



Live mode is used for graphically simulating the output of a lighting control console or compatible offline editor. Live mode also has rendering ability, enabling you to create photo-realistic pictures of the simulated lighting looks. Unlike Design mode, Live mode displays transitions from cue to cue, allowing you to see the programmed movement of light over time. If you have configured a patched video source, then you can use Live mode to control the progress of your video with the console device.

Live mode is available only in WYSIWYG Perform.

### In this chapter

Layout tabs	313
Connecting to consoles	314
AutoPatch	321
Visualization	323
Autofocus	326
Rendering	328







## Layout tabs

### Introduction

Beneath the work area in each mode is a series of layout tabs. These tabs provide various configurations of the views that you are working with. To change layouts, click the appropriate tab.

Live mode contains the following layout tabs:

- Wireframe - The work area displays a full-screen wireframe view.
- Quad - The work area is divided into quadrants, three of which can be modified to show plan, front, or side views. The lower-right quadrant contains a shaded view.
- Shaded - The work area displays a full-screen shaded view.

**Note:** The wireframe views in Live mode are used for fixture selection only. To make any drawing modifications, you must return to CAD mode.



## Connecting to consoles

# Introduction

To use Live mode, you need to insert and connect to a control console or compatible offline editor. If you use a DMX console, you require a DMX interface device to connect to WYSIWYG.

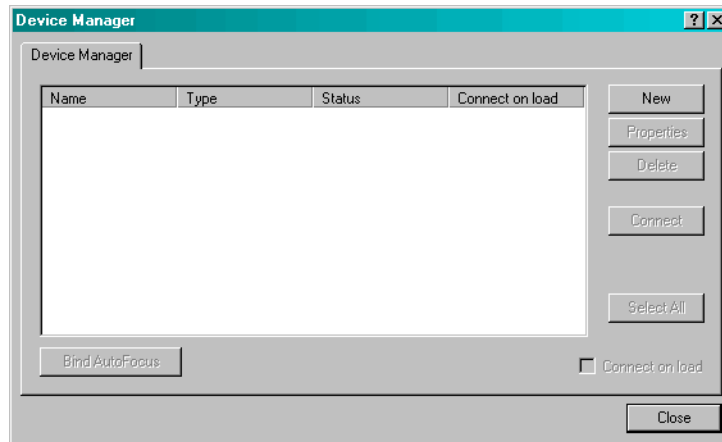
You must ensure that the patch you have created in WYSIWYG and the patch in your console are exactly the same for simulation to work properly.

## Connecting to a console

## To connect to a console

- 1 Connect the console to the computer with the appropriate hardware.
- 2 From the **Live** menu, choose **Device Manager**.

**Result:** The *Device Manager* dialog box is displayed.



- 3** Click *New*.

**Result:** The console library is displayed.

- 4 Navigate through the console library until you find the console or device that you are connecting to. Click the console name to highlight it.

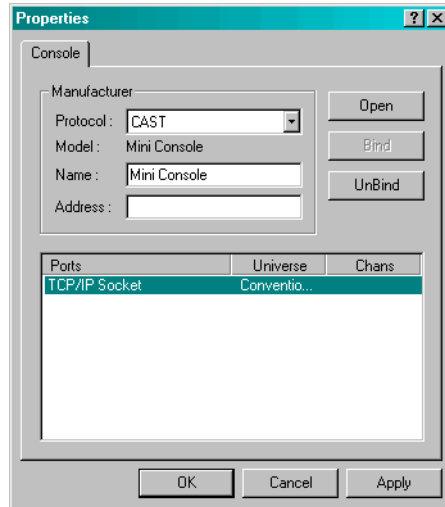
**Note:** If you are connecting to a console with a Wyg-it or Wyg-it2, you can select either the console or the Wyg-it device. The *Address* box discussed below must contain the name of the Wyg-it.

- 5** Click *Insert*.

**Result:** The console appears in the *Device Manager*.

- 6 With the console name still selected, click *Properties*.

**Result:** The *Properties* dialog box is displayed.



- 7 From the *Protocol* drop-down list, select the protocol used by the console. For example, DMX, SandNet.

**Result:** The console model is displayed in the *Model* box. The name of the console is displayed in the *Name* box.

- 8 In the *Address* box, type the designated address of the console, if applicable.

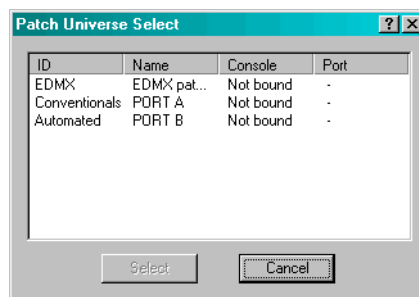
- 9 A list of the output ports from the console appears in the *Ports* list. You must bind these outputs to WYSIWYG patch universes. Click the appropriate port to highlight it.

**Note:** Motion control systems have a single port named "Motion."

- 10 Click *Bind*.

**Note:** If you are working with a motion control system, then you can bind only to motion universes; if you are working with a DMX console then you can bind only to DMX universes.

**Result:** The Patch Universe Select dialog box is displayed.



- 11 Select the desired Patch Universe, and then click *Select*.

- 12 Repeat the above steps to bind all ports to their appropriate patch universes.

**Note:** You cannot control a channel count exceeding that of the WYSIWYG Perform package that you purchased - 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, and so on.

- 13 Click *OK* to close the *Properties* box.

- 14 Click *Connect*.

**Result:** The status of the console changes to "connected."

- 15 Click *OK* to exit the Device Manager.

**Note:** Once the console is running and connected to the WYSIWYG drawing, operate the console as you would in the live venue. Run up channels and record cues using the console. Remember that WYSIWYG does not store or save cues—this is done in your console's memory. Once the console information is set up, you can set WYSIWYG to automatically connect to the console every time the file is opened.

## Working with a console

### To set the console to connect on load

- 1 From the **Live** menu, choose **Device Manager**.  
**Result:** The *Device Manager* dialog box is displayed.
- 2 Select the console.
- 3 Select the *Connect on load* check box.
- 4 Click *OK* to close the *Device Manager*.

### To edit the patch binding settings

- 1 From the **Live** menu, choose **Device Manager**.  
**Result:** The *Device Manager* dialog box is displayed.
- 2 Select the console.
- 3 Click *Properties*.
- 4 Select the port for which you want to change the patch binding.
- 5 Click *Unbind*.
- 6 Rebind as desired (follow steps 9 through 12 in “To connect to a console” on page 314).

### To remove a console from the Device Manager

- 1 From the **Live** menu, choose **Device Manager**.  
**Result:** The *Device Manager* dialog box is displayed.
- 2 Select the console that you want to remove.
- 3 Click *Delete*.  
**Result:** The console is removed and all patch binding information is lost.

### To control a DMX patched video source with a console

**Note:** If the video control is patched and DMX connected in Live Mode, then you will not be able to control the video using any of the Video Designer Tool commands in Design mode. Video sources can only be controlled by a designer tool when the DMX source is disconnected; therefore, you must first disconnect the applicable console device from Live Mode before using any of the Video Designer Tool commands.

After you have patched the control of a video source in Data mode, you can use the applicable console device to control the progress of the video in Live mode.

In WYSIWYG, you patch the *control* of a video source, not the actual video. This means that you can use the console device to control the progress of a live video stream or a video file by making the video play, pause, or rewind; you cannot use WYSIWYG to change different aspects of the video itself.

To control the video source, the DMX patch is allocated three channels with the following controls:

- **First channel (Intensity):** The video is off if the value is set between 1—128 (below 50%), it is on if the value is between 128—255 (above 50%).
  - **Second channel (Control):** The video is controlled by the position that you set on the third channel if the value is set between 1—84 (between 1% and 33%), it is paused if the value is set between 85—169 (between 33% and 66%), and it plays if the value is set between 170—255 (between 66% and 100%).
  - **Third channel (Position):** If you have set a value within the bottom third level of the second channel (between 1% and 33%), then you can use the third channel like a slider, advancing the video either backward or forward to the exact position that you want to see. If the value on the second channel is set to any level above 84 (between 33% and 100%), then the third channel is disabled.
- 1 Ensure that the console device is connected to the patched video source. For details on connecting a console, see “To connect to a console” on page 314.
- To play the video from start to finish, perform the following steps:
    - a. Set the first channel to a value between 128—255 (above 50%).
    - b. Set the second channel to a value between 255—170 (between 100% and 66%).
  - To pause the video, perform the following steps:
    - a. Set the first channel to a value between 128—255 (above 50%).
    - b. Set the second channel to a value between 255—170 (between 100% and 66%) and play the video to the spot where you want to pause it. Then move the second channel to a value between 169—85 (between 66% and 33%) to pause the video at this spot.
  - To control the progress of the video manually, perform the following steps:
    - a. Set the first channel to a value between 128—255 (above 50%).
    - b. Set the second channel to a value between 84—1 (between 33% and 1%).
    - c. Slide the third channel up and down to control the progress of the video, forward and backward.

### To control a DMX patched movement axis with a console

After you have patched a movement axis in Data mode, you can use the applicable console device in Live mode to control the movement of any objects that are attached to the axis.

To control the object, the DMX patch is allocated two channels with the following controls:

- **First channel (Move):** The first channel is for coarse movement and can be used to advance the object quickly to any position along the entire path, from start to finish.
- **Second channel (Move Fine):** The second channel is used for further refining the object's position that you set with the first channel. Adjust the slider on the second channel to move the object very slightly either forward or back from its current position. The movement achieved with this channel is so fine, that it is best viewed on linear axes that are quite long. Note that for rotation axes, the movement is so slight, that you may not be able to see it.

- 1 Ensure that the console device is connected to the patched movement axis. For details on connecting a console, see “To connect to a console” on page 314.
- 2 To move the object quickly along the movement axis, adjust the slider on the first channel, stopping at the position where you want to leave the object.
- 3 To move the object in fine increments either forward or back from its current position, adjust the slider on the second channel.

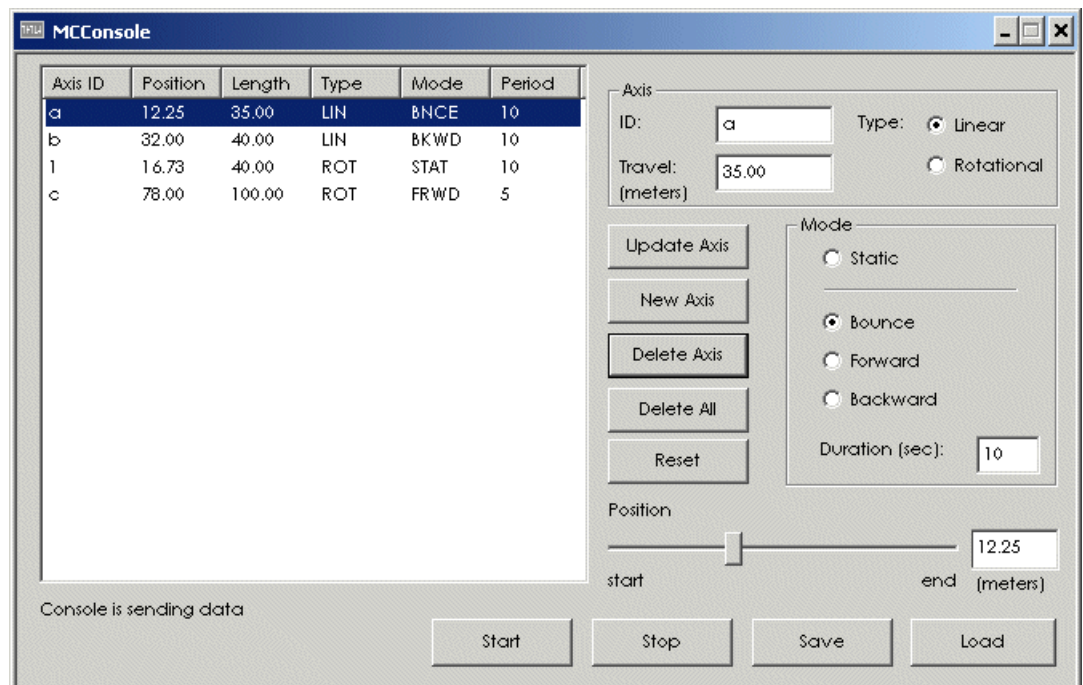
**Tip:** To view fine movement, the object must be attached to a very long linear axis, or be set to rotate in a very wide arc. It is also a good idea to zoom in quite close to the object before moving it.

### To control a motion-control patched movement axis with a motion control system

After you have patched a movement axis in Data mode, you can use the applicable motion control system in Live mode to control the movement of any objects that are attached to the axis.

Based on the type of system that you are using, you can control the object in different ways. The following procedure outlines how to control the object(s) with WYSIWYG's Motion Control Console.

- 1 Launch the Motion Control Console.



- 2 Ensure that the Motion Control Console (or the motion control system if you are using one) is connected to the patched movement axis. You connect the Motion Control Console (and motion control systems) in much the same way as you connect consoles. For details, see “To connect to a console” on page 314.
- 3 To change the settings of a patched movement axis, highlight the axis in the left pane, and then choose from the following settings:
  - **ID box:** To change the ID of the movement axis, type the new motion control ID.
  - **Travel box:** Type the distance (in meters for linear axes, in degrees for rotational axes) that you want the object to travel along or around the axis. This can be the full length/angle of the axis, or only a portion of it if you do not want the object to travel along/around the full path. For linear axes, if you type

a value that is longer than the actual axis, the object stops at the end of the physical axis.

- **Type:** If you change the axis type so that it does not match the axis that you have drawn (for example, if the actual axis is linear, but you choose rotational here), the cell in patch view turns to red.
  - In the Mode area, select the type of movement for the object:
    - **Static** Select this option if you want to specify the precise location of a static object on the movement axis. You can then use the position slider at the bottom of the window to adjust the position and control the movement of the object manually.
    - **Bounce** Select this option if you want the object to move forward and backward in a continuous loop along the movement axis.
    - **Forward** Select this option if you want the object to move forward along the axis from start to finish, and then start over again at the beginning in a continuous forward loop.
    - **Backward** Select this option if you want the object to move backwards along the axis from finish to start, and then begin over again in a continuous backwards loop.
  - **Duration box:** If you have chosen any *moving* Mode value (that is, any value *except* Static), you can specify the length of time (in seconds) over which you want the full range of motion to take place. The larger the number you type in this box, the slower the object moves.
  - **Position slider:** For all moving modes (bounce, forward, backward), the slider indicates the position of the object when the console is sending data to WYSIWYG. For the static mode, while the console is started, drag the slider to to adjust the position of the object on its axis. The position value changes in the box in the left pane.
  - **Position box:** While the console is sending data to WYSIWYG, for all moving modes, this box shows the progress of the object's movement along its axis; for the axes in the static mode, you can type the precise location of the object on the axis.
- 4 Click *Update Axis* to view your new settings.
  - 5 Click *Save* to save the changes.
- Note:** If you make any changes to the axis settings and save the changes, you can revert to the previous settings by clicking *Load*.

## Connecting with a WYG-it 2

WYG-it 2 is Cast Software's DMX interface device. You require a DMX interface to connect a DMX console to WYSIWYG. Each WYG-it 2 has 2 DMX inputs that enable you to visualize up to 1024 channels of DMX. The WYG-it 2 also has 2 DMX through ports that allow you to connect the console both to WYSIWYG and to the physical lighting equipment at the same time. WYG-it 2 is equipped with the necessary outputs to send Autofocus commands.

You can connect the WYG-it 2 to your computer by inserting the WYG-it 2 USB cable into an available USB port. Once connected to your computer, the WYG-it 2 does not need an external power supply.

**Note:** When WYG-it 2 is installed, the WYG-it DMX Interface configuration panel is accessible in the Control Panel of your computer. The WYG-it 2 name recorded in this configuration panel is the value that you must type in the *Address* box of the Device Manager Properties window.

## Mini Console

WYSIWYG contains an application that simulates a small console, called the Mini Console. You can use this application in lieu of a real console. To use the Mini Console, run the Mini Console application, found in the WYSIWYG section of the Windows Start menu. Connect as if you are using an external console.

The Mini Console gives you control of the first 25 channels on a single DMX universe but does not record or playback cues.





## Introduction

AutoPatch is a protocol by which WYSIWYG can transfer the patch hookup to a compatible console. AutoPatch is only available in WYSIWYG Perform.

You must be connected to a compatible console for this feature to be enabled. All ports for which you want the patch information to be transferred must be properly bound. Only the hookup information in patch universes bound to the console's outputs will transfer.

The patch information is transferred over Ethernet.

### To perform an AutoPatch

- 1 Connect to the console as described in "To connect to a console" on page 314.
- 2 From the **Live** menu, choose **AutoPatch**.

**Result:** The *AutoPatch* dialog opens.



- 3 Click *Send Patch*.

**Result:** WYSIWYG assembles the patch information for all the fixtures in the plot and then attempts to send the relevant patch information to each connected AutoPatch-capable device.

#### Notes:

- A fixture's patch information is transmitted to a console only if the following conditions are met:
  - the fixture has at least one part that is patched to a patch universe
  - the patch universe is bound to the console
  - the console is connected to WYSIWYG through the *Device Manager*
- Some fixtures might have parts patched to two (or more) different consoles. In this situation, both consoles will receive the patch information for that fixture, but the port numbers given for each part will be set appropriately for each console.
- It is recommended that you click *Clear Patch* prior to sending the patch to clear out the existing patch.

- 4 Click *Close*.

### To clear the patch

- 1 Connect to the console as described in "To connect to a console" on page 314.
- 2 From the **Live** menu, choose **AutoPatch**.

**Result:** The *AutoPatch* dialog opens.

- 3 Click *Clear Patch*.

**Result:** WYSIWYG prompts each AutoPatch-capable device to clear the patch for each port that is bound to a WYSIWYG patch universe.

- 4 Click *Close*.



# Visualization

## Introduction

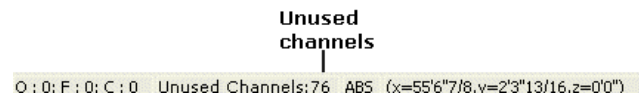
There is a limitation on the number of DMX channels that can be simulated in Live mode. This limitation is based on the level of WYSIWYG Perform that you have installed on your computer.

WYSIWYG Perform is available in 500, 1000, 2000, 5000 and Unlimited channel variants. With each of these variants, the following channels of simulation are available:

- WYSIWYG Perform 500=512 channels
- WYSIWYG Perform 1000=1024 channels
- WYSIWYG Perform 2000=2048 channels
- WYSIWYG Perform 5000=5120 channels
- WYSIWYG Perform Unlimited=51,200 channels

In Live mode, WYSIWYG will not simulate the DMX values being received on channels that exceed the Perform channel count of your system. The unused channels display on the status bar tracks the remaining channels for simulation, based on the level of your Perform system.

**Note:** Fixtures on layers that are not visible or not included in the current scene are not counted.



For more information on the status bar, refer to "Status bar" on page 64.

## Simulation options

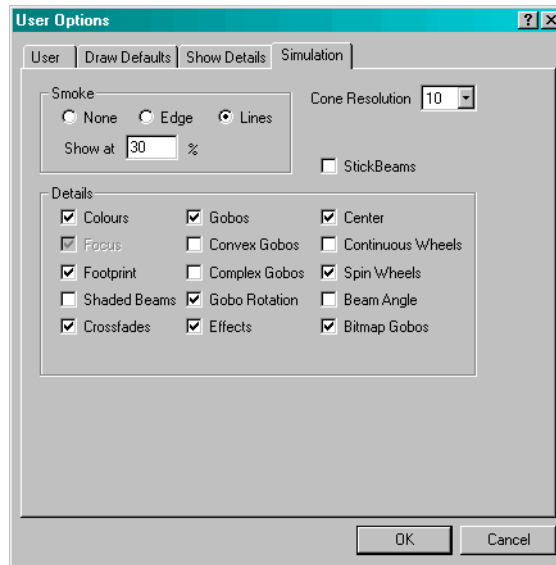
The Simulation options affect how fixtures respond in Live mode and how the beams are displayed in shaded views. Turning options off will yield faster simulation performance while compromising aesthetics. For optimal results, increase the processing power of your computer.

### To change the simulation options

- 1 From the **Options** menu, choose **User Options**.

**Result:** The *User Options* dialog box is displayed.

2 Click the *Simulation* tab.



3 Make your selections, and then click *OK* to exit.

- a. The smoke level affects the density of the cones of light.
- b. The cone resolution affects the shape of the footprint. The higher the number, the more elliptical the footprint; the lower the number, the more square the footprint. Five is the fastest while 40 is a near perfect circle or ellipsis.
- c. Select the *StickBeams* check box to draw the center of the light beam for each fixture. This is the quickest way to simulate moving lights with the least beam clutter.
- d. Deselect the *Colors* check box to ignore color settings and have all beams displayed as open-white.
- e. Select the *Focus* check box to set the image in focus as the brightest in Wireframe views. In shaded views, the hard or soft edge can be seen when the focus parameter is set.
- f. Select the *Footprint* check box to draw hard lines depicting where the light hits the set.
- g. Select the *Shaded Beams* check box to produce soft edge beam footprints on the set, showing you the cosine distribution of your lights in shaded views. The objects comprising the set must have their facets split. To enable this setting, select *Facet Splitting* on the *Object Settings* tab of Show Options. For more information on this tab, refer to "Object Settings tab" on page 90.
- h. Select the *Crossfades* check box to show the physical limitations of the motors of the fixtures or electronic accessories. This will be evident for devices such as moving heads or scrollers, which might not be able to move as fast as the rate at which the console is changing values. Crossfades also show you which fixtures use internal timing on a separate speed channel.
- i. Select the *Gobos* check box to simulate gobo details. Gobo wheels often take a lot of processing power and can slow down the refresh rate of other fixtures' updates unnecessarily. If you are concerned about cue timing, set the scene first with gobos, and then turn off this option to obtain a faster refresh rate.
- j. Select the *Convex gobos* check box to simulate convex gobo fixtures. Some complex gobos that include shapes similar to a "C" have to be pre-processed to make them appear correctly. This can often reduce the refresh rate.

- k.** Select the *Complex gobos* check box to simulate complex gobo fixtures. Most gobos are drawn in a complex and a simplified form. The complex forms are far too slow for real time simulation and should only be used in rendering.
- l.** To simulate gobo rotation, select the *Gobo Rotation* check box. This option can slow down the refresh rate substantially as gobos can be rotating even when the fixture's intensity is at zero.
- m.** To simulate effects such as prisms, select the *Effects* check box. This might increase the number of lines that WYSIWYG has to draw, thus slowing down processing power.
- n.** Select the *Center* check box to draw a point from the fixture to the point on the stage where the center of the beam hits. If the fixture has CMY color mixing, the line will change color to match the output from the console.
- o.** Select the *Continuous Wheels* check box to show you automated wheels rotating into place as they would on the real fixtures. The effect of the wheel rotating 360 degrees rather than snapping in steps will be shown.
- p.** Select the *Spin Wheels* check box to simulate spin wheel fixtures. Some automated fixtures have wheels that spin continuously. Gobo wheels often take a lot of processing power and can slow down the refresh rate of other fixture's updates unnecessarily.
- q.** Select the *Beam Angles* check box to display the photometrics of the fixture's beam angle instead of the field angle. The angle that is displayed is the measurement in degrees from the center of the beam to where the light level drops off to 50% of the peak. For more information on photometrics, refer to "Photometrics tab" on page 190.
- r.** Select the *Bitmap Gobos* check box to simulate bitmap gobo fixtures. Custom gobos that have a bitmap image attached will be simulated. This selection provides a realistic simulation.

**Note:** Also noteworthy are the properties of shaded views. These are discussed in "Shaded views" on page 71.



## Introduction

Autofocus is the protocol that WYSIWYG uses to “talk back” to a compatible console. Using the mouse in a Wireframe view or using the concept shortcuts and design tools at any time, you can direct the console to select fixtures, set focus, and control intensity, iris, and color. Autofocus is connected through MIDI, Serial, or Ethernet.

The following consoles are compatible with the Autofocus protocol:


- ETC Expression and Impression consoles
- Flying Pig WholeHog II and III
- Jands Hog 250, 500, 600, and 1000 consoles
- Compulite’s Animator 48C, Animator 72C, Sabre, and Spark Top consoles
- Avab’s Pronto, Panther, Jaguar, and Safari consoles
- Leprecon LP-X24 console
- Transtechnik’s Prisma NT and Focus NT consoles
- Rosco Horizon software

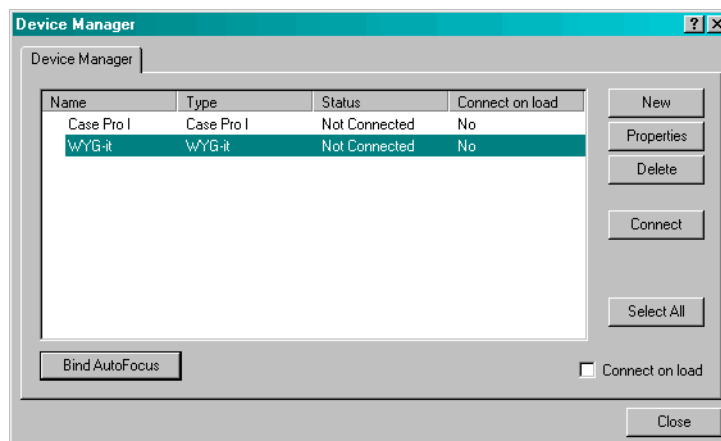
For detailed instructions on setting up AutoFocus to work with the HogII, refer to “Setting up AutoFocus to work with the HogPC” on page 361.

### To bind Autofocus to the console

- 1 Follow steps 1 through 14 of “To connect to a console” on page 314.
- 2 Click *Bind Autofocus*.

**Note:** The *Bind Autofocus* button is only available when a compatible console is selected in the Device Manager.

**Result:** The autofocus icon  appears beside the name of the console in the Device Manager.



- 3 Click *Connect*.
- 4 Click *OK* to close the Device Manager.

## Autofocus tools and menu commands

### To select fixtures

The procedure for selecting fixtures in Live mode is the same as selecting fixtures in Design mode using the design tools. For more information, refer to “Using the Design tools” on page 239.

### To use the Autofocus tools

The procedure for using the autofocus tools is the same as using the design tools. For more information, refer to “Using the Design tools” on page 239.

### To use the Autofocus menu commands

Right-click on a selected fixture or fixtures to open a menu with the following Autofocus commands:

- **At Level and Focus:** Sets the intensity of the selected lights on the connected Autofocus-compatible console to the level last specified by the Intensity command, and then launches the Focus command.
- **Focus:** When you click in a Wireframe view, the selected automated fixtures will focus (if they can) to that point. Click and drag to position them in real-time. Change the missing focus coordinate to alter the height at which you want to focus the fixtures.
- **Intensity:** Reveals a sub-menu where you can specify the level to set the intensity for the selected fixtures. The first option in the list is the last level you specified and by default is set to **Full**. You can also set the level to half and out.
- **Iris:** Sets the iris to either tight or wide. There is also a Specify option where you can set the iris to any percentage. The Specify value is retained for the session.
- **Color:** Fixtures that can mix color can be directed to either a palette color or an approximation of a manufacturer's gel color. You can specify and save palette colors using the custom color creator or Palette shortcuts.

#### Tips:

- You can repeat Autofocus commands by touching the Space bar. This way, you can select one fixture, adjust it, select another, and then press the Space bar to perform the same operation repeatedly.
- Alter the missing focus coordinate to focus fixtures at different heights.
- When focusing fixtures, you can click and drag in the wireframe view. If you are using WYSIWYG in the theatre, launch this command, and then look to the stage to position your lights.
- Working in an Isometric view, you can use the snap tools to focus fixtures to points on your set pieces.
- If you set the intensity to a specific value, the right-click menu option **At Full** and **Focus** changes to **At ##%** and **Focus** where **##** is the specific value that you set.
- Select multiple fixtures by dragging a window around them. If you drag the window from right to left across projected beams, you can select the fixtures that produced the beams.
- To select fixtures by type, draw a box using the right mouse button. You will be prompted to isolate one or more types of fixtures.
- Use the Concept shortcuts to create and select groups of fixtures.
- Use the Palette shortcuts to save and send color commands.



# Rendering

## Introduction

At any time in Live mode you can generate a rendering of a lighting cue or static look. The Render Wizard calculates the rendering based on the DMX values being received at the moment when you click *Finish*.

### To render a lighting look

- 1 In the working area of the screen, display the lighting look that you want to render.
- 2 From the **Design** menu, choose **Render**.

**Tip:** You can also click the *Render Wizard* tool in the *Design* toolbar.



**Result:** The Render Wizard opens and guides you through a series of options. Click *Next* and *Back* to navigate through the Render Wizard.

- 3 Click *Finish*.

**Result:** WYSIWYG generates the rendering of your lighting look or cue. If the rendering is saved internally, it is available as an image in Presentation mode.

**Note:** For more information, see “Rendering” on page 250.



# Chapter 11

---

## WYSILink - Link mode



WYSILink (Link) mode becomes available when you purchase and install the WYSILink add-on for WYSIWYG. WYSILink acts as an interface to ETCLink. For further details on ETCLink, refer to your *Sensor CEM User Manual*.

In this mode you can view diagnostic information about the fixtures in your system. You can also record and play back backup looks and view dimmer and dimmer rack information.

### In this chapter

Layout tabs	331
Setting up WYSILink	332
WYSILink mode	333
ETCLink functions	338





## Layout tabs

### Introduction

Beneath the work area in each mode is a series of layout tabs. These tabs provide various configurations of the views in which you are working. To change layouts, click the appropriate tab. Link mode contains the following layout tab:

- Message Log - The work area displays a spreadsheet of ETCLink error messages.



# Setting up WYSILink

## Introduction

WYSILink combines WYSIWYG visualization software with ETC's Sensor Advanced Features to perform system diagnostics. When Sensor detects a problem, WYSILink logs it, posts a detailed alert and highlights the image of the affected fixture, along with lamp and dimmer data.

WYSILink highlights affected fixtures in Data and Wireframe views in CAD, Data, and Live modes, giving you the most complete information about the problem. You can also use the message log to track problems by fixture over time.

WYSILink resides on a PC connected to an ETCNet2 network and gives you access to all ETCLink features. You can record and play backup looks, view which console is controlling which dimmers, and obtain information from any dimmer or dimmer rack in your system.

## Hardware requirements

WYSILink requires a few additional pieces of hardware to perform system diagnostics. For more information on hardware requirements, refer to "Installation" on page 31.

## Upgrading to WYSILink

WYSILink is an optional feature set for WYSIWYG. You can upgrade your dongle for WYSILink operation by calling your WYSIWYG dealer. Once you have purchased the upgrade, you will be provided with an upgrade code. To learn how to upgrade to WYSILink, refer to "Upgrades" on page 42.

## ETCNet2 compatibility

WYSILink supports ETCNet2 version 2.1.1 and version 3.0.0 networks. WYSILink can only monitor one ETCNet2 version at a time. By default, WYSILink will monitor an ETCNet2 version 2.0.0 network.

To set the version that is monitored, refer to "ETC Interface tab" on page 88.



## Introduction

WYSILink mode is accessed through the *LINK* mode button at the top of the WYSIWYG screen. You can view the WYSILink Message Log and configure your WYSILink settings from LINK mode.

**Note:** If you cannot see the *LINK* mode button, then you are not running WYSIWYG with a WYSILink-enabled dongle. Contact your dealer or Cast Software Technical Support for further information.

## Message Log

The Message Log provides a spreadsheet view of ETCLink error messages. As error states occur, messages are logged in the Message Log, and classified as either "Pending" or "Cleared".

- Pending messages are generated at the time of the error.
- Cleared messages are generated when an error has been corrected.

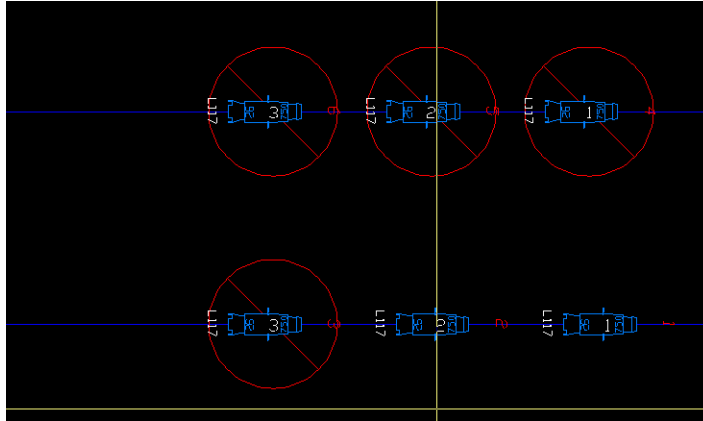
Pending and Cleared messages are paired, so that when an error state has been corrected, the appropriate Pending message is cancelled. You have the option of viewing all Pending and Cleared messages, or only Pending messages (for error states that have not been corrected).

**Note:** WYSILink defaults to displaying only Pending Messages. To change this setting, refer to "Message Log options" on page 334.

MessageData Timestamp	MessageData Pending	MessageData Severity	MessageData Message Text	SourceData Node Type	SourceData IP Address	MessageData Category	N Set
2002/08/20 09:34:45	Pending	Error	Rack 1 DMX port A I	Sensor CEM	10.101.50.105	Dimming	3132
2002/08/20 09:35:03	Cleared	Info	Rack 1 DMX port A I	Sensor CEM	10.101.50.105	Dimming	3136
2002/08/20 09:38:19	Pending	Error	Rack 1 DMX port A I	Sensor CEM	10.101.50.105	Dimming	3120
2002/08/20 09:48:45	Cleared	Info	Rack 1 DMX port A I	Sensor CEM	10.101.50.105	Dimming	3121
2002/08/20 09:49:45	Pending	Error	Data error on Rack	Sensor CEM	10.101.50.105	Dimming	3122
2002/08/20 09:49:47	Cleared	Error	Error TU has cleared	Sensor CEM	10.101.50.105	Dimming	3123

Special circumstances arise when errors are generated when WYSILink is offline. If an error is generated and corrected while WYSILink is offline, these messages will not appear in the Message Log. If an error has been generated when WYSILink is offline, and the message is not cleared, the Pending message will appear in the Message Log when WYSILink comes online.

Errors are indicated not only in the Message Log, but also in the Wireframe and Data views. Fixtures assigned to dimmers that have an error are highlighted in red in the spreadsheet, and by a red symbol in Wireframe views.



## Message Log options

Message log options affect how messages are processed and received.

### To access message log options

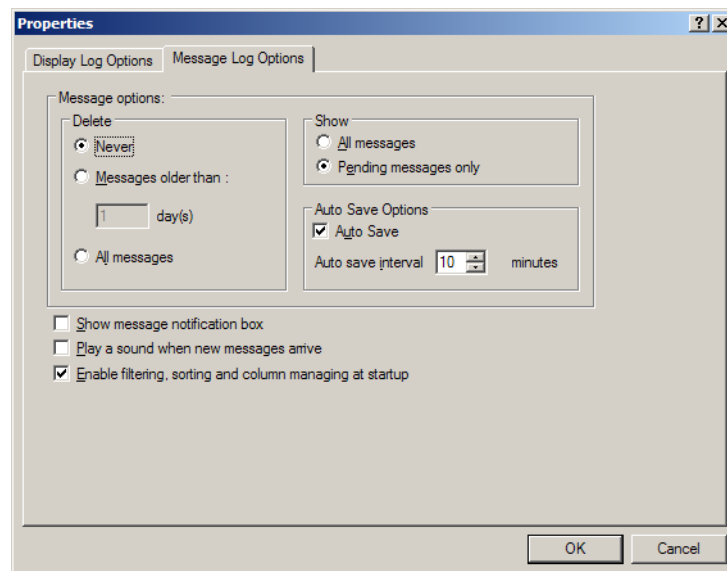
- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Message Log Options**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Message Log Options* tool on the *Message Log Options* toolbar.



**Result:** The *Properties* dialog box is displayed.

- 2 Click the *Message Log Options* tab.



Use the *Message Log Options* to configure the Message Log:


- Use the *Delete* settings to determine how long messages are held in the Message Log and to delete messages currently in the Message Log.
- Use the *Show* settings to switch between displaying all messages (Pending and Cleared) or only Pending messages.
- Use the *Auto Save* settings to determine how often the Message Log is backed up to disk.

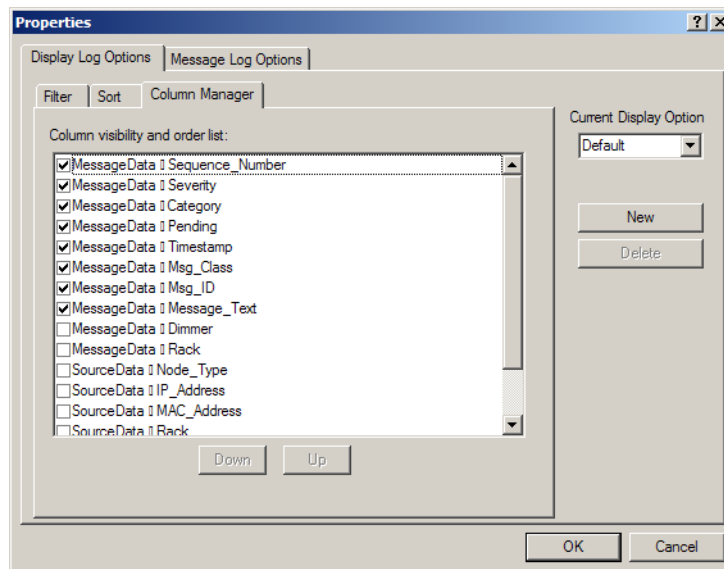
- Use the notification settings to set up how you want to be notified of new message arrival. You can choose to have a notification box pop up, and/or have a sound play as new messages arrive.

## Display Log Options tab

The display log options affect how columns are ordered and how the messages are sorted.

### To set column visibility and order


- 1 Click the *Display Log Options* tool on the *Message Log Options* toolbar. 
- 2 Click the *Display Log Options* tab.
- 3 Click the *Column Manager* tab.



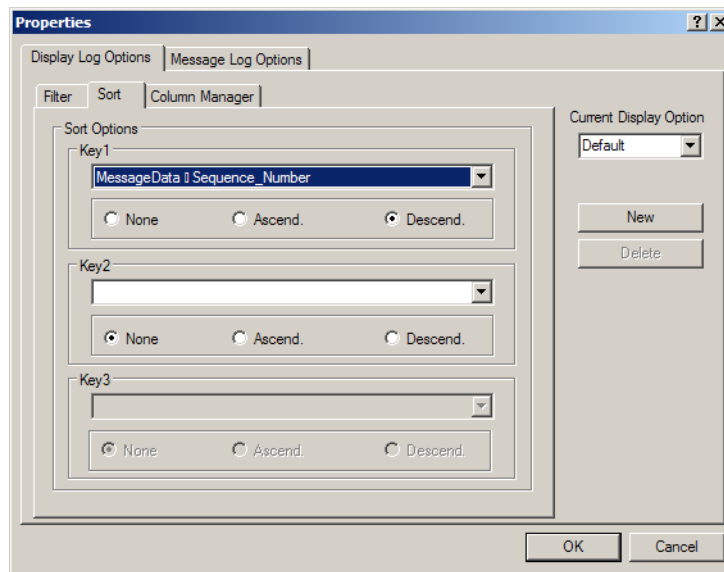
- 4 Click the name of the column that you want to move, and then click *Down* or *Up* to reposition it in the listing.
- 5 Click the box to the left of the column name to set its visibility. A check indicates that the column is currently visible.
 

**Note:** You cannot make the column labeled *Message Data Sequence Number* invisible.
- 6 Click *OK*.

### To sort messages

- 1 Click the *Display Log Options* tool on the *Message Log Options* toolbar. 
- 2 Click the *Display Log Options* tab.


- 3 Click the *Sort* tab.

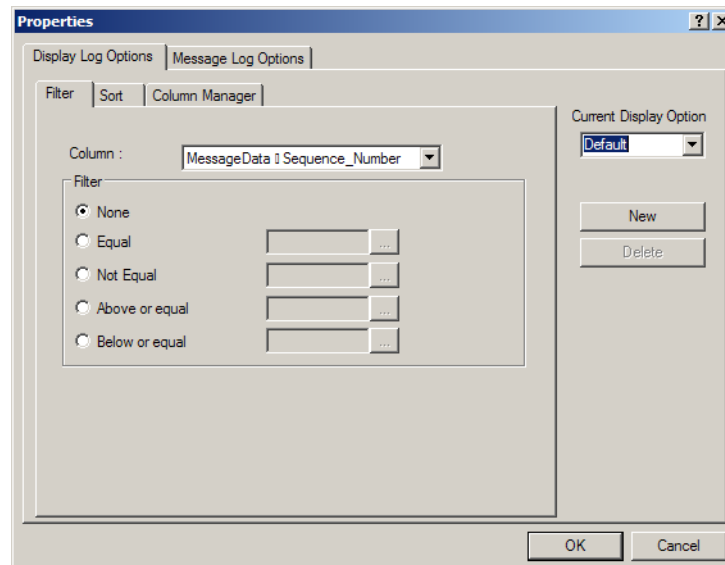


- 4 In each *Key* position, select the column by which you want to sort, and then click *Ascending* or *Descending* to set the sort order.
- 5 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The Message Log will refresh with the newly sorted data.

### To filter messages

- 1 Click the *Display Log Options* tool on the *Message Log Options* toolbar. 
- 2 Click the *Display Log Options* tab.
- 3 Click the *Filter* tab.



- 4 Select the column that you want to filter.
- 5 Set the type of filter using the options.
- 6 Click *OK*.


**Result:** The Message Log will refresh with the newly filtered data.



## Exporting the Message Log

You can export the Message Log to a comma-delimited text file that you can view in most spreadsheet applications. This feature is useful if you are having system problems and need to get the Message Log to Cast Software Technical Services.

### To export the Message Log


- 1 Click the *Export Message Log* tool on the *Message Log Options* toolbar. 
- 2 Use the browser to set the name and destination of the exported file, and then click *Save*.

**Note:** The file must have the “.log” extension.

## Printing the Message Log


### To print the message log

From the **File** menu, choose **Print**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Print* tool on the *Message Log Options* toolbar. 

### To print preview the message log

From the **File** menu, choose **Print Preview**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Print Preview* tool on the *Message Log Options* toolbar. 



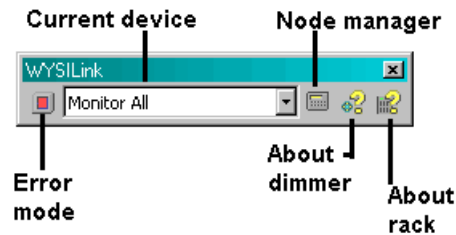
## ETCLink functions

### Introduction

WYSILink enables you to use many of the ETCLink features commonly found on ETC consoles. These features allow you to get information about your Sensor dimming system. You can access information about individual dimmers and about entire dimmer racks. You can also record dimmer loads and record and playback backup looks from within WYSILink.

### The WYSILink toolbar

The WYSILink toolbar provides quick access to the ETCLink functions described below:



- Error Mode toggles between the currently selected node and all connected nodes.
- Node Selection enables you to view only the channels owned by that node.
- Node Manager (refer to “Node Manager” on page 340).
- About Dimmer (see “About Dimmer” below).
- About Dimmer Rack (see “About Dimmer Rack” on page 339).

### About Dimmer

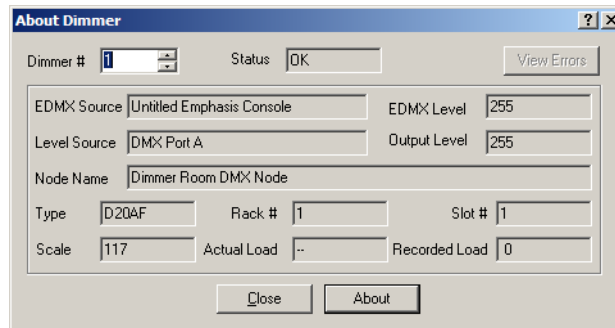
The *About Dimmer* dialog box provides specific information about an individual dimmer, such as the rack number, slot number, and type of dimmer. The name of the connected node, EDMX source, and the source for setting the level are also displayed.

## To access dimmer information

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **About Dimmer**.

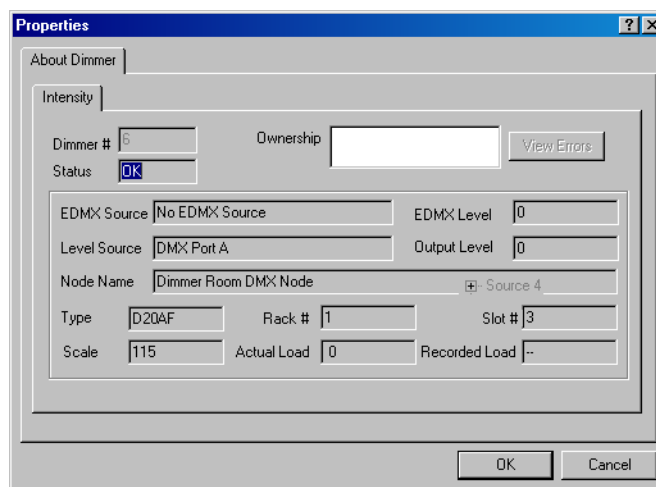
**Tip:** You can also use the *About Dimmer* tool on the WYSILink toolbar. 

**Result:** The *About Dimmer* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 To obtain dimmer information, type or select the dimmer number, and then click *About Dimmer*.

**Tip:** You can also access the **About Dimmer** command in CAD, Data, and Live modes by right-clicking on a fixture symbol. This will open a slightly different dialog box.



**Note:** The *Ownership* box lists all network devices (such as consoles and nodes) that are attempting to control the specified dimmer.

## About Dimmer Rack

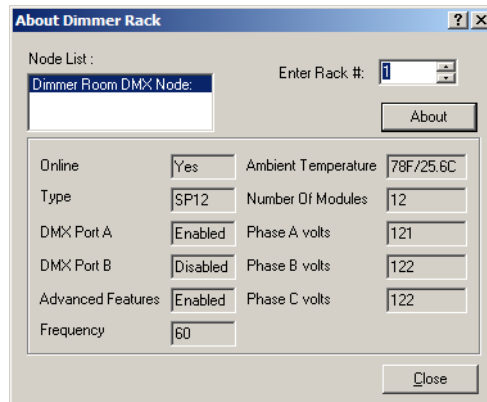
The *About Dimmer Rack* dialog box allows you to choose a specific dimmer rack on a specific ETCNet2 DMX node. The status of the input ports (A and B), number of dimmer modules on the rack, and the dimmer type are displayed on this dialog box.

## To access rack information

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **About Rack**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *About Rack* tool on the WYSILink toolbar. 

**Result:** The *About Dimmer Rack* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Select a node, the rack number, and then click *About*.

## Node Manager

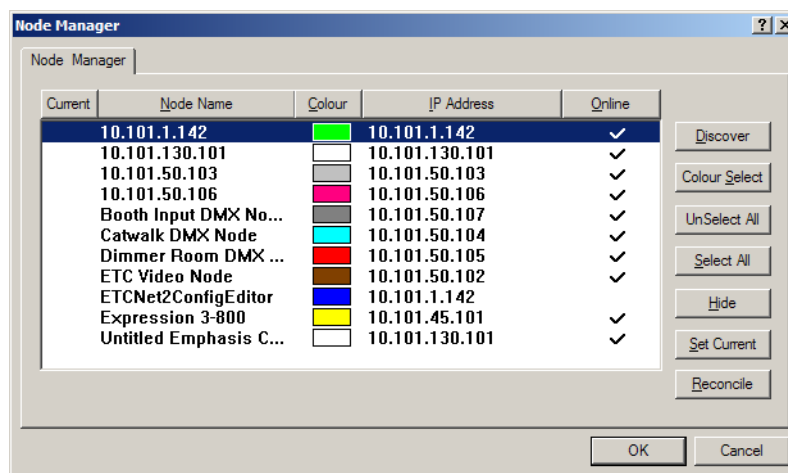
In Live mode, WYSILink includes the Node Manager tab on the Device Manager dialog box. In this dialog box, you need to “discover” connected nodes before other functions will work.

## To access the Node Manager

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Node Manager**.

**Tip:** You can also use the *Node Manager* tool on the WYSILink toolbar. 

**Result:** The *Node Manager* dialog box is displayed.



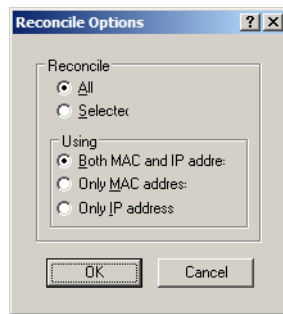
- 2 Click the *Discover* button to view the nodes that are currently online and to set a color for the display of channels that are “owned” by each node.
- 3 To set the color for a node, double-click the color box to the right of the node’s name, or click the node’s name, and then click *Color Select*.
- 4 To remove an entry from the list, click *Hide*.

You can use the Node Manager to reconcile the configurations between your show document and the actual ETCNet2 Nodes that are connected to your ETCNet2 network.

## To reconcile nodes

- 1 In the *Node Manager* dialog box, click *Reconcile*.

**Result:** The *Reconcile Options* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Select whether you want to reconcile all nodes, or only currently selected nodes. Use CTRL+Click to select multiple nodes in the Node Manager.
- 3 Select whether you will use Media Access Control (MAC) addresses or Internet Protocol (IP) addresses.
- 4 Click *OK*.

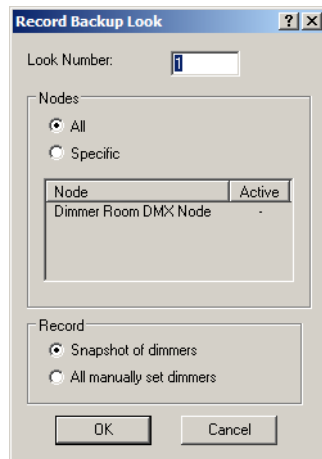
## Backup looks

You can record, play back, stop, and clear backup looks from within WYSILink. For more information on backup looks, refer to your *Sensor CEM User Manual*.

## To record a backup look

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Backup Looks**, and then choose **Record**.

**Result:** The *Record Backup Look* dialog box is displayed.

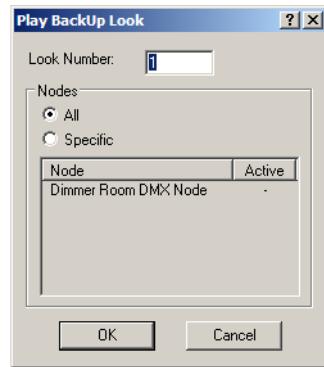


- 2 In the *Look Number* box, type a number for the backup look that you want to record.
- 3 Select the nodes for which you want to record the backup look. Click *Specify* to select the node from the *Node* list. *All* indicates that the backup look will be recorded for all connected nodes.
- 4 When recording a backup look, you have the option of recording the output level of all dimmers in the selected dimmer rack (*Snapshot of dimmers* option) or only those that have been set using the dimmer rack control panel (*All manually set dimmers* option).
- 5 When finished, click *OK*.

## To play back a backup look

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Backup Looks**, and then choose **Play**.

**Result:** The *Play BackUp Look* dialog box is displayed.

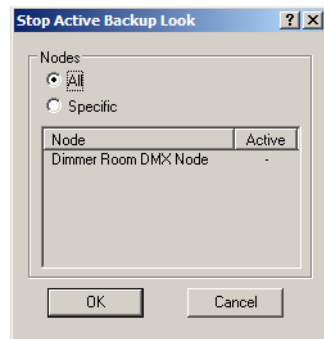


- 2 In the *Look Number* box, type the number of the backup look that you want to play.
- 3 Select the nodes for which you want to play the backup look. Click *Specify* to select the node from the *Node* list. *All* indicates that the backup look will be played for all connected nodes.
- 4 When finished, click *OK*.

## To stop a playback look

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Backup Looks**, and then choose **Stop**.

**Result:** The *Stop Active Backup Look* dialog box is displayed.



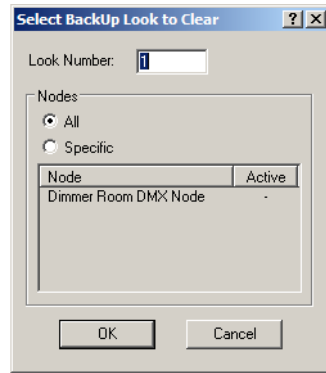
- 2 In the *Look Number* box, type the number of the backup look that you want to stop.
- 3 Select the nodes for which you want to stop the backup look. Click *Specify* to select the node from the *Node* list. *All* indicates that the backup look will be stopped for all connected nodes.
- 4 When finished, click *OK*.

## To clear a backup look

Perform this procedure if you want to permanently erase a backup look from a dimmer rack.

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Backup Looks**, and then choose **Clear**.

**Result:** The *Select BackUp Look to Clear* dialog box is displayed.

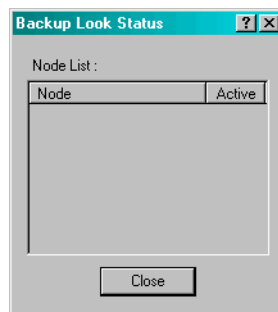


- 2 In the *Look Number* box, type the number of the backup look that you want to clear.
- 3 Select the nodes for which you want to clear the backup look. Click *Specify* to select the node from the *Node* list. *All* indicates that the backup look will be cleared for all connected nodes.
- 4 When finished, click *OK*.

### To obtain a backup look status

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Backup Looks**, and then choose **Status**.

**Result:** The *BackUp Looks Status* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 View which ETCLink-enabled DMX nodes have backup looks associated with them and if the looks are currently active.

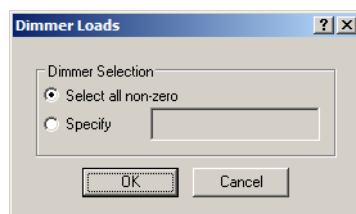
**Note:** Changes to backup looks will not be immediately visible. You may need to wait up to 30 seconds for the change to take effect.

## Load recording

### To record a load

- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Load Recording**, and then choose **Record**.

**Result:** The *Dimmer Loads* dialog box is displayed.



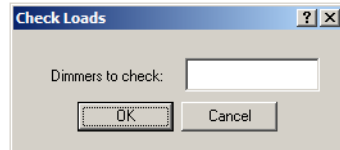
- 2 Specify the dimmer for which you want to record a load or specify all non-zero level dimmers.  
**Note:** Recording the load on a dimmer enables WYSILink to notify you when the dimmer's load has changed, such as when a lamp fails.
- 3 When finished, click *OK*.

### To check or clear a load

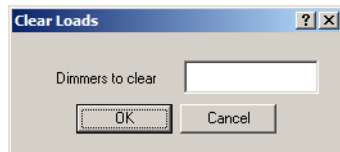
- 1 From the **WYSILink** menu, choose **Load Recording**, and then choose **Check** or **Clear**.

**Result:** The *Check Loads* or *Clear Loads* dialog box is displayed.

#### Check Loads dialog box



#### Clear Loads dialog box



- 2 Type the number of the dimmers to check or clear. You can specify a range of number using a dash (for example, 23-47). Use commas to separate the entries. For all dimmers specify "all". White space and capitalization is ignored.
  - If you are checking a load, a query is performed for the specific dimmer or dimmers and a comparison between the recorded load and the actual load is conducted.
  - If you are clearing a load, the recorded load information is cleared for the selected dimmers.

**Note:** For additional information on working with recorded loads, please refer to your *Sensor CEM User Manual*.



## Appendix A

---

# Using the SuperPro Monitoring Tool



The Sentinel SuperPro Monitoring Tool is installed as part of the WYSIWYG Learn and WYSIWYG Network Server installation. Using this tool, you can view and track license distribution information for the dongles on your network.

### In this appendix

SuperPro Monitoring Tool

347





# SuperPro Monitoring Tool

## Introduction

As part of the WYSIWYG Learn or WYSIWYG Network Server installation, a Sentinel SuperPro Monitoring Tool is included that enables you to view and track information about the dongles on your network.

With this tool you can:

- keep track of how many licenses are in use on your network.
- view the maximum number of licenses that can be obtained from each dongle and, therefore, the maximum number of users (both local and on the network) that can access WYSIWYG Learn or WYSIWYG Network.
- view the Sentinel Protection Servers that are currently installed and running on your network.
- view the addresses and version information for each Sentinel Protection Server.

The Monitoring tool is a convenient tool to use to keep track of license activity on your network. For example, you can use the Monitoring Tool to determine whether you have purchased enough licenses, based on license demand.

**Note:** The SuperPro Monitoring Tool is designed for use only with SuperPro-protected applications, such as WYSIWYG Learn or WYSIWYG Network, that are being run on a network.

## To launch the Monitoring Tool

- 1 Navigate to the folder where you installed the Server (for example, C:\Program Files\WYSIWYG Learn).
- 2 Open the Bin\Sentinel folder.
- 3 Double-click the *monitor* application.

**Result:** The Monitoring Tool is launched, and you are prompted to set a protocol. The Monitoring Tool can monitor servers on the network that use any of the following protocols:

- TCP/IP
- NETBEUI
- IPX/SPX
- SAP

- 4 Select TCP/IP, and then click *OK*.

**Result:** Servers using the selected protocol are displayed in the Monitoring Tool. WYSIWYG products run on TCP/IP networks only.

## Changing the protocol

When you launch the SuperPro Monitoring Tool, you are prompted to set a protocol.

## To modify the selected protocol

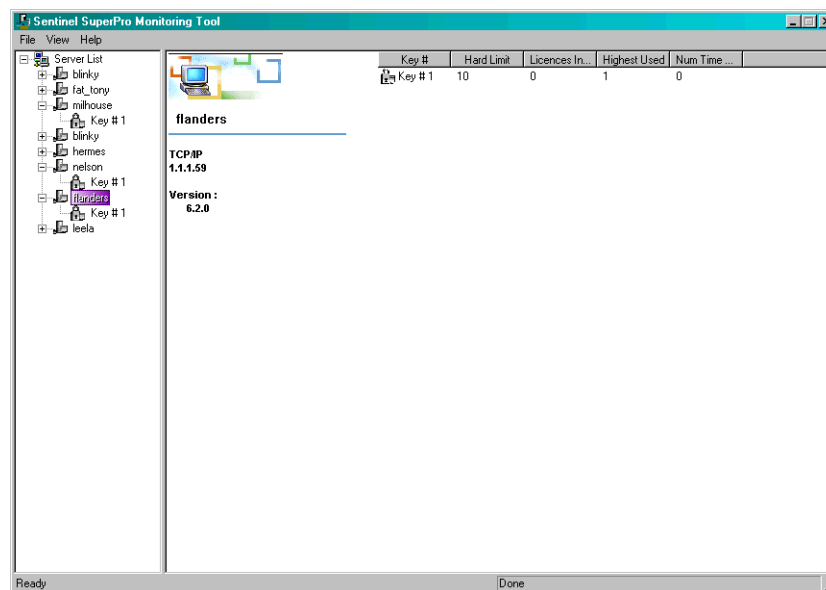
- 1 From the **File** menu, choose **Set Protocol**.
- 2 Select the protocol that you want to use.
- 3 Click *OK*.

**Result:** Servers using the selected protocol are displayed in the Monitoring Tool.

## Viewing servers on the network

When you launch the SuperPro Monitoring Tool, all Sentinel Protection Servers running on the network appear in the server list on the left. Click a server in the list to display the following information in the right pane:

- server name
- server's protocol
- server's address (for TCP/IP or IPX/SPX protocols)
- server's version
- key information for the dongle that is connected to the server



## Key information

Information about each key (or dongle) connected to a server running on the network appears in the right pane when you select a server from the server list. Click on a key to obtain the following information:

- key number (a label used only for identification purposes)
- key's hard limit (that is, the maximum number of licenses that can be obtained from the dongle and, therefore, the maximum number of users that can access WYSIWYG Learn or WYSIWYG Network)
- number of licenses currently in use on the dongle
- highest number of licenses issued from this dongle
- number of time-outs recorded by the Server for Clients using licenses from the dongle

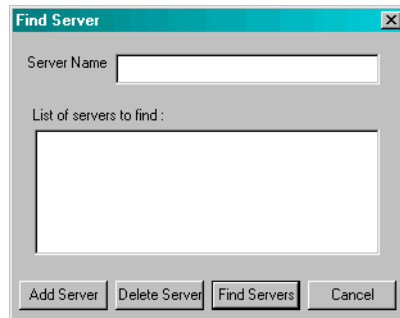
## Searching for a server

If a server does not appear in the list, you can search for it on the network.

### To search for a server

- 1 From the **View** menu, choose **Find**.

**Result:** The *Find Server* dialog box is displayed.



- 2 In the *Server Name* box, type the host name or IP address of the server that you are looking for.
- 3 Click *Add Server* to add the server to the list of servers to find.
- 4 Click *Find Server* to search for the server. If the server is found, it appears in the server list in the left pane.

**Note:** Once a server has been added to the list of servers to search for, it remains on the list until you remove it. To remove a server from the list, select the server, and then click *Delete Server*.

## Refreshing the server list

You can either manually or automatically refresh the server list using the Monitoring Tool.

### To manually refresh the server list

From the **View** menu, choose **Refresh**.

### To automatically refresh the server list

- 1 From the **View** menu, choose **Refresh Rate**.
- 2 In the *Refresh After* box, type the refresh rate in minutes.
- 3 Click *OK*.

**Result:** The server list is automatically refreshed at the rate that you specify.

## Additional help

For further assistance in using the Sentinel SuperPro Monitoring Tool, refer to the online Help available with the product.



## Appendix B

---

# Keyboard shortcuts and hot keys



Keyboard shortcuts and hot keys help you to access commonly used commands more quickly.

### In this appendix

Keyboard shortcuts and hot keys

353







# Keyboard shortcuts and hot keys

## Keyboard shortcuts

There are many keyboard shortcuts that can save you time when using WYSIWYG.

Standardized WYSIWYG keyboard shortcuts are defined below.

Keyboard shortcut	Description
F1	Help
Shift + F1	Displays context-sensitive help
F4	Repeat last command
F5	Refresh current view
F6	Relative or absolute coordinate toggle
F8	Ortho toggle
F9	Snap toggle
F10	Crosshairs toggle
F11	Interactive object creation toggle
Space	Repeat last command
Ctrl+A	Select all
Ctrl+Shift+A	Select current layer
Ctrl+C	Copy
Ctrl+F	Find
Ctrl+G	Group
Ctrl+H	Replace
Ctrl+M	Move
Ctrl+N	New document
Ctrl+O	Open document
Ctrl+P	Print current view
Ctrl+R	Rotate
Ctrl+S	Save current document
Ctrl+U	Ungroup
Ctrl+V	Paste
Ctrl+X	Cut

Keyboard shortcut	Description
Ctrl+Y	Redo
Ctrl+Z	Undo
Ctrl+Click	Add to or remove from selection list
Ctrl+Drag	Copy selected objects
Alt+Drag	Rotate selected objects
Alt+Arrow keys	Nudges selected objects in 10' increments
Alt+Shift+Arrow keys	Nudges selected objects in 1' increments
Alt+Enter	Displays properties of selected object
Arrow keys	Move target
Ctrl+arrow keys	Rotates around the drawing (in isometric view only)
Page Up/Page Down	Zoom in and out
Del	Erases selected object
Esc	Abort command

## Hot keys

Hot keys are keyboard shortcuts that act as commands entered from menus or toolbars. They are categorized according to the view and timing of usage. For example, certain hot keys are only operational in plot views and only in the midst of performing an operation.

## Default hot keys available in Plot Views

The following default hot keys are useful when working in CAD mode.

## Start Operations

Description	Hot Key
Insert line	L
Insert riser	R
Insert cylinder	C
Insert pipe	P
Insert truss	T
Insert text label	B
Insert fixture	F
Snap to grid	G
Snap to midpoints	M
Snap to endpoints	E
Zoom window	Z
Modify view	V
ToolTips on/off	Y
Insert dimension	D

## Mid Operations

Description	Hot Key
Abort mode	A
Finish mode	F
Close line	C
Quick increase	I
Quick decrease	D
Snap to grid	G
Snap to midpoints	M
Snap to endpoints	E
Previous zoom	P
Next zoom	N
Rotate truss counter-clockwise	Z
Rotate truss clockwise	X
Truss rotate from one end to the other end	S
ToolTips on/off	Y

## Default hot keys available in Simulation Views

The following default hot keys are helpful when working in Design and Live modes.

### Start Operations

Description	Hot Key
At last and focus	L
Focus	F
At full intensity	1
At 50% intensity	5
Intensity off	0
Intensity specify	S
Iris wide	W
Iris tight	T
Iris specify	I
Zoom window	Z
Zoom fit	M
Modify view	V
ToolTips on/off	Y

### Mid Operations

Description	Hot Key
Abort mode	A
Finish mode	F
ToolTips on/off	Y

## Default hot keys available in Presentation Views

The following default hot keys are helpful when working in Presentation mode - Plots.

### Start Operations

Description	Hot Key
Insert line	L
Insert rectangle	N
Insert round rectangle	U
Insert ellipse	E
Insert polygon	G
Insert text	T
Insert bitmap	B
Insert plot view	P
Insert data view	D
Insert report view	R
Insert spreadsheet	X
Open bound view	O
Bound view properties	S
Move to front	J
Move to back	K
Placeholders only	H
Print preview	W
Zoom window	Z
Zoom fit	M
Modify view	V

### Mid Operations

Description	Hot Key
Abort mode	A
Finish mode	F

## Default hot keys available in Patch Views

The following default hot keys are helpful when working in Data mode - Patch.

### Start Operations

Description	Hot Key
Console modify	C
Unpatch	U
Modify view	V
ToolTips on/off	Y

### Mid Operations

Description	Hot Key
Abort mode	A
ToolTips on/off	Y

## Appendix C

---

# Using AutoFocus with the HogPC



AutoFocus is the protocol that WYSIWYG uses to “talk back” to a compatible console. One of the consoles that is compatible with this protocol is the HogII. The offline editor for the HogII, HogPC, is also compatible with the AutoFocus protocol, although it requires additional setup.

Normally AutoFocus is enabled through the WYG-it2 or other hardware interface. However, since the HogPC operates internally, you can establish a connection through software.

**Note:** HogPC and WYSIWYG must be running on the same computer to enable the connection.

### In this appendix

Setting up AutoFocus to work with the HogPC

361







# Setting up AutoFocus to work with the HogPC

## Introduction

To establish a connection between AutoFocus in WYSIWYG and the HogPC, you must install and configure two additional pieces of software called MIDI YOKE and MIDI-OX. After this software has been configured, you can set up the HogPC and WYSIWYG to work with the new software.

## Additional software

WYSIWYG can only send out MIDI data streams through the MIDI device set up in the Windows *Sound Devices* Control Panel. Similarly, HogPC can only listen to MIDI data streams that are fed into the computer through the MIDI device assigned by the same Control Panel. To establish a connection between WYSIWYG and HogPC, you must set up a third-party method.

One solution would be to use an external/physical device that can 'loop' the MIDI signal through it. That is, the device would take the signal coming from the computer on one port, and feed it back into the computer on another port.

A second solution would be to use a software driver that emulates the MIDI signal's 'looping' (the MIDI drivers that come with Windows do not support this feature.) This driver is called MIDI YOKE.

MIDI YOKE is a MIDI patch cable driver that enables you to establish a connection between applications that *output* MIDI data streams and those that *receive* MIDI data streams without the need for an external MIDI device. To obtain additional information on MIDI YOKE, refer to <http://www.midiox.com/myoke.htm>.

MIDI-OX is the application used to configure the MIDI YOKE port mappings/assignments. It is also used to monitor MIDI data that passes through the MIDI YOKE driver. In the case of WYSIWYG, this is the MIDI data coming from WYSIWYG into the MIDI YOKE driver and out to the HogPC. To obtain additional information on MIDI-OX, refer to <http://www.midiox.com>.

## Installing and configuring the additional software

### MIDI YOKE

#### To install MIDI YOKE

- 1 Based on your operating system, download the MIDI Yoke installer from the appropriate link at the following Web site:

- Windows ME/XP: <http://www.midiox.com/zip/myokent.exe>

Follow the instructions at [http://www.midiox.com/midiyoke\\_instxp.htm](http://www.midiox.com/midiyoke_instxp.htm) to install MIDI YOKE in a Windows XP Home environment. For all other operating systems, refer to the Installation section of the main MIDI YOKE Web page, <http://www.midiox.com/myoke.htm>.

**Notes:**

1. Do not change any of the settings in the configuration window that appears after installation is complete.
2. You must restart your computer to finalize the installation.

**To configure MIDI YOKE**

Once your computer has restarted, from the **Start** menu, choose **Settings**, and then choose **Control Panel**. Click the *Audio Devices* icon (or its equivalent name in your operating system), and then click the *Audio* tab. Select *MIDI Yoke NT: 1* as your MIDI Music Playback default device.

**MIDI-OX****To install MIDI-OX**

- 1 Download MIDI-OX by clicking <http://www.midiox.com/zip/midioxse.exe>.
- 2 To install MIDI-OX, double-click on the downloaded file and follow the instructions.

**To configure MIDI-OX**

- 1 Once the software has been installed, launch the application by double-clicking on the *MIDI-OX* icon located on your Desktop.
- 2 From the **Options** menu, select **Devices**.
- 3 Select *MIDI Yoke NT: 1* as your MIDI Input Device and *MIDI Yoke NT: 2* as your MIDI Output Device.
- 4 Click *OK*.

**Setting up the HogPC**

**Note:** For proper functionality, install the HogPC software on your computer *after* you install WYSIWYG. If the HogPC software was already installed before you installed WYSIWYG, repair the installation using the HogPC installer or the Add/Remove Programs utility in the Windows Control Panel.

**To set up the HogPC**

- 1 Launch HogPC.
- 2 Load the show for which you want to use AutoFocus to cue.
- 3 Right-click in the HogPC panel, and then choose *Config...*
- 4 Select *MIDI Yoke NT: 2* for Input, and *MIDI Yoke NT: 3* for Output, and then click *OK*.
- 5 In the HogPC panel, click *Setup* (next to the *Pig* button).  
**Result:** The display changes in the first 'monitor' window.
- 6 Click *Input Panel*, and then click *MIDI In* at the top. (You can now close the Input Panel setup window, if desired.)

**Setting up WYSIWYG**

Due to some incompatibilities with certain motherboards, MIDI Drivers are not installed with WYSIWYG, even when you perform a full installation. Therefore, you must install them manually.

**Note:** Close WYSIWYG before starting the installation.

### To install MIDI drivers

- 1 From the **Start** menu, choose **Settings**, and then choose **Control Panel**. Click the *Add/Remove Programs* icon.
- 2 Scroll down to WYSIWYG, and then click the *Change/Remove* button.
- 3 Once the installer launches, click the *Modify* option button, and then click *Next*.
- 4 From the *Select Components* window, select the *MIDI Drivers* check box.
- 5 Click *Next*.

**Result:** Based on your method of installation, you are prompted for the installer file.

- a. If you installed WYSIWYG from a CD, you must place the WYSIWYG CD in your CD-ROM drive.
- b. If you downloaded the WYSIWYG installer from the Web, the install file must be present on your hard drive for the installation to complete.

Please note that you will only be able to install the MIDI drivers from the installer that you originally used (for example, if you used the Web installer, you will not be able to install the drivers using the CD, and vice-versa).

- 6 Click *Finish* when the installation is complete.

### To set up MIDI drivers

- 1 Launch WYSIWYG.
- 2 Load the file with which you want to use AutoFocus.
- 3 Switch to LIVE Mode, add the HogII in the Device Manager, and then bind the ports as you would normally.
- 4 Before closing the Device Manager, click *New*, and then select *Standard MIDI* from the *Devices > All* or from the *Devices > Manufacturer > Generic* tree.
- 5 Click *Insert*.

**Note:** The Standard MIDI device appears in the list even if the drivers are not installed. Therefore, it is important that you follow the steps outlined above to ensure that the drivers are installed.

- 6 You now need to unbind AutoFocus from the HogPC, and then bind it to the Standard MIDI device. To do so, with *Standard MIDI* still selected, click the *Bind AutoFocus* button at the bottom of the Device Manager Window.

## Testing the connection

Before performing this procedure, ensure that all three applications (MIDI-OX, HogPC, and WYSIWYG) are open.

### To test the connection

- 1 In the Device Manager, select the Hog II, and then click *Connect*. The status changes to Connected.
- 2 Repeat step 1 for the standard MIDI device, and then close the Device Manager.
- 3 Resize your WYSIWYG window so that you can see at least part of the MIDI-OX window.
- 4 From the **Live** menu in Live mode, open all the Designer tools: Intensity, Focus, Color, Gobo, Prism, Zoom, and Iris.

- 5 In WYSIWYG, select at least one of the fixtures in your show, and then click *Full* in the Intensity tool.  
**Result:** The selected fixture's intensity is displayed. In addition, HogPC's first monitor window should display *Intensity: Full* in the bottom left-hand corner.  
**Note:** Even before you click *Full*, you should see various codes (MIDI data) displayed in MIDI-OX's Output Monitor if everything was set up according to the instructions above.
- 6 You can now minimize (not close) MIDI-OX, and start programming your show using WYSIWYG's AutoFocus features.

# Index

## Symbols

%Assistant% variable, 265  
 %Data% variable, 265  
 %Designer% variable, 265  
 %File% variable, 266  
 %Group% variable, 265  
 %Headings% variable, 265  
 %Scene% variable, 265  
 %Show% variable, 265  
 %Title% variable, 265  
 %Venue% variable, 265  
 =NOW() variable, 266

## A

Absolute coordinates, 65, 143  
 Acceleration, 85  
 Accessory, 202  
 Activating WYSIWYG, 40  
 Activation, 42  
 Adding  
   floorplans, 117  
 Aiming fixtures, 182  
 Alias definition, 189  
 Ambient light, 73  
 Antialiasing options, 257  
 Aperture, 252  
 Application Options, 83  
 Arc, 129  
 Arcs, 277  
 Arena, 125  
 Arranging shortcuts, 55  
 Array, 169  
 Aspect ratio, 296  
 Assembly Snap, 108, 176  
 Atmospheric options, 253  
 Attribute layout, 275  
 Attributes (Data fields), 216  
 Auto load, 84  
 Auto save, 84  
 Autofocus, 326, 361  
 Auto-increment, 191  
 AutoPatch, 321  
 AutoUnit, 91, 171, 172  
 Axes  
   drawing, 136

## B

Back view, 106  
 Backup files, 84  
 Backup looks, 341  
 Barndoors, 202  
 Baud rate, 83

Beam angle, 191, 325  
 Beam simulation quality, 73  
 Beams, 96  
 Big Layouts, 284  
 Bind  
   to console, 314  
 Bitmaps, 307  
 Black Box, 125  
 Blocks  
   Custom library items, 141  
   Groups, 143  
 Booms, 176  
 Borders and legs, 134  
 Break tool, 163  
 Budget  
   Cost, 189, 217  
 Bulb  
   Lamp, 190, 217

## C

CAD environment, 102  
 CAD items, 291  
 CAD Options toolbar, 58  
 Camera, 73, 139  
 Camera toolbar  
   using, 140  
 Center line, 128  
 Channel count, 64  
 Channels  
   Simulation, 64  
 Circle, 129  
 Circles, 277  
 Circuit Name data field, 216  
 Circuit Number data field, 216  
 Circuit Type data field, 217  
 Circus tents, 126  
 Close the show document, 80  
 Color  
   Inserting, 203  
   Inserting multiple, 219  
 Color data field, 216  
 Color wheel, 240  
 Column Width Size, 229  
 Columns in Data mode, 216  
 ComEdit toolbar, 58  
 Compass, 140  
 Concept shortcuts, 244  
 Connecting, 314  
   console, 314  
 Console data field, 217  
 Consoles  
   connecting, 314  
 Content properties, 290  
 Convert tool, 163  
 Co-ordinate display, 84

- Coordinate notation, 102
- Coordinates, 65, 102
- Copy, 278
- Cost data field, 217
- Count column, 263
- Creating a new DMX universe, 223
- Creating a new spreadsheet, 222
- Cross-fading between lighting looks, 247
- Current
  - Set current layer, 157
- Custom, 206
- Custom color scroll, 204
- Custom color wheels, 204
- Custom fixtures, 180
- Custom gobo wheels, 204
- Custom gobos, 206
- Custom library items, 121, 141
- Custom settings, 83
- Customizing spreadsheet views, 217
- Cut, 278
- Cylinders, 132

## D

- Data error tab, 92
- Data fields, 216
- Data filters, 220
- Data toolbar, 58
- Decimal display, 84
- Delay buffer, 84
- Delete, 279
- Design toolbar, 59
- Design tools, 238
- Designer's Remote, 327
- Detail level, 263
- Device Manager, 314
- Dimension line, 131
- Dimmer data field, 216
- Dimmer information, 338
- Dimmer rack information, 339
- Direct 3D tab, 85
- Display Log, 335
- Distance tool, 170
- Divide tool, 165
- DMX, 314, 320
- DMX patch, 149
- Document summary, 89
- Dot line, 128
- Draw defaults, 94
- Draw toolbar, 59
- Drawing
  - movement axes, 136
- Drawing aids, 123
- Drawing pipes, 173
- Drawing tips, 123
- DWG, 77
- DXF, 77
- DXF/DWG files, 109

## E

- Edit (Pres) toolbar, 60
- Edit toolbar, 59
- Editing a key, 303
- Editing a legend, 298
- Editing objects, 142
- Editing symbols, 298
- EDMX, 88
- EDMX address, 195
- Entering data in the spreadsheet, 217
- Environmental options, 256
- Errors, 231
- ETC interface tab, 88
- ETCLink, 338
- ETCLink functions, 338
- Ethernet, 326
- Exit WYSIWYG, 82
- Export to DWG/DXF, 114
- Extrude, 167

## F

- Facet resolution, 91
- Facet splitting, 91
- Fading between lighting looks, 247
- Field angle, 191
- File menu, 77
- Fillet, 168
- Filter
  - Data filter, 220
- Find tool, 218
- Fixture Details tab, 272
- Fixture layout, 197
- Fixture notation, 197
- Fixture properties
  - Photometrics, 190
- Fixture snap, 108
- Fixtures, 179
- Flight Case, 208
- Floor mount, 171, 176
- Floorplans
  - adding, 117
  - Hiding after importing, 118
- Flow control, 83
- Focus
  - Design tool, 241
- Focus data field, 216
- Focus position, 201
- Focusing fixtures, 182
- Footnotes data field, 217
- Frame size, 202
- Frame tents, 126
- French curve, 128
- Front view, 106
- Full screen mode, 52

## G

- Gels, 240
  - Inserting, 203

- Inserting multiple, 219
- General object properties, 146
- Gobo data field, 216
- Gobo wheels
  - Custom, 204
- Gobos
  - Custom, 206
  - Design tool, 240
  - Inserting, 203
- Graphics, 307
- Grid options, 95
- Group By option, 265
- Group tab, 143
- Grouping, 143

## H

- Hang structure, 171, 182
- Hanging, 179
- Hanging fixtures, 179
- Hanging truss, 176
- Hardware acceleration, 85
- Hatch style, 200
- Header
  - Report, 264
- Hidden line, 128
- Hide Floorplan, 118
- HogPC
  - Connecting Autofocus to, 361
- Hookup data field, 216
- Hot keys, 354
  - Patch views, 358
  - Presentation views, 357
  - Simulation, 356

## I

- Image items, 295
- Images, 307, 333
- Imperial units, 103
- Importing DWG/DXF files, 111, 112
- In-Place update, 33
- Insert (Pres) toolbar, 60
- Inserting
  - Color in Data mode, 219
  - Fixtures in CAD mode, 179
  - Fixtures in Data mode, 219
  - Focus positions in Data mode, 219
  - Items into layouts, 286
  - Positions in Data mode, 219
- Installing
  - In-Place update, 33
  - WYSIWYG, 32
  - WYSIWYG Learn, 34
  - WYSIWYG Network, 34
- Intensity design tool, 239
- Interactive mode, 94, 109
- Isometric view, 106
- Item properties, 290

## J

- jpeg file, 207, 252, 286, 307

## K

- Key
  - Instrument labels, 197
- Keyboard and mouse control, 66
- Keyboard shortcuts, 353
- Keys, 300

## L

- Label layout, 198
- Ladders, 171, 176
- Lamp Type data field, 217
- Lamps, 120
- Latitude, 93
- Layer data field, 217
- Layers, 157
- Layers toolbar, 60
- Layout
  - fixture data, 197
- Layout tabs
  - CAD, 101
  - Data, 215
  - Design, 237
  - Link, 331
  - Live, 313
  - Pres, 261
- Layouts (Pres mode), 284
- Left view, 106
- Legend items, 296
- Library Browser, 119
- Library shortcuts, 54
- Light emission, 148
- Line
  - Drawing lines, 128
- Line color, 158
- Line weight, 158
- Linear axis, 137
- Lines, 277
- Live toolbar, 60
- Load recording, 343
- Location setup, 92, 140
- Longitude, 93
- Looks
  - and moving scenery, 248

## M

- Mainframe, 52
- Marker grips, 145
- Masking, 134
- Materials, 148, 155
- Measurement mode, 131
- Menu bar, 57
- Merge, 79
- Message Log, 333

- Message Log Options toolbar, 61
- Metric units, 103
- Micro Layouts, 284
- MIDI, 326
- Mirror tool, 145
- Mirroring, 145
- Missing coordinate, 104
- Model data field, 217
- Modes, 49
- Modifying wireframe views, 68
- Motion control system
  - moving objects with, 318
- Mountable yokes, 202
- Move, 279
- Move Page, 272
- Move tool, 143
- Movement axes
  - drawing, 136
- Movement axis
  - adding vertex to linear, 139
  - attaching objects to, 138
  - attaching to a DMX patch, 138
  - attaching to a motion patch, 138
  - changing path of, 139
  - drawing linear, 137
  - drawing rotation, 137
  - moving objects on with a console device, 317
  - moving objects on with a motion control system, 318
  - patching to DMX console device, 225
  - patching to motion control system, 225
- Moving head, 195
- Moving mirror, 195
- Moving scenery
  - reading the patch for, 228
  - viewing, 248, 249
- Moving Scenery tool, 242
  - using, 242
- Multi-source fixtures
  - applying color to, 192
- Multi-source light
  - applying color to with Quick Tools, 203

## N

- Navigation shortcuts, 53
- New Back Elevation Plot, 269
- New Front Elevation Plot, 269
- New Left Section Plot, 269
- New Plan Plot, 268
- New Plot View Properties tab, 270
- New Plots, 268
  - Attribute layout, 275
  - Creating a new plot type, 268
  - Drawing objects, 277
  - Editing objects, 278
  - Inserting into layouts, 290, 295
  - Manipulating object properties, 280
  - Modifying properties of a plot, 269
  - Objects, 272
  - Objects drawn in New Plots, 281
  - Printing, 283

- Reestablish links, 273
- Relationship with objects in CAD, 273
- Relationship with objects in Data, 273
- Selecting objects, 278
- Updating, 269
- Working in, 268
- New Right Section Plot, 269
- New Show, 77
- Node Manager, 340
- Number of color frames data field, 217
- Number of data channels data field, 217
- Number of lamps data field, 217

## O

- Object representation in New Plots, 272
- Object-specific properties, 150
- Offset, 175
- Offset data field, 216
- Open a show document, 77
- Open GL tab, 86
- Opening a new window, 52
- Options, 83
- Origin, 95, 102
- Ortho, 65, 107
- Owner data field, 217

## P

- Palette shortcuts, 246
- Pan data field, 216
- Paperwork, 262
- Passwords, 45
- Patch, 223
  - changing width of cells in, 229
- Patch data field, 216
- Patch universe, 223
- Patch views
  - Hot keys, 358
- Patching
  - movement axes (DMX), 225
  - movement axes (motion control system), 225
- Patching fixtures, 224
- Photo quality pictures, 250
- Photometrics, 179, 190
- Pipe, 134, 181
- Pipe snap, 108
- Pipe tape, 309
- Plan view, 106
- Plot type, 106
- Points, 128
- Popup frames, 51
- Ports
  - console, 314
- Position, 171
- Position data field, 216
- Position Manager, 171
- POV (Point of View), 194
- Precision, 95, 153
- Presence option, 253
- Presentation items, 286



## Presentation views

- Hot keys, 357

- Print, 80

- Printing layouts, 306

- Processors, 87

- Product Configuration Wizard, 38

## Properties

- Dimension, 153

- Errors, 233

- Focus position, 183

- General, 146

- Layouts, 285

- Legend, 299, 304

- Library item, 121

- Line, 151

- Patch universe, 228

- Pipe, 175

- Point, 151

- Report, 262

- Spreadsheet, 221

- Symbol, 200

- Text label, 152

- Wireframe view, 68

- Proscenium Arch, 124

- Purpose data field, 216

## Q

- Quick focus, 183

## Quick Tools

- using to apply color to multi-source fixtures, 192

- Quick tools, 191, 192

## R

- Radiosity, 255

- Reading the patch, 227

- Redesigning, 264

- Redesigning headings, 264

- Redo, 142

- Regional profile, 84

- Regional settings, 92

- Relative, 144

- Relative coordinates, 65

- Rename fixture type, 189

- Render options, 87

- Render shortcuts, 250

- Rendering, 211, 250, 328

- Replace tool, 218

- Replacing fixtures, 179

- Report headings, 264

- Reports, 262

- Reset origin, 102

- Right view, 106

- Riser, 131

- Rotate, 279

- Rotate tool, 144

- Rotating, 144

- Rotation axis, 137

## S

- Saturation, 257

- Save, 78

- Save As, 78

- Saving a lighting look, 247

- Scenes, 160

- Scenes toolbar, 61

- Schedules, 262

- Screen layout, 49

## Screens

- drawing, 134

- Scrollbars, 70

- Scrollers, 205, 240

- Scrolls, 204

- Selecting objects, 142

- Send the show document through e-mail, 82

- Set Piece tab, 150

- Setting display size for shortcuts, 55

## Settings

- regional, 92

- Shaded views, 71

- Shortcut, 53

## Shortcut bar

- Create Shortcuts

- Concepts, 244

- Images, 307

- Layouts, 284

- Library Objects, 121

- Lighting looks, 247

- Palette, 246

- Patch Universes, 223

- Render, 250

- Reports, 264

- Spreadsheets, 222

- Worksheets, 308

- Shortcuts, 53

- arranging, 55

- delete, 54

- new, 54

- ordering, 54

- setting display size, 55

- Show details, 96

- Show information, 267

- Shutter cuts, 184

- Side view, 106

## Simulation

- Channels, 64

- Simulation options, 96, 211, 328

## Simulation views

- Hot keys, 356

- Snap, 65, 95, 107

- Soft goods, 134

- Soft shadow, 256

- Solid line, 128

- Sphere, 133

- Spin data field, 217

- Spline, 128

- Split gels, 219

- Spot, 149

- Spot data field, 216

- Spreadsheets, 216
- Standard toolbar, 61
- Status bar, 64
- Status data field, 217
- Stock, 204
- Streaming video
  - reading the patch for, 227
- Subscriptions, 43
- Surfaces, 131
- Symbols, 91, 96, 197, 278, 294

## T

- Tag data field, 217
- Tape printer, 309
- Template, 79
- Tents, 126
- Text label, 130, 277
- Textures, 85, 153
- Tile printing, 271, 286
- Tile Printing tab, 271
- Tilt data field, 216
- Time zones, 93
- Title block, 267, 286
- Toolbars, 57, 86
- Tools
  - CAD, 162
  - Design, 238
- Tools toolbar, 62
- Tooltips, 96, 294
- Tophats, 202
- Troubleshooting, 12
- Truss
  - Hanging truss, 176
  - Rotating truss, 177
- Truss cross members, 96, 294
- Truss snap, 108, 176
- Type data field, 216

## U

- Undo, 142
- Ungrouping, 143
- Unit data field, 216
- Universe
  - Patch, 223
- Universes toolbar, 62
- Unused channels, 64
- Upgrades, 31, 42
- USB serial converter, 84
- USITT symbols, 200

## V

- Variables in reports, 265
- Vertex, 162, 167
  - adding to a linear axis, 139
- Vertical hang structures, 274
- Vertical justification of a line, 152
- Video

- patching in the patch view, 224
- Video source
  - configuring new, 135
  - controlling with a console device, 316
- Video tool, 241
- View - full screen, 52
- View Options
  - Error, 233
  - Flight Case, 210
  - Layouts, 285
  - Patch universe, 228
  - Report, 262
  - Shaded views, 72
  - Spreadsheet, 221
  - Wireframe views, 68
- View shortcuts, 67
- View toolbar, 62
- Viewer, 98
- Viewing
  - moving scenery, 248, 249
- Views/tools shortcuts, 54

## W

- Wattage data field, 217
- Weight data field, 217
- Welcome window, 49
- Wheels, 205, 240
- Window
  - New, 52
- Wireframe views, 66
- Workplane, 106
- WYSILink, 332
- WYSILink toolbar, 62, 338
- WYSIWYG
  - activating, 40
  - Design, 18
  - Perform, 20, 24, 27
  - Report, 13, 17
  - starting for the first time, 38
- WYSIWYG Learn, 24, 34
- WYSIWYG Network, 26
- WYSIWYG Perform - Console Edition, 13, 22
- WYSIWYG Viewer, 98

## Y

- Yokes
  - mountable, 202

## Z

- Zoom, 238
  - Zooming, 67
- Zoom tools, 66